



P r o f e s s i o n a l   E x p e r t i s e   D i s t i l l e d

# Oracle Advanced PL/SQL Developer Professional Guide

Master advanced PL/SQL concepts along with plenty of example questions for 1Z0-146 examination

*Foreword by*

*Ronald Rood, Oracle ACE, Oracle DBA, OCM*

*Kamran Agayev A., Oracle ACE, Oracle DBA Expert*

**Saurabh K. Gupta**

**[PACKT]** enterprise   
PUBLISHING professional expertise distilled

# Oracle Advanced PL/SQL Developer Professional Guide

Master advanced PL/SQL concepts along with plenty of  
example questions for 1Z0-146 examination

**Saurabh K. Gupta**



BIRMINGHAM - MUMBAI

# Oracle Advanced PL/SQL Developer Professional Guide

Copyright © 2012 Packt Publishing

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embedded in critical articles or reviews.

Every effort has been made in the preparation of this book to ensure the accuracy of the information presented. However, the information contained in this book is sold without warranty, either express or implied. Neither the author, nor Packt Publishing, and its dealers and distributors will be held liable for any damages caused or alleged to be caused directly or indirectly by this book.

Packt Publishing has endeavored to provide trademark information about all of the companies and products mentioned in this book by the appropriate use of capitals. However, Packt Publishing cannot guarantee the accuracy of this information.

First published: May 2012

Production Reference: 1070512

Published by Packt Publishing Ltd.  
Livery Place  
35 Livery Street  
Birmingham B3 2PB, UK.

ISBN 978-1-84968-722-5

[www.packtpub.com](http://www.packtpub.com)

Cover Image by Tina Negus ([tina\\_manthorpe@sky.com](mailto:tina_manthorpe@sky.com))

# Credits

**Author**

Saurabh K. Gupta

**Project Coordinator**

Alka Nayak

**Reviewers**

Kamran Agayev A.

Mohan Dutt

Marcel Hoefs

Ronald Rood

**Proofreaders**

Linda Morris

Kevin McGowan

**Indexer**

Rekha Nair

**Acquisition Editor**

Rukshana Khambatta

**Graphics**

Valentina D'Silva

**Lead Technical Editor**

Pramila Balan

Manu Joseph

**Technical Editors**

Vrinda Amberkar

Prasad Dalvi

**Production Coordinator**

Nilesh R. Mohite

**Cover Work**

Nilesh R. Mohite



# Foreword

Many of us learned to use PL/SQL recently; many did this many years ago. At that time simple problems required simple PL/SQL code, with lots of procedural code in it. Isn't the procedural part what PL/SQL is all about? Yes, it is, but this is also a threat because, when it is not used smartly, the procedural looping might become a performance hog.

PL/SQL has evolved a lot. Bulk collections should be commonly in use now. Many programmers that support multiple vendors have little or no knowledge about Oracle collections. Because of this they write code like we did during v7, leaving the huge performance benefits, that Oracle has, untouched.

For these programmers this book is a very helpful addition to their library of knowledge. It helps them to easily perform the same task, but maybe 70 times faster, without making the code more complex. Using the advanced techniques described in the book you can do that. Don't mix up "advanced" with "complex". The fun about this is that many make their code complex using simple PL/SQL, trying to gain some performance, instead of effectively using advanced constructs in PL/SQL that in the end make the code easier to read and understand.

There is more to find in the book. Being a DBA, performance attracts a certain amount of attention. This is because performance is important. It greatly impacts the scalability of a database and the end user experience of the application. Other things you might find useful are the interfaces with the outside world, where external procedures can do work that does not fit the characteristics of a database.

Security is also something that attracts a DBA. Here you will find implementations of Virtual Private Database and enough remarks to keep the reader learning for quite a while. For example, how to protect against SQL injection? This again is a very interesting topic that should be taken very seriously. These days no network is safe. So scan every input.

I won't mention everything that is covered, just find a keyboard, your local database, and start reading. Try out the code samples and see where you can modify your existing code to take advantage of the new insights that the book will give you.

How advanced are the techniques described here depends on your mileage. For many the contents will be valuable enough to justify the term "advanced". As a reviewer it was a pleasure to read it and to try to push Saurabh Gupta to his limits. For me, I could use this book, even today.

Ronald Rood

Oracle ACE, Oracle DBA, OCM

PL/SQL is a programming language that is not only used by application developers, but also by database administrators in their daily tasks. This book contains information that every developer and even DBAs should know. As you read this book, you'll definitely learn a lot of new facts about PL/SQL programming. This book provides detailed information on general PL/SQL programming language, analyzing, tuning, tracing, and securing your code.

What I like most about the book is that it contains a lot of examples and helpful scripts for each chapter. This book also contains a lot of questions for the 1Z0-146 examination at the end of each chapter and it's one of the best guides for getting ready to pass the exam.

If you're a PL/SQL developer, whether a beginner or an expert, this book is for you.

Kamran Agayev A.

Oracle ACE, Oracle DBA Expert

# About the Author

**Saurabh K. Gupta** got introduced to Oracle database around 5 years ago. Since then, he has been synchronizing his on job and off job interests with Oracle database programming. As an Oracle 11g Certified Advanced PL/SQL Professional, he soon moved from programming to database designing, development, and day-to-day database administration activities. He has been an active Oracle blogger and OTN forum member. He has authored and published more than 70 online articles and papers. His work can be seen in RMOUG journal, PSOUG, dbanotes, Exforsys, and Club Oracle. He shares his technical experience through his blog: <http://sbhoracle.wordpress.com/>. He is a member of **All India Oracle Users Group (AIOUG)** and loves to participate in technical meets and conferences.

Besides digging into Oracle, sketching and snooker are other pastimes for him. He can be reached through his blog [SbhOracle](http://sbhoracle.wordpress.com/) for any comments, suggestions, or feedback regarding this book.

# Acknowledgement

On a professional note, I am obliged to Ronald Rood, Kamran Agayev, Mohan Dutta, and Marcel Hoefs who reviewed the book with their own insights and perspectives. I was excited with the fact that the technical reviewers of my book are Oracle ACEs, highly respected, and recognized experts in the industry. I am grateful to Ronald who judged the worth of the book from the DBA perspective and helped me to extend my limits on the administrative aspect as well. Thanks to Kamran Agayev who consistently encouraged my writing styles and gave valuable inputs on the chapters. My obligations to Mohan Dutta and Marcel Hoefs who invested their valuable time in my work and added to the quality of the content. I would also like to express my gratitude for Arup Nanda, who has always been a great source of inspiration for me. His sessions and articles, covering all areas of Oracle database, have always been a great source of knowledge and motivation for me.

I would like to extend the appreciation to Packt Publishing for considering my proposal and accepting to go ahead on this book. My sincere thanks to Rukshana Khambatta, the Acquisition Editor at Packt for coordinating the kick-off activities of the book. I deeply appreciate the efforts of the Project Coordinator, Alka Nayak; the Lead Technical Editor, Pramila Balan; and the Technical Editors Vrinda Amberkar and Prasad Dalvi, whose diligent work and coordination added extra miles to the project. There was great tuning established between us and I am glad we worked parallelly on the editorial process while abiding by the timelines.

It is correctly said that a man's personal and professional achievements are a showcase of his family's support and encouragement. I dedicate all my efforts and works to my parents, Suresh Chandra Gupta and Swadesh Gupta and family for their inevitable support, motivation, and sacrifices, and nurturing me towards all my achievements. Sincere thanks to my wife, Neha, and Sir J.B. Mall for their love, consistent support, and confidence in my endeavors and for being with me during my tough times.

# About the Reviewers

**Kamran Agayev A.** is an Oracle ACE and Oracle Certified Professional DBA working at Azercell Telecom. He's an author of the book, *Oracle Backup & Recovery: Expert secrets for using RMAN and Data Pump*, and also shares his experience with a lot of step-by-step articles and video tutorials in his blog at <http://kamranagayev.com>. He also presents at Oracle OpenWorld, TROUG, and local events.

**Mohan Dutt** is an Oracle expert, having presented more than 55 sessions at Oracle conferences worldwide. An Oracle evangelist at large, he was awarded Member of the Year by Oracle Applications User Group (OAUG) in 2007. He authors the world's first blog dedicated entirely to Oracle certification. He has founded and chaired 3 Oracle Special Interest Groups (SIG). He was recognized as an Oracle ACE in 2011.

**Marcel Hoefs** learned his trade participating in numerous Oracle development projects, as an Oracle developer, since 1997. Being a specialist in SQL and PL/SQL database development, Oracle Forms, Reports, and Designer, Marcel currently works as a Technical Architect, Lead Developer, and Performance Specialist. With the advent of web technologies such as Web Services, ADF, and APEX, he currently specializes in innovative solutions opening up traditional Oracle database systems to the Web. As a senior Oracle Consultant with CIBER, he is also an Oracle competence leader, organizing and participating in knowledge sharing sessions with participants from within and outside CIBER.

**Ronald Rood** is an innovating Oracle DBA with over 20 years of IT experience. He has built and managed cluster databases on almost each and every platform that Oracle has ever supported, from the famous OPS databases in version 7, until the latest RAC releases, currently being 11g. Ronald is constantly looking for ways to get the most value out of the database to make the investment for his customers even more valuable. He knows how to handle the power of the rich Unix environment very well and this is what makes him a first class trouble-shooter and a true Oracle ACE. Next to the spoken languages such as Dutch, English, German, and French, he also writes fluently in many scripting languages.

Currently, Ronald is a principal consultant working for CIBER in The Netherlands where he cooperates in many complex projects for large companies where downtime is not an option. CIBER or CBR is a global full service IT provider and Oracle Platinum Partner.

Ronald often replies in the Oracle forums, writes his own blog (<http://ronr.blogspot.com>) called "From errors we learn" and writes for various Oracle related magazines. He also wrote a book, *Mastering Oracle Scheduler in Oracle 11g Databases*, where he fills the gap between the Oracle documentation and customers' questions. You can find him on Twitter at [http://twitter.com/ik\\_zelf](http://twitter.com/ik_zelf).

Ronald has lots of certifications:

- Oracle Certified Master
- Oracle Certified Professional
- Oracle Database 11g Tuning Specialist
- Oracle Database 11g Data Warehouse Certified Implementation Specialist

Ronald fills his time with Oracle, his family, sky-diving, radio controlled model airplane flying, running a scouting group, and having a lot of fun.

He quotes, "A problem is merely a challenge that might take a little time to be solved".

# www.PacktPub.com

## Support files, eBooks, discount offers, and more

You might want to visit [www.PacktPub.com](http://www.PacktPub.com) for support files and downloads related to your book.

Did you know that Packt offers eBook versions of every book published, with PDF and ePub files available? You can upgrade to the eBook version at [www.PacktPub.com](http://www.PacktPub.com) and as a print book customer, you are entitled to a discount on the eBook copy. Get in touch with us at [service@packtpub.com](mailto:service@packtpub.com) for more details.

At [www.PacktPub.com](http://www.PacktPub.com), you can also read a collection of free technical articles, sign up for a range of free newsletters and receive exclusive discounts and offers on Packt books and eBooks.



<http://PacktLib.PacktPub.com>

Do you need instant solutions to your IT questions? PacktLib is Packt's online digital book library. Here, you can access, read and search across Packt's entire library of books.

## Why Subscribe?

- Fully searchable across every book published by Packt
- Copy and paste, print, and bookmark content
- On demand and accessible via web browser

## Free Access for Packt account holders

If you have an account with Packt at [www.PacktPub.com](http://www.PacktPub.com), you can use this to access PacktLib today and view nine entirely free books. Simply use your login credentials for immediate access.

## Instant Updates on New Packt Books

Get notified! Find out when new books are published by following [@PacktEnterprise](#) on Twitter, or the *Packt Enterprise* Facebook page.



# Table of Contents

<b>Preface</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Chapter 1: Overview of PL/SQL Programming Concepts</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>PL/SQL—the procedural aspect</b>	<b>10</b>
My first PL/SQL program	11
<b>PL/SQL development environments</b>	<b>13</b>
SQL Developer	13
SQL Developer—the history	15
Creating a connection	15
SQL Worksheet	16
Executing a SQL statement	18
Calling a SQL script from SQL Developer	19
Creating and executing an anonymous PL/SQL block	21
Debugging the PL/SQL code	21
Editing and saving the scripts	23
SQL*Plus	24
Executing a SQL statement in SQL*Plus	26
Executing an anonymous PL/SQL block	26
<b>Procedures</b>	<b>27</b>
Executing a procedure	28
<b>Functions</b>	<b>29</b>
Function—execution methods	31
Restrictions on calling functions from SQL expressions	32
<b>PL/SQL packages</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>Cursors—an overview</b>	<b>35</b>
Cursor execution cycle	35
Cursor attributes	36
Cursor FOR loop	38
<b>Exception handling in PL/SQL</b>	<b>39</b>
System-defined exceptions	39
User-defined exceptions	41

The RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR procedure	43
Exception propagation	46
<b>Managing database dependencies</b>	<b>48</b>
Displaying the direct and indirect dependencies	49
Dependency metadata	50
Dependency issues and enhancements	50
<b>Reviewing Oracle-supplied packages</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>Summary</b>	<b>52</b>
<b>Practice exercise</b>	<b>52</b>
<b>Chapter 2: Designing PL/SQL Code</b>	<b>55</b>
<b>Understanding cursor structures</b>	<b>55</b>
Cursor execution cycle	56
Cursor design considerations	57
Cursor design—guidelines	58
Cursor attributes	59
Implicit cursors	60
Explicit cursors	62
<b>Cursor variables</b>	<b>66</b>
Ref cursor types—strong and weak	69
SYS_REFCURSOR	69
Processing a cursor variable	70
Cursor variables as arguments	71
Cursor variables—restrictions	73
<b>Subtypes</b>	<b>74</b>
Subtype classification	75
Oracle's predefined subtypes	75
User-defined subtypes	76
Type compatibility with subtypes	77
<b>Summary</b>	<b>78</b>
<b>Practice exercise</b>	<b>78</b>
<b>Chapter 3: Using Collections</b>	<b>81</b>
<b>Collections—an overview</b>	<b>82</b>
Categorization	83
Selecting an appropriate collection type	84
<b>Associative arrays</b>	<b>84</b>
<b>Nested tables</b>	<b>88</b>
Nested table collection type as the database object	90
DML operations on nested table columns	91
A nested table collection type in PL/SQL	93
Additional features of a nested table	94
<b>Varray</b>	<b>98</b>

Varray in PL/SQL	99
Varray as a database collection type	100
DML operations on varray type columns	100
<b>Collections—a comparative study</b>	<b>103</b>
Common characteristics of collection types	103
Nested table versus associative arrays	104
Nested table versus varrays	105
<b>PL/SQL collection methods</b>	<b>105</b>
EXISTS	105
COUNT	106
LIMIT	107
FIRST and LAST	108
PRIOR and NEXT	109
EXTEND	109
TRIM	111
DELETE	112
<b>Manipulating collection elements</b>	<b>113</b>
<b>Collection initialization</b>	<b>115</b>
<b>Summary</b>	<b>117</b>
<b>Practice exercise</b>	<b>117</b>
<b>Chapter 4: Using Advanced Interface Methods</b>	<b>121</b>
<b>Understanding external routines</b>	<b>122</b>
Architecture of external routines	122
Oracle Net Configuration	125
TNSNAMES.ora	125
LISTENER.ora	126
Oracle Net Configuration verification	129
Benefits of external procedures	130
<b>Executing external C programs from PL/SQL</b>	<b>131</b>
Executing C program through external procedure—development steps	131
<b>Executing Java programs from PL/SQL</b>	<b>136</b>
Calling a Java class method from PL/SQL	137
Uploading a Java class into the database—development steps	137
The loadjava utility—an illustration	137
Creating packages for Java class methods	140
<b>Summary</b>	<b>141</b>
<b>Practice exercise</b>	<b>141</b>
<b>Chapter 5: Implementing VPD with Fine Grained Access Control</b>	<b>145</b>
<b>Fine Grained Access Control</b>	<b>146</b>
Overview	146
Virtual Private Database—the alias	147

How FGAC or VPD works?	147
Salient features of VPD	148
<b>VPD implementation—outline and components</b>	<b>149</b>
Application context	150
Policy function definition and implementation of row-level security	153
Associating a policy using the DBMS_RLS package	155
<b>VPD implementation—demonstrations</b>	<b>156</b>
Assignment 1—implementing VPD using simple security policy	157
Assignment 2—implementing VPD using an application context	159
<b>VPD policy metadata</b>	<b>163</b>
<b>Policy utilities—refresh and drop</b>	<b>164</b>
<b>Summary</b>	<b>165</b>
<b>Practice exercise</b>	<b>165</b>
<b>Chapter 6: Working with Large Objects</b>	<b>169</b>
<b>Introduction to the LOB data types</b>	<b>170</b>
Internal LOB	171
External LOB	171
<b>Understanding the LOB data types</b>	<b>172</b>
LOB value and LOB locators	172
BLOB or CLOB!	172
BFILE	173
Temporary LOBs	173
<b>Creating LOB data types</b>	<b>173</b>
Directories	173
Creating LOB data type columns in a table	175
<b>Managing LOB data types</b>	<b>177</b>
Managing internal LOBs	178
Securing and managing BFILES	178
The DBMS_LOB package—overview	179
Security model	179
DBMS_LOB constants	180
DBMS_LOB data types	180
DBMS_LOB subprograms	181
Rules and regulations	182
<b>Working with the CLOB, BLOB, and BFILE data types</b>	<b>183</b>
Initializing LOB data type columns	184
Inserting data into a LOB column	185
Populating a LOB data type using an external file	185
Selecting LOB data	189
Modifying the LOB data	190
Delete LOB data	192
Miscellaneous LOB notes	192

---

LOB column states	193
Locking a row containing LOB	193
Opening and closing LOBs	193
Accessing LOBs	193
LOB restrictions	194
<b>Migrating from LONG to LOB</b>	<b>194</b>
<b>Using temporary LOBs</b>	<b>196</b>
Temporary LOB operations	196
Managing temporary LOBs	197
Validating, creating, and freeing a temporary LOB	198
<b>Summary</b>	<b>200</b>
<b>Practice exercise</b>	<b>200</b>
<b>Chapter 7: Using SecureFile LOBs</b>	<b>205</b>
<b>Introduction to SecureFiles</b>	<b>206</b>
SecureFile LOB—an overview	207
Architectural enhancements in SecureFiles	208
SecureFile LOB features	210
<b>Working with SecureFiles</b>	<b>211</b>
SecureFile metadata	213
Enabling advanced features in SecureFiles	214
Deduplication	214
Compression	215
Encryption	216
<b>Migration from BasicFiles to SecureFiles</b>	<b>220</b>
Online Redefinition method	221
<b>Summary</b>	<b>224</b>
<b>Practice exercise</b>	<b>225</b>
<b>Chapter 8: Compiling and Tuning to Improve Performance</b>	<b>227</b>
<b>Native and interpreted compilation techniques</b>	<b>228</b>
Real native compilation	229
Selecting the appropriate compilation mode	230
When to choose interpreted compilation mode?	230
When to choose native compilation mode?	231
Setting the compilation mode	231
Querying the compilation settings	232
Compiling a program unit for a native or interpreted compilation	233
Compiling the database for PL/SQL native compilation (NCOMP)	235
<b>Tuning PL/SQL code</b>	<b>238</b>
Comparing SQL and PL/SQL	239
Avoiding implicit data type conversion	239
Understanding the NOT NULL constraint	241
Using the PLS_INTEGER data type for arithmetic operations	243

---

Using a SIMPLE_INTEGER data type	245
Modularizing the PL/SQL code	246
Using bulk binding	248
Using SAVE_EXCEPTIONS	252
Rephrasing the conditional control statements	254
Conditions with an OR logical operator	254
Conditions with an AND logical operator	254
<b>Enabling intra unit inlining</b>	<b>255</b>
PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL—the Oracle initialization parameter	256
Case 1—PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL = 0	256
Case 2—PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL = 1	258
Case 3—PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL = 2	259
Case 4—PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL = 3	260
<b>PRAGMA INLINE</b>	<b>262</b>
<b>Summary</b>	<b>265</b>
<b>Practice exercise</b>	<b>265</b>
<b>Chapter 9: Caching to Improve Performance</b>	<b>269</b>
<b>Introduction to result cache</b>	<b>270</b>
Server-side result cache	271
SQL query result cache	272
PL/SQL function result cache	272
OCI client results cache	273
<b>Configuring the database for the server result cache</b>	<b>273</b>
The DBMS_RESULT_CACHE package	276
<b>Implementing the result cache in SQL</b>	<b>277</b>
Manual result cache	277
Automatic result cache	279
Result cache metadata	281
Query result cache dependencies	283
Cache memory statistics	283
Invalidation of SQL result cache	284
Displaying the result cache memory report	286
Read consistency of the SQL result cache	287
Limitation of SQL result cache	287
<b>Implementing result cache in PL/SQL</b>	<b>288</b>
The RESULT_CACHE clause	288
Cross-session availability of cached results	292
Invalidation of PL/SQL result cache	292
Limitations of PL/SQL function result cache	294
Argument and return type restrictions	294
Function structural restrictions	294
<b>Summary</b>	<b>295</b>
<b>Practice exercise</b>	<b>295</b>

<b>Chapter 10: Analyzing PL/SQL Code</b>	<b>299</b>
<b>Track coding information</b>	<b>299</b>
[DBA   ALL   USER]_ARGUMENTS	301
[DBA   ALL   USER]_OBJECTS	304
[DBA   ALL   USER]_SOURCE	306
[DBA   ALL   USER]_PROCEDURES	307
[DBA   ALL   USER]_DEPENDENCIES	308
<b>Using SQL Developer to find coding information</b>	<b>310</b>
The DBMS_DESCRIBE package	313
DBMS_UTILITY.FORMAT_CALL_STACK	316
Tracking propagating exceptions in PL/SQL code	318
<b>Determining identifier types and usages</b>	<b>319</b>
The PL/Scope tool	320
The PL/Scope identifier collection	320
The PL/Scope report	322
Illustration	322
Applications of the PL/Scope report	325
<b>The DBMS_METADATA package</b>	<b>326</b>
DBMS_METADATA data types and subprograms	327
Parameter requirements	330
The DBMS_METADATA transformation parameters and filters	330
Working with DBMS_METADATA—illustrations	332
Case 1—retrieve the metadata of a single object	332
Case 2—retrieve the object dependencies on the F_GET_LOC function	335
Case 3—retrieve system grants on the ORADEV schema	335
Case 4—retrieve objects of function type in the ORADEV schema	336
<b>Summary</b>	<b>337</b>
<b>Practice exercise</b>	<b>337</b>
<b>Chapter 11: Profiling and Tracing PL/SQL Code</b>	<b>339</b>
<b>Tracing the PL/SQL programs</b>	<b>340</b>
The DBMS_TRACE package	341
Installing DBMS_TRACE	341
DBMS_TRACE subprograms	341
The PLSQL_DEBUG parameter and the DEBUG option	343
Viewing the PL/SQL trace information	344
Demonstrating the PL/SQL tracing	347
<b>Profiling the PL/SQL programs</b>	<b>350</b>
Oracle hierarchical profiler—the DBMS_HPROF package	351
View profiler information	352
Demonstrating the profiling of a PL/SQL program	352
The plshprof utility	357
Sample reports	359

<b>Summary</b>	<b>361</b>
<b>Practice exercise</b>	<b>361</b>
<b>Chapter 12: Safeguarding PL/SQL Code against SQL Injection Attacks</b>	<b>365</b>
<b>SQL injection—an introduction</b>	<b>366</b>
SQL injection—an overview	366
Types of SQL injection attacks	369
Preventing SQL injection attacks	369
<b>Immunizing SQL injection attacks</b>	<b>370</b>
Reducing the attack's surface	370
Controlling user privileges	371
Invoker's and definer's rights	371
Avoiding dynamic SQL	375
Bind arguments	378
Sanitizing inputs using DBMS_ASSERT	379
The DBMS_ASSERT package	380
<b>Testing the code for SQL injection flaws</b>	<b>386</b>
Test strategy	386
Reviewing the code	386
Static code analysis	387
Fuzz tools	387
Generating test cases	387
<b>Summary</b>	<b>388</b>
<b>Practice exercise</b>	<b>388</b>
<b>Appendix: Answers to Practice Questions</b>	<b>391</b>
<b>Chapter 1, Overview of PL/SQL Programming Concepts</b>	<b>391</b>
<b>Chapter 2, Designing PL/SQL Code</b>	<b>392</b>
<b>Chapter 3, Using Collections</b>	<b>393</b>
<b>Chapter 4, Using Advanced Interface Methods</b>	<b>394</b>
<b>Chapter 5, Implementing VPD with Fine Grained Access Control</b>	<b>395</b>
<b>Chapter 6, Working with Large Objects</b>	<b>396</b>
<b>Chapter 7, Using SecureFile LOBs</b>	<b>397</b>
<b>Chapter 8, Compiling and Tuning to Improve Performance</b>	<b>398</b>
<b>Chapter 9, Caching to Improve Performance</b>	<b>400</b>
<b>Chapter 10, Analyzing PL/SQL Code</b>	<b>401</b>
<b>Chapter 11, Profiling and Tracing PL/SQL Code</b>	<b>401</b>
<b>Chapter 12, Safeguarding PL/SQL Code against SQL Injection Attacks</b>	<b>402</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>405</b>

# Preface

Oracle Database 11g brings in a weighted package of new features which takes the database management philosophy from instrumental to self-intelligence level. The new database features, which are more properly called "advanced", rather than "complex", aim either of the two purposes:

- Replacement of a workaround solution with a permanent one (as an enhancement)
- By virtue of routine researches and explorations, introduce a fresh feature to help database administrators and developers with their daily activities

*Oracle Advanced PL/SQL Professional Guide* focuses on advanced features of Oracle 11g PL/SQL. The areas targeted are PL/SQL code design, measuring and optimizing PL/SQL code performance, and analyzing PL/SQL code for reporting purposes and immunizing against attacks. The advanced programming topics such as usage of collections, implementation of VPD, interaction with external procedures in PL/SQL, performance orientation by caching results, tracing and profiling techniques, and protecting against SQL injection will familiarize you with the latest programming findings, trends and recommendations of Oracle. In addition, this book will help you to learn the latest, best practices of PL/SQL programming in terms of code writing, code analyzing for reporting purposes, tracing for performance, and safeguarding the PL/SQL code against hackers.

*An investment in knowledge pays the best interest.*

*-Benjamin Franklin*

The fact remains that the technical certifications from Oracle Corporation establish a benchmark of technical expertise and credibility, and set the tone of an improved career path for application developers. With the growing market in database development, Oracle introduced Advanced PL/SQL Professional Certification (1Z0-146) in the year 2008. The OCP (1Z0-146) certification exam tests aspirants on knowledge of advanced PL/SQL concepts (validated up to Oracle 11g Release 1). An advanced PL/SQL professional is expected to independently design, develop, and tune the PL/SQL code which can efficiently interface database systems and user applications.

The book, *Oracle Advanced PL/SQL Professional Guide*, is a sure recommendation for the preparation of the OCP certification (1Z0-146) exam. Advanced PL/SQL topics are explained thoroughly with the help of demonstrations, figures, and code examples. The book will not only explain a feature, but will also teach its implementation and application. You can easily pick up the content structure followed in the book. The code examples can be tried on your local database setups to give you a feel of the usage of a specific feature in real time scenarios.

## What this book covers

*Chapter 1, Overview of PL/SQL Programming Concepts*, covers the overview of PL/SQL as the primary database programming language. It describes the characteristics of the language and its strengths in database development. This chapter speeds up with the structure of a PL/SQL block and reviews PL/SQL objects such as procedures, functions, and packages. In this chapter, we will also learn to work with SQL Developer.

*Chapter 2, Designing PL/SQL Code*, discusses the handling of cursors in a PL/SQL program. This chapter helps you to learn the guidelines for designing a cursor, usage of cursor variables, and cursor life cycle.

*Chapter 3, Using Collections*, introduces a very important feature of PL/SQL—collections. A collection in a database is very similar to arrays or maps in other programming languages. This chapter compares collection types and makes recommendations for the appropriate selection in a given situation. This chapter also covers the collection methods which are utility APIs for working with collections.

*Chapter 4, Using Advanced Interface Methods*, teaches how to interact with an external program written in a non-PL/SQL language, within PL/SQL. It demonstrates the execution steps for external procedures in PL/SQL. These steps describe the network configuration on a database server (mounted on Windows OS), library object creation, and publishing of a non-language program as an external routine.

*Chapter 5, Implementing VPD with Fine Grained Access Control*, introduces the concept of Fine Grained Access in PL/SQL. The working of FGAC as Virtual Private Database is explained in detail along with an insight into its key features. You will find stepwise implementation of VPD with the help of policy function and the `DBMS_RLS` package. This chapter also describes policy enforcement through application contexts.

*Chapter 6, Working with Large Objects*, discusses the traditional and conventional way of handling large objects in an Oracle database. This chapter starts with the familiarization of the available LOB data types (BLOB, CLOB, BFILE, and Temporary LOBs) and their significance. You will learn about the creation of LOB types in PL/SQL and their respective handling operations. This chapter demonstrates the management of LOB data types using SQL and the `DBMS_LOB` package.

*Chapter 7, Using SecureFile LOBs*, introduces one of the key innovations in Oracle 11g – SecureFiles. SecureFiles are upgraded LOBs which work on an improved philosophy of storage and maintenance. The key improvements of SecureFiles – deduplication, compression, and encryption – are licensed features. This chapter discusses and demonstrates the implementation of these three properties. You will learn how to migrate (or rather upgrade) the existing older LOBs into a new scheme – SecureFiles. The migration techniques covered use an online redefinition method and a partition method.

*Chapter 8, Compiling and Tuning to Improve Performance*, describes fair practices in effective PL/SQL programming. You will be very interested to discover how better code writing impacts code performance. This chapter explains an important aspect of query optimization – the `PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL` parameter. The code behavior and optimization strategy at each level will help you to understand the language internals. Subsequently, the new PRAGMA feature will give you a deeper insight into subprogram inlining concepts.

*Chapter 9, Caching to Improve Performance*, covers another hot feature of Oracle 11g Database – server-side result caching. The newly introduced server-side cache component in SGA holds the results retrieved from SQL query or PL/SQL function. This chapter describes the configuration of a database server for caching feature through related parameters, implementation in SQL through `RESULT_CACHE` hint and implementation in PL/SQL function through the `RESULT_CACHE` clause. Besides the implementation section, this chapter teaches the validation and invalidation of result cache, using the `DBMS_RESULT_CACHE` package.

*Chapter 10, Analyzing PL/SQL Code*, helps you to understand and learn code diagnostics tricks and code analysis for reporting purposes. You will learn to monitor identifier usage, about compilation settings, and generate the subsequent reports from SQL Developer. This chapter discusses a very important addition in Oracle 11g—PL/Scope. It covers the explanations and illustrations to generate the structural reports through the dictionary views. In addition, this chapter also demonstrates the use of the `DBMS_METADATA` package to retrieve and extract metadata of database objects from the database in multiple formats.

*Chapter 11, Profiling and Tracing PL/SQL Code*, aims to demonstrate the tracing and profiling features in PL/SQL. The tracing demonstration uses the `DBMS_TRACE` package to trace the enabled or all calls in a PL/SQ program. The PL/SQL hierarchical profiler is a new innovation in 11g to identify and report the time consumed at each line of the program. The biggest benefit is that raw profiler data can be reproduced meaningfully into HTML reports.

*Chapter 12, Safeguarding PL/SQL Code against SQL Injection Attacks*, discusses the SQL injection as a concept and its remedies. The SQL injection is a serious attack on the vulnerable areas of the PL/SQL code which can lead to extraction of confidential information and many fatal results. You will learn the impacts and precautionary recommendations to avoid injective attacks. This chapter discusses the preventive measures such as using invoker's rights, client input validation tips, and using `DBMS_ASSERT` to sanitize inputs. It concludes on the testing strategies which can be practiced to identify vulnerable areas in SQL.

*Appendix, Answers to Practice Questions*, contains the answers to the practice questions for all chapters.

## What you need for this book

You need to have a sound understanding of SQL and PL/SQL basics. You must have mid-level experience of working with Oracle programming.

## Who this book is for

The book is for associate-level developers who are aiming for professional-level certification. This book can also be used to understand and practice advanced PL/SQL features of Oracle.

## Conventions

In this book, you will find a number of styles of text that distinguish between different kinds of information. Here are some examples of these styles, and an explanation of their meaning.

Code words in text are shown as follows: "The `SERVEROUTPUT` parameter is a SQL\*Plus variable which enables the printing of block debug messages."

A block of code is set as follows:

```
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE

/*Declare a local variable and initialize with a default value*/
    L_NUM NUMBER := 15;
    L_RES NUMBER;
BEGIN

/*Calculate the double of local variable*/
    L_RES := L_NUM *2;

/*Print the result*/
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Double of ' || TO_CHAR(L_NUM) || ' is ' || TO_
CHAR(L_RES));
END;
/
Double of 15 is 30
```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.



When we wish to draw your attention to a particular part of a code block, the relevant lines or items are set in bold:



```
/*Check if the cursor is already open*/
    IF NOT C_EMP%ISOPEN THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Cursor is closed....Cursor has to be
opened');
    END IF;
```

Any command-line input or output is written as follows:

```
SQL> HELP INDEX
```

**New terms** and **important words** are shown in bold. Words that you see on the screen, in menus or dialog boxes for example, appear in the text like this: "Right-click on the **Connections** node and select **New Connection...** to open the connection wizard".

 Warnings or important notes appear in a box like this. 

 Tips and tricks appear like this. 

## Reader feedback

Feedback from our readers is always welcome. Let us know what you think about this book – what you liked or may have disliked. Reader feedback is important for us to develop titles that you really get the most out of.

To send us general feedback, simply send an e-mail to [feedback@packtpub.com](mailto:feedback@packtpub.com), and mention the book title in the subject of your message.

If there is a topic that you have expertise in and you are interested in either writing or contributing to a book, see our author guide on [www.packtpub.com/authors](http://www.packtpub.com/authors).

## Customer support

Now that you are the proud owner of a Packt book, we have a number of things to help you to get the most from your purchase.

## Downloading the example code

You can download the example code files for all Packt books you have purchased from your account at <http://www.packtpub.com>. If you purchased this book elsewhere, you can visit <http://www.packtpub.com/support> and register to have the files e-mailed directly to you.

## Errata

Although we have taken every care to ensure the accuracy of our content, mistakes do happen. If you find a mistake in one of our books – maybe a mistake in the text or the code – we would be grateful if you would report this to us. By doing so, you can save other readers from frustration and help us improve subsequent versions of this book. If you find any errata, please report them by visiting <http://www.packtpub.com/support>, selecting your book, clicking on the **errata submission form** link, and entering the details of your errata. Once your errata are verified, your submission will be accepted and the errata will be uploaded to our website, or added to any list of existing errata, under the Errata section of that title.

## Piracy

Piracy of copyright material on the Internet is an ongoing problem across all media. At Packt, we take the protection of our copyright and licenses very seriously. If you come across any illegal copies of our works, in any form, on the Internet, please provide us with the location address or website name immediately so that we can pursue a remedy.

Please contact us at [copyright@packtpub.com](mailto:copyright@packtpub.com) with a link to the suspected pirated material.

We appreciate your help in protecting our authors, and our ability to bring you valuable content.

## Questions

You can contact us at [questions@packtpub.com](mailto:questions@packtpub.com) if you are having a problem with any aspect of the book, and we will do our best to address it.



# 1

## Overview of PL/SQL Programming Concepts

In the summer of 1970, Dr. E.F. Codd published his paper, *A Relational Model of Data for Large Shared Data Banks*, for the ACM journal. The projected model was accepted and subsequently an interactive database language, SQL, was developed by IBM Corporation, Inc. In 1979, Relational Software, Inc. stepped into the commercial implementation of SQL as the primary RDBMS language. Later, Relational Software, Inc. transformed into Oracle and since then, its story has been a success.

The **Structured Query Language** or **SQL** (pronounced "Sequel") has been used as the primary interactive language for all data operations such as selection, creation, and manipulation. Besides data operations, the language has administrative and monitoring features which ensure data consistency, integrity, and object controllability. By virtue of its multifaceted and versatile behavior in data centric environments, all major RDBMS support SQL as a database interaction language. The universal acceptance of SQL eases the logical usability across the databases (such as MySQL and SQL Server) with minor syntactical modifications.

Over the initial years of exploration, the procedural limitations of SQL were identified which prevented it from being an efficient programming language amongst the fourth generation languages. The head to head competition and demanding expectations of the industry led to the evolution of a procedural version of SQL in the Oracle database family. The first version of PL/SQL was debuted in Oracle 6.0 (in 1991) as an optional procedural extension in SQL\* forms. Since its induction, PL/SQL has emerged as a strong and proven database programming language. With the release of Oracle 11g database (in 2007), PL/SQL has successfully stepped into its 11.0 version.

In this chapter, we will tour the Oracle PL/SQL programming concepts to get an overview of PL/SQL block, subprograms, exception handling, and object dependencies. The chapter outlines the benefits and characteristics of the language in the following sections:

- Introduction to PL/SQL
- Oracle development tools – SQL Developer and SQL\*Plus
- Recapitulate procedures, functions, packages, and cursors
- Exception handling
- Object dependencies
- Major Oracle supplied packages

## PL/SQL—the procedural aspect

PL/SQL stands for **Procedural Language-Structured Query Language**. It is a significant member of the Oracle programming toolset and extensively used to code server-side programs. Some of its major accomplishments are that it:

- Supports programming constructs to design a program unit
- Implements business logic in an Oracle server using cursors and database objects such as packages, subprograms, and many more
- Makes the application portability easier
- Preserves execution privileges and transaction management
- Makes use of advanced PL/SQL features such as collections to process bulk data and enhance performance
- Allows external programs to be executed from PL/SQL

As a language, the different perceptions of PL/SQL are as follows:

- **An interactive and structured language:** The PL/SQL language comprises of a glossary of expressive and explanatory keywords. The self-indenting, structured feature, and ANSI compatibility ensures quick learning and adaptation for an individual.
- **An embedded language:** A PL/SQL program is not environment-dependent but can be easily invoked from any recognized Oracle development environment such as SQL\* Plus, SQL Developer, TOAD, reporting tools, and so on.

- **An integral language:** A database manager can easily integrate a PL/SQL server-side program with other client-side programming interfaces such as Java, C++, or .NET. The PL/SQL procedures or subprograms can be invoked from client programs as executable statements.

## My first PL/SQL program

A PL/SQL block is the elementary unit of a program which groups a set of executable procedural statements. A block has defined "start" and "end" stages and it has three forms:

- **Anonymous:** This block is an unnamed PL/SQL block which is persistent for single execution only
- **Named:** This block contains named PL/SQL programs which are stored physically in the database as schema objects
- **Nested:** A block within another PL/SQL block forms a nested block structure

The skeleton of a PL/SQL block has four sections:

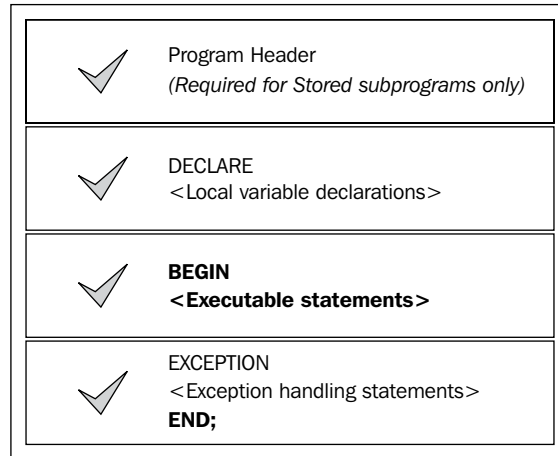
- **Header:** This is an optional section which is required for the named blocks. It contains block name, block owner's name, parameter specifications, and return type specification (for functions).
- **Declaration:** This is an optional section which is used for declaration of local variables, cursors, and local subprograms. The `DECLARE` keyword indicates the beginning of the declaration section.
- **Execution:** This is the mandatory section of a PL/SQL block which contains the executable statements. These statements are parsed by the PL/SQL engine and executed on the block invocation. The `BEGIN` and `END` keywords indicate the beginning and end of an executable section.
- **Exception:** This is the optional section of the block which contains the exception handlers. The appropriate exception handler is activated upon any exception raised from the executable section to suggest alternate steps. The `EXCEPTION` keyword indicates the start of the exception section.



### Downloading the example code

You can download the example code files for all Packt books you have purchased from your account at <http://www.packtpub.com>. If you purchased this book elsewhere, you can visit <http://www.packtpub.com/support> and register to have the files e-mailed directly to you.

The following block diagram shows the structure of a PL/SQL block. The sections marked in red are the mandatory ones with the others being optional:



The PL/SQL following program illustrates the declaration and executable sections. The program declares a number variable, calculates its double value, and prints the result.

```
/*Enable the Serveroutput to display block messages*/  
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
```



The SERVEROUTPUT parameter is a SQL\*Plus variable which enables the printing of block debug messages. It is discussed in detail in the *SQL\*Plus* section.

```
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/  
DECLARE  
/*Declare a local variable and initialize with a default value*/  
    L_NUM NUMBER := 15;  
    L_RES NUMBER;  
BEGIN  
/*Calculate the double of local variable*/  
L_RES := L_NUM *2;  
/*Print the result*/  
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Double of '||TO_CHAR(L_NUM)||' is '||TO_  
CHAR(L_RES));  
END;  
/  
Double of 15 is 30  
  
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

## PL/SQL development environments

Oracle provides and recommends the usage of its development tools for SQL writing and code execution. This chapter will cover the two main developer tools from Oracle:

- SQL Developer
- SQL\*Plus

However, there are many SQL development interfaces available on the Web such as TOAD from Quest Software, Dreamcoder by Mentat Technologies, and so on.

## SQL Developer

SQL Developer is a **Graphical User Interface (GUI)** tool from the Oracle Corporation. It is free to use and includes a wide spectrum of new features with each of its releases. It allows the users to perform database activities such as SQL writing, PL/SQL execution, DBA activities easily, interactively, and considerably within time. Many of the database utilities such as unit testing, profiling, extended search, and SQL monitoring have been implemented as GUI utilities and can be easily used with the PL/SQL programs. The latest version of SQL Developer is 3.1 (3.1.07.42) which has been released on February 7, 2012. SQL Developer can be downloaded from the Oracle Technology Network link:

<http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/developer-tools/sql-developer/downloads/index.html>

The latest release of the database development tool offers new features such as inclusion of RMAN under DBA navigator, support for data pump technology, renovated data copy and difference features, support for migration to Teradata and Sybase, and generation of PDF reports.

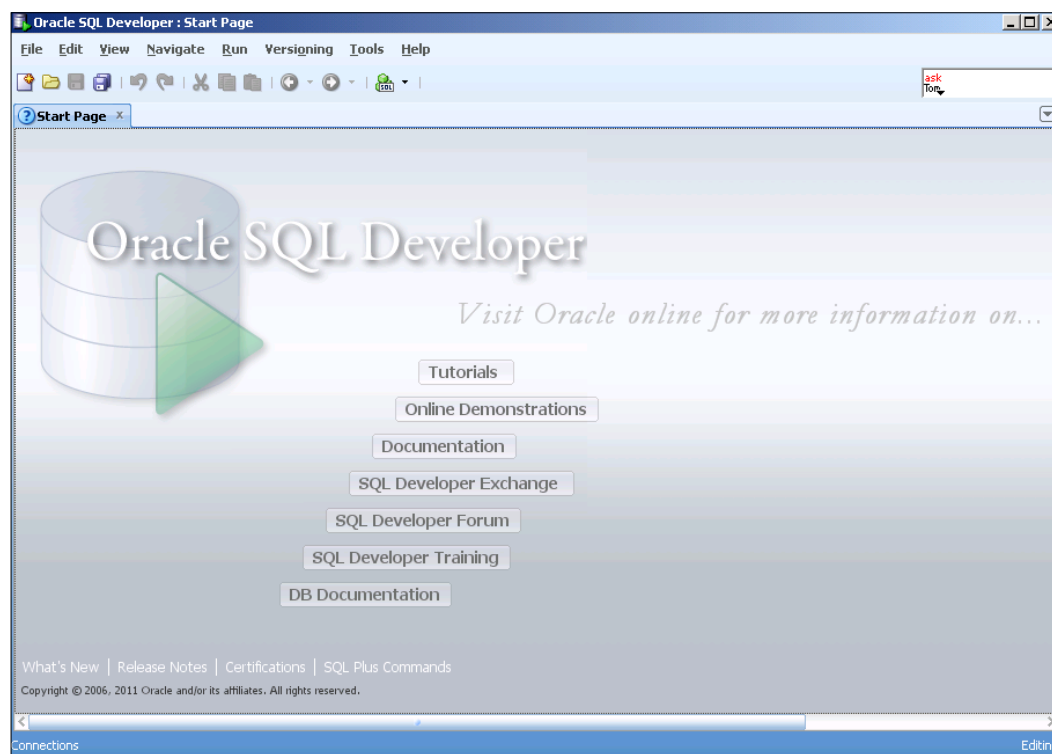
The key accomplishments offered by SQL Developer are:

- Authenticating and connecting to multiple Oracle databases
- Allowing creation and maintenance of schema objects packages, procedures, functions, triggers, indexes and views
- Querying and manipulating the data
- Database utilities such as version maintenance, admin activities, migration, and database export
- Support for SQL\*Plus commands

The major offerings shown in the preceding list are by virtue of the tool features. The salient features of the SQL Developer tool are:

- Connection browser and Schema browser
- SQL Worksheet and Query Builder
- Database import and export utility wizard
- Database user-defined reports
- Code repository configuration for version control
- Database copy and migration utility wizard
- Third-party databases
- Oracle APEX integration
- TimesTen integration

The following screenshot shows the **Start Page** of Oracle SQL Developer:



## SQL Developer—the history

The following flowchart demonstrates the release history of SQL Developer:

<b>SQL Developer 1.X</b>	• Release with Oracle 11g R1
<b>SQL Developer 1.2.X</b>	• Database Migration introduced in SQL Developer
<b>SQL Developer 1.5.X</b>	• New features such as Version Control and File Management introduced
<b>SQL Developer 1.5.4</b>	• Supported 9 languages
<b>SQL Developer 1.5.5</b>	• Released with Oracle 11g R2
<b>SQL Developer 1.5.6</b>	• Released with Oracle JDeveloper 11g
<b>SQL Developer 2.0</b>	• PL/SQL unit testing and Data Modeler Viewer
<b>SQL Developer 3.0</b>	• Latest Release

## Creating a connection

Once the SQL Developer tool is downloaded from the **Oracle Technology Network (OTN)** website (in ZIP format), it is ready for use and does not require any installation. The target server can be Oracle 11g database software. For educational and practice purposes, Oracle recommends the usage of the Oracle Database Express edition. It can be downloaded for free from the following URL:

<http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/database/express-edition/overview/index.html>

By default, the database software installation takes care of the Oracle database configuration and Oracle network configuration.

Now, we shall start working with SQL Developer to connect to the database. The first and foremost step is establishing the connection to the target database.

The steps for creating a connection in SQL Developer are as follows:

1. Double-click on `\\sqldeveloper\sqldeveloper.exe`.
2. Go to **Menu | View | Connections**. A tabbed page titled **Connections** will appear at the left-hand side of the page. The top node of the tree is **Connections**.
3. Right-click on the **Connections** node and select **New Connection...** to open the connection wizard.
4. Specify the connection name, username, password, connection type, role (DBA or default), host name, port number, and SID of the target database. Connection type must be **Basic** if you specify the connection parameters. If **TNS**, then select a connection string from the **Network Alias** drop-down list (which is in sync with the `TNSNAMES.ORA` file)
5. Check the **Save Password** option to allow the Connection wizard to remember the password of this user.
6. Click on the **Test** button to verify the connection. The status (success or error message) will appear in the wizard's console.
7. Click on the **Connect** button to connect to the database. By default, it opens a SQL Worksheet to write and execute queries.

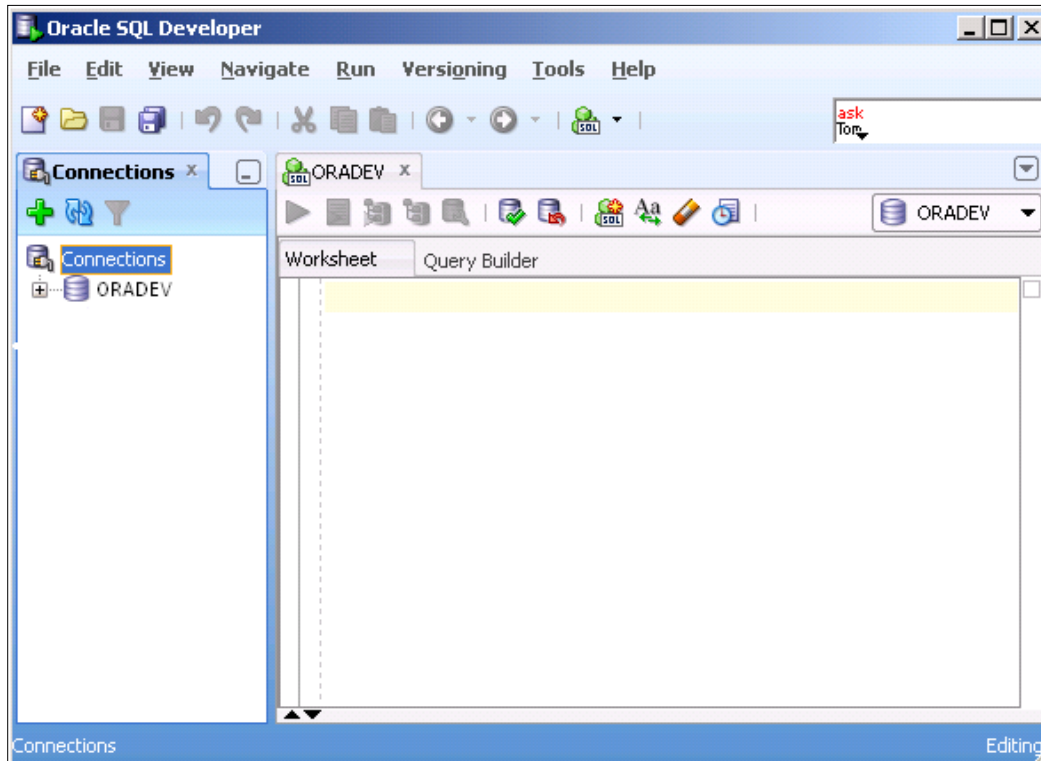
## SQL Worksheet

The SQL Worksheet window is the primary editor to perform database activities. It is used to write and execute SQL statements, PL/SQL code, and SQL\*Plus commands.

A new worksheet can be opened in two ways:

- Hitting the shortcut key, `Alt + F10`
- Navigating to **Tools | SQL Worksheet**

When a SQL worksheet is opened by following either of the preceding options, a window pops up which prompts the user to select the database connection applicable for the current worksheet. The available database connection to open a new SQL worksheet can be selected from the drop-down option:



The worksheet contains multiple, quick utility actions as iconized menus. These menus perform a few of the basic activities associated with a script execution; for example, running a script, autotrace, and explain plan. With reference to the preceding screenshot of a sample SQL worksheet, the menu functions are described as follows:

- **Run Statement:** It executes the statement at the current cursor position.
- **Run Script:** It executes a script.
- **Autotrace:** It generates trace information about the statement.

- **Explain Plan:** It generates an execution plan for the query, starting at the current cursor position
- **SQL Tuning Advisor:** It advises the tuning tips for the current user. The user must have `ADVISOR` system privilege to use this icon.
- **Commit:** It commits the ongoing transaction in the current session.
- **Rollback:** It rolls back the ongoing transaction in the current session.
- **Unshared SQL Worksheet:** It opens a new SQL worksheet.
- **To Upper/Lower/InitCaps:** It changes the string case of the statement to upper or lower or initial caps.
- **Clear:** It clears all the statements from the current SQL Worksheet.
- **SQL History:** It opens a dialog box with all the SQL statements executed for this user.

## Executing a SQL statement

A SQL statement can be executed from the SQL Worksheet in three ways:

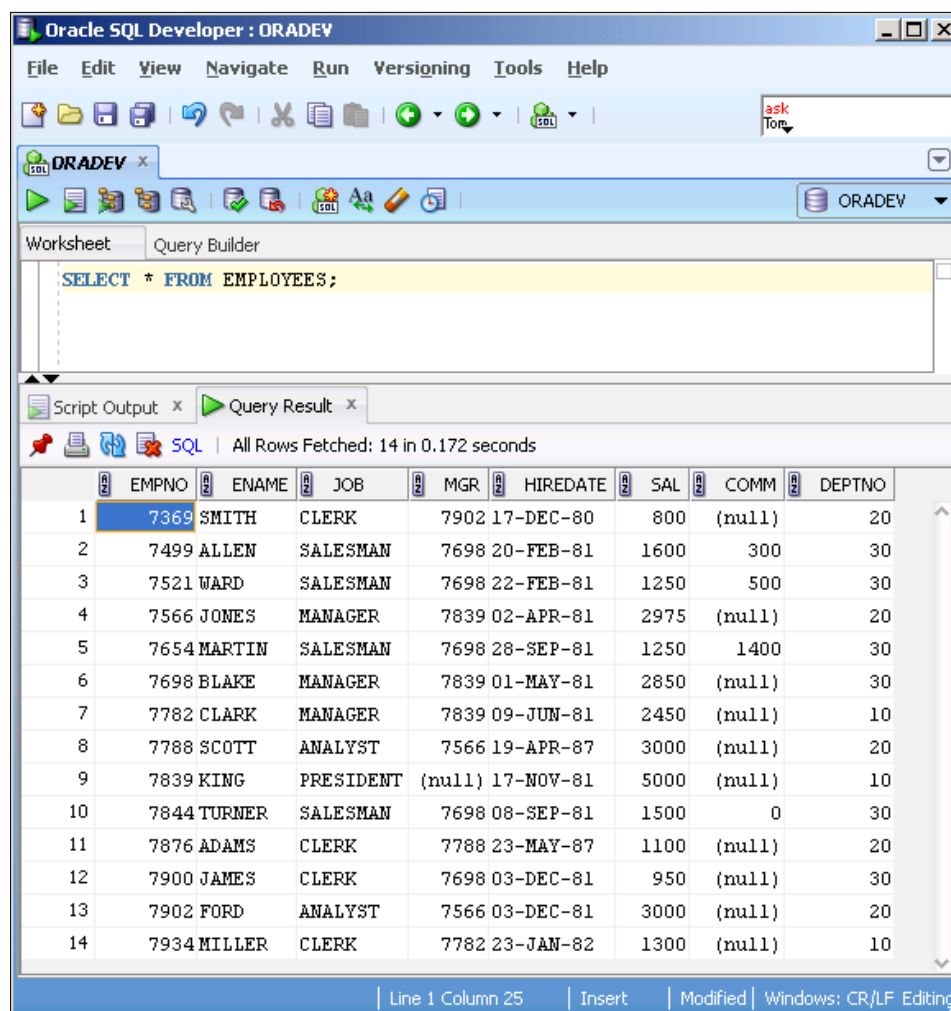
- Selecting the SQL statement and clicking on the **Run Statement** or **Run Script** icon from the Worksheet menu
- Selecting the SQL statement and pressing *F9*
- Terminating the SQL statement with a semicolon and pressing *Ctrl + Enter*

The result of the SQL statement execution is displayed in the **Query Result** tab. The following screenshot shows the execution of the `SELECT` statement using *Ctrl + Enter*:



The SQL Worksheet doesn't support some SQL\*Plus commands such as `append`, `archive`, `attribute`, and `break`.





## Calling a SQL script from SQL Developer

A SQL script saved on a specific OS location can be invoked from SQL Developer Worksheet. We will cover an overview of the two methods to execute a saved SQL script:

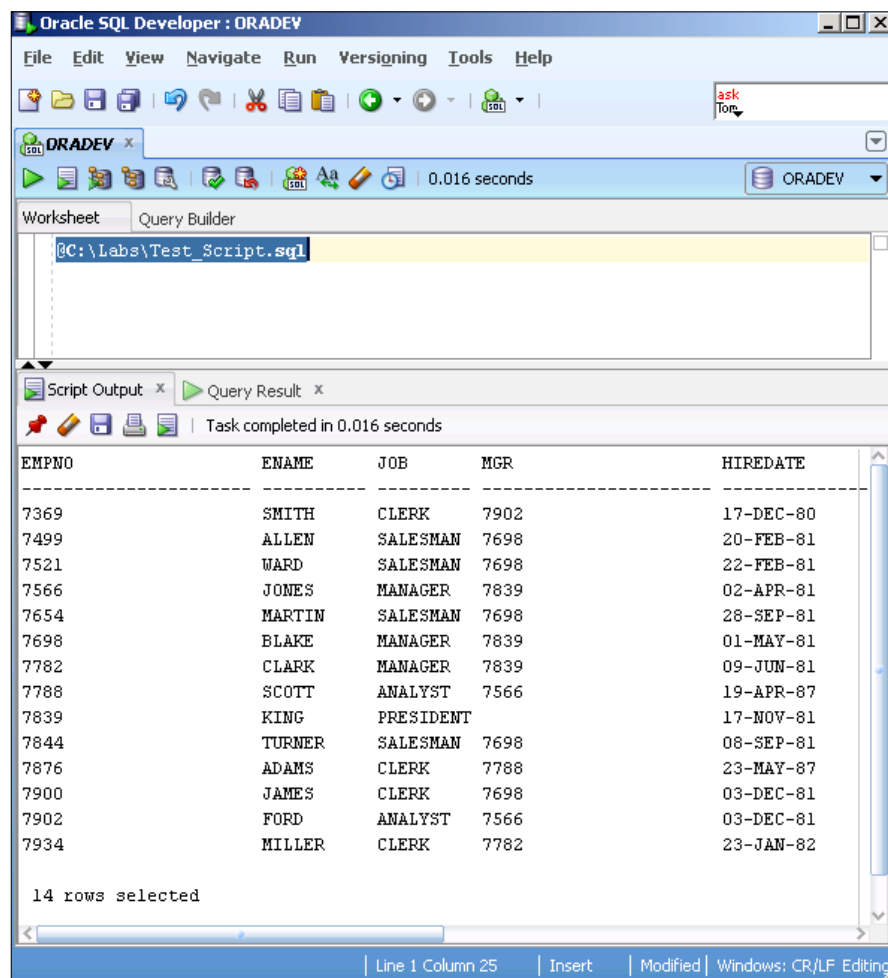
- A saved SQL script from an OS location can be invoked in The SQL Worksheet. It can be executed either by clicking on the **Run Script** (or **F5**) icon, or **Ctrl + Enter** or **F9**. The output of the script is displayed in the **Script Output** tab.

- Another option to invoke a saved script is to open it from the menu path, **File | Open**. Navigate to the script location and open the script. The script code would be opened in a new SQL Worksheet. Note that the worksheet's name is renamed as the actual script name. Now, the code can be executed using the **Run Script** icon.

A SQL script, `Test_Script.sql` at the `C:\Labs\` location contains the following SQL statement:

```
SELECT * FROM EMPLOYEES  
/
```

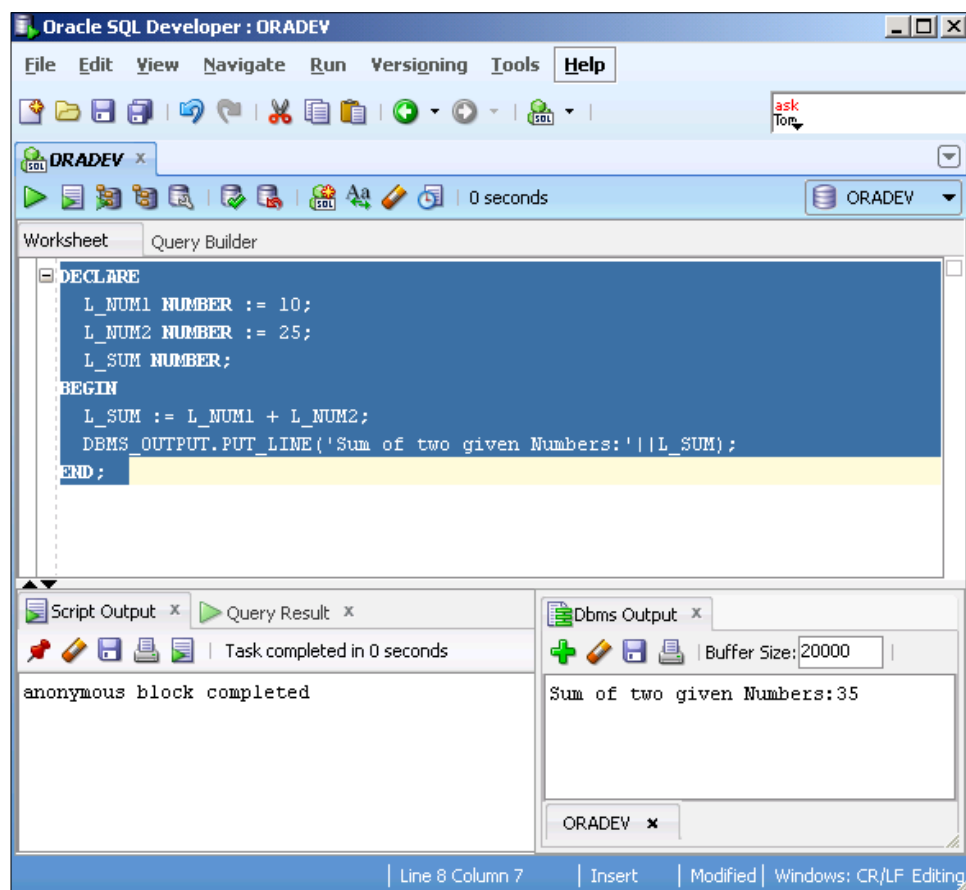
As shown in the following screenshot, the script has been invoked in the SQL Worksheet using SQL\*Plus execute command, `@`:



## Creating and executing an anonymous PL/SQL block

An anonymous PL/SQL block can be written and executed, as shown in the following screenshot. Note that the PL/SQL block must be terminated with a semicolon. The **Script Output** tab displays the confirmed status of the block execution as **anonymous block completed**.

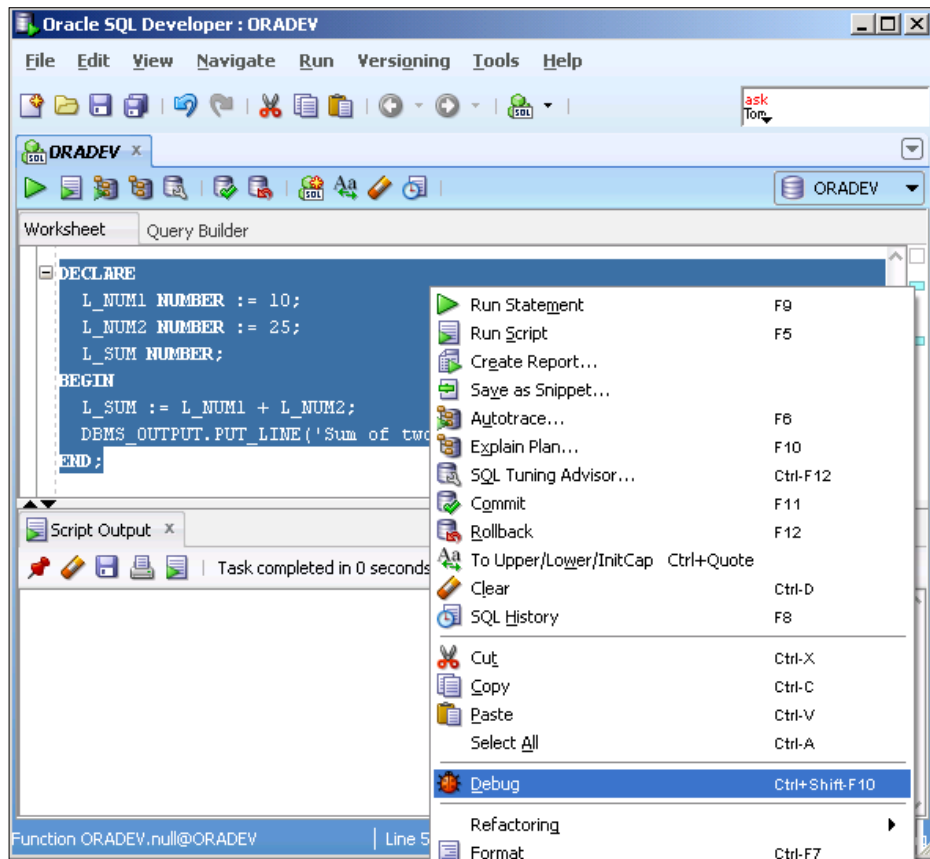
The block output can be viewed in the **Dbms Output** Tab. This tab remains hidden until it can be enabled and activated by navigating to **Menu | View | Dbms Output**:



## Debugging the PL/SQL code

The PL/SQL code can be debugged to observe the execution flow. The PL/SQL blocks and stored subprograms (procedures, functions, triggers, and packages) can be compiled for debugging.

An anonymous PL/SQL block can be debugged by selecting the block and choosing the **Debug** option from the right-click option list, as shown in the following screenshot:



Once the **Debug** option is clicked, the debugging starts and the following output appears in the **Messages** tab:

```
Connecting to the database ORADEV.
Executing PL/SQL: ALTER SESSION SET PLSQL_DEBUG=TRUE
Executing PL/SQL: CALL DBMS_DEBUG_JDWP.CONNECT_TCP
( '127.0.0.1', '3953' )
Debugger accepted connection from database on port 3953.
Executing PL/SQL: CALL DBMS_DEBUG_JDWP.DISCONNECT()
Sum of two given Numbers:35
Process exited.
Disconnecting from the database ORADEV.
Debugger disconnected from database.
```



The database user must have `DEBUG CREATE SESSION` and `DEBUG ANY PROCEDURE` privileges to debug the PL/SQL code.

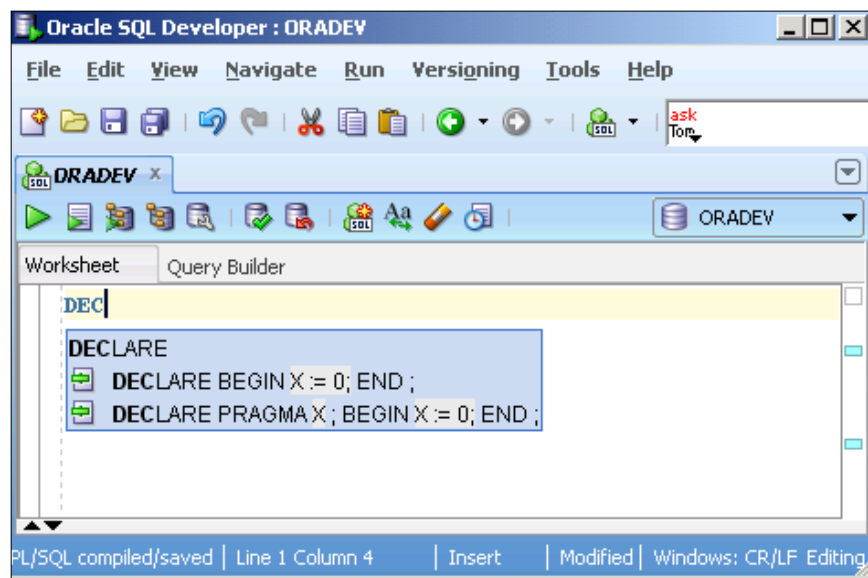
Likewise, the stored subprograms can be compiled using **Compile for Debug** to mark them for the debugging process. Henceforth, the execution of the subprograms can be traced line by line using the Oracle supplied package, `DBMS_TRACE`.

## Editing and saving the scripts

SQL Developer provides enhanced editing features while writing the code in the SQL Worksheet. The automated code completion suggestion in the drop-down menu effectively eases the code writing. Besides, the PL/SQL syntax highlights, member method drop-down menu, code folding, and bookmarks are the other code editing features available in the SQL Worksheet.

A stored subprogram in the schema object tree can be opened in the SQL Worksheet for editing.

The following screenshot shows the auto-code completion feature of SQL Developer. You can select any of the available options as suited for the script:



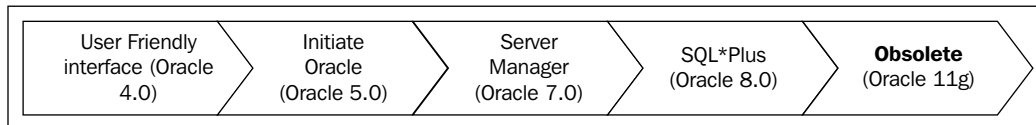
The SQL statements or PL/SQL code in the current SQL Worksheet can be saved as a text or SQL file at any specified location on the OS. Either follow the full navigation path (**File** | **Save**) or use the quick utility **Save** icon. Once the Windows **Save** dialog box appears, navigate to the target location, specify the filename, and click on the **Save** button.

## SQL\*Plus

**SQL\*Plus** is a command-line utility interface and has been one of the primitive interfaces used by database professionals for database activities. The SQL\*Plus session is similar to the SQL Worksheet of SQL Developer, where you can write and execute SQL statements and PL/SQL code.

Starting from Oracle 5.0, the SQL\*Plus interface has been a part of the Oracle development kit. With regular revisions and enhancements in subsequent Oracle releases, it has been deprecated in the Oracle 11g release to recommend the use of SQL Developer. However, the SQL\*Plus environment can still be established from command prompt.

The evolution cycle of SQL\*Plus is shown in the following diagram:



The Oracle SQL\*Plus session can be invoked from `sqlplus.exe`. This executable file is located in the `$Oracle_home\bin` folder. Alternatively, it can also be invoked by performing the following steps:

1. Open command prompt.
2. Enter `SQLPLUS`, press *Enter*. Note the SQL\*Plus welcome message. The editor will prompt for a username and password.
3. Enter the username, password, and database connection string. Press *Enter*.
4. Connect to the database:

```
C:\>SQLPLUS
```

```
SQL*Plus: Release 11.2.0.1.0 Production on Fri Dec 23 14:20:36 2011
Copyright (c) 1982, 2010, Oracle. All rights reserved.
```

---

```
Enter user-name: ORADEV/ORADEV
```

```
Connected to:
```

```
Oracle Database 11g Enterprise Edition Release 11.2.0.1.0 - Production
With the Partitioning, OLAP, Data Mining and Real Application Testing
options
```

```
SQL>
```

SQL\*Plus has its own set of shell commands which can be used for the execution of scripts, editing the code, and formatting the query output.

The complete set of SQL\*Plus commands can be obtained by entering `HELP [INDEX | ?]` after the SQL prompt. The complete list of SQL\*Plus commands are as follows:

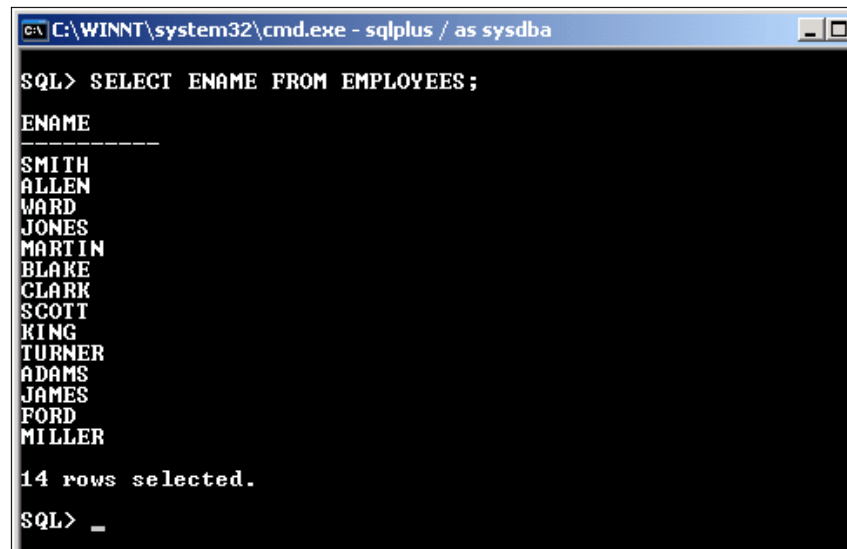
```
SQL> HELP INDEX
```

```
Enter Help [topic] for help.
```

@	COPY	PAUSE	SHUTDOWN
@@	DEFINE	PRINT	SPOOL
/	DEL	PROMPT	SQLPLUS
ACCEPT	DESCRIBE	QUIT	START
APPEND	DISCONNECT	RECOVER	STARTUP
ARCHIVE LOG	EDIT	REMARK	STORE
ATTRIBUTE	EXECUTE	REPFOOTER	TIMING
BREAK	EXIT	REPHEADER	TTITLE
BTITLE	GET	RESERVED WORDS (SQL)	UNDEFINE
CHANGE	HELP	RESERVED WORDS (PL/SQL)	VARIABLE
CLEAR	HOST	RUN	WHENEVER OSERROR
COLUMN	INPUT	SAVE	WHENEVER SQLERROR
COMPUTE	LIST	SET	XQUERY
CONNECT	PASSWORD	SHOW	

## Executing a SQL statement in SQL\*Plus

A SQL statement can be executed in the SQL\*Plus editor, terminated by a semicolon or a forward slash (/). The following screenshot demonstrates the execution of a SELECT statement. The query selects the names of all employees from the EMPLOYEES table:



```
C:\WINNT\system32\cmd.exe - sqlplus / as sysdba

SQL> SELECT ENAME FROM EMPLOYEES;

ENAME
-----
SMITH
ALLEN
WARD
JONES
MARTIN
BLAKE
CLARK
SCOTT
KING
TURNER
ADAMS
JAMES
FORD
MILLER

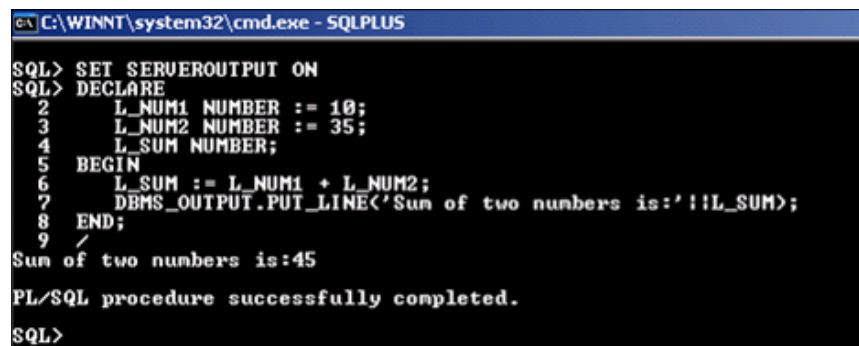
14 rows selected.

SQL> _
```

## Executing an anonymous PL/SQL block

Similar to the execution in SQL Developer, a PL/SQL block can be executed in SQL\*Plus. The SERVEROUTPUT environment variable has to be set to ON to display the results in the editor.

The following screenshot demonstrates the execution of a PL/SQL block in SQL\*Plus:



```
C:\WINNT\system32\cmd.exe - SQLPLUS

SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
SQL> DECLARE
2   L_NUM1 NUMBER := 10;
3   L_NUM2 NUMBER := 35;
4   L_SUM NUMBER;
5 BEGIN
6   L_SUM := L_NUM1 + L_NUM2;
7   DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Sum of two numbers is: '||L_SUM);
8 END;
9 /
Sum of two numbers is:45

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

SQL>
```

## Procedures

A **procedure** is a derivative of PL/SQL block structure which is identified by its own specific name. It is stored as a schema object in the database and implements business logic in the applications. For this reason, procedures are often referred to as Business Managers of PL/SQL which not only maintain the business logic repository, but also demonstrate solution scalability and a modular way of programming.

The characteristics of procedures are as follows:

- A procedure can neither be called from a `SELECT` statement nor can it appear as a right-hand operand in an assignment statement. It has to be invoked from the executable section of a PL/SQL block as a procedural statement.
- They can optionally accept parameters in `IN`, `OUT`, or `IN OUT` mode.
- This implies that the only possibility for a procedure to return a value is through `OUT` parameters, but not through the `RETURN [value]` statement. The `RETURN` statement in a procedure is used to exit the procedure and skip the further execution.

For recapitulation, the following table differentiates between the `IN`, `OUT`, and `IN OUT` parameters:

IN	OUT	IN OUT
Default parameter mode	Has to be explicitly defined	Has to be explicitly defined
Parameter's value is passed into the program from the calling environment	Parameter returns a value back to the calling environment	Parameter may pass a value from the calling environment to the program or return a value to the calling environment
Parameters are passed by reference	Parameters are passed by value	Parameters are passed by value
May be constant, literal, or initialized variable	Uninitialized variable	Initialized variable
Can hold the default value	Default value cannot be assigned	Default value cannot be assigned

The syntax for a procedure is as follows:

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] PROCEDURE [Procedure Name] [Parameter List]
[AUTHID DEFINER | CURRENT_USER]
IS
    [Declaration Statements]
BEGIN
    [Executable Statements]
EXCEPTION
    [Exception handlers]
END [Procedure Name];
```

The following standalone procedure converts the case of the input string from lowercase to uppercase:

```
/*Create a procedure to convert the string from lower case to
upper case*/
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE P_TO_UPPER (P_STR VARCHAR2)
IS
/*Declare the local variables*/
    L_STR VARCHAR2(50);
BEGIN
/*Convert the case using UPPER function*/
    L_STR := UPPER(P_STR);
/*Display the output with appropriate message*/
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Input string in Upper case : '||L_STR);
END;
/
```

Procedure created.

## Executing a procedure

A procedure can be either executed from SQL\*Plus or from a PL/SQL block.

The P\_TO\_UPPER procedure can be executed from SQL\*Plus.

The following illustration shows the execution of the procedure from SQL\*Plus (note that the parameter is passed using the bind variable):

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT parameter to print the results in the
environment*/
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Declare a session variable for the input*/
SQL> VARIABLE M_STR VARCHAR2(50);
```

```

/*Assign a test value to the session variable*/
SQL> EXECUTE :M_STR := 'My first PLSQL procedure';

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

/*Call the procedure P_TO_UPPER*/
SQL> EXECUTE P_TO_UPPER(:M_STR);
Input string in Upper case : MY FIRST PLSQL PROCEDURE

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

```

The `P_TO_UPPER` procedure can be called as a procedural statement within an anonymous PL/SQL block:

```

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT parameter to print the results in the
environment*/
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Start a PL/SQL block*/
SQL> BEGIN
    /*Call the P_TO_UPPER procedure*/
    P_TO_UPPER ('My first PLSQL procedure');
END;
/

Input string in Upper case : MY FIRST PLSQL PROCEDURE

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

```

## Functions

Like a procedure, a **function** is also a derivative of a PL/SQL block structure which is physically stored within a database. Unlike procedures, they are the "workforce" in PL/SQL and meant for calculative and computational activities in the applications.

The characteristics of functions are as follows:

- Functions can be called from SQL statements (`SELECT` and DMLs). Such functions must accept only `IN` parameters of valid SQL types. Alternatively, a function can also be invoked from `SELECT` statements if the function body obeys the database purity rules.

- Functions can accept parameters in all three modes (IN, OUT, and IN OUT) and mandatorily return a value. The type of the return value must be a valid SQL data type (not be of BOOLEAN, RECORD, TABLE, or any other PL/SQL data type).

The syntax for a function is as follows:

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] FUNCTION [Function Name] [Parameter List]
RETURN [Data type]
[AUTHID DEFINER | CURRENT_USER]
[DETERMINISTIC | PARALLEL_ENABLED | PIPELINES]
[RESULT_CACHE [RELIES_ON (table name)]]
IS
    [Declaration Statements]
BEGIN
    [Executable Statements]
    RETURN [Value]
EXCEPTION
    [Exception handlers]
END [Function Name];
```

The standalone function, F\_GET\_DOUBLE, accepts a single argument and returns its double:

```
/*Create the function F_GET_DOUBLE*/
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION F_GET_DOUBLE (P_NUM NUMBER)
RETURN NUMBER /*Specify the return data type*/
IS
/*Declare the local variable*/
    L_NUM NUMBER;
BEGIN
/*Calculate the double of the given number*/
    L_NUM := P_NUM * 2;
/*Return the calculated value*/
    RETURN L_NUM;
END;
/

Function created.
```

## Function—execution methods

As a common feature shared among the stored subprograms, functions can be invoked from a SQL\*Plus environment and called from a PL/SQL as a procedural statement.

The following code snippet demonstrates the execution of a function from a SQL\*Plus environment and its return value have been captured in a session bind variable:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT parameter to print the results in the
environment*/
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Declare a session variable M_NUM to hold the function output*/
SQL> VARIABLE M_NUM NUMBER;

/*Function is executed and output is assigned to the session
variable*/
SQL> EXEC :M_NUM := F_GET_DOUBLE(10);

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

/*Print the session variable M_NUM*/
SQL> PRINT M_NUM

M_NUM
-----
20
```

Now, we will see the function execution from an anonymous PL/SQL block as a procedural statement:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT parameter to print the results in the
environment*/
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

SQL>DECLARE
    M_NUM NUMBER;
BEGIN
    M_NUM := F_GET_DOUBLE(10);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Doubled the input value as : '||M_NUM);
END;
/
Doubled the input value as : 20

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

## Restrictions on calling functions from SQL expressions

Unlike procedures, a stored function can be called from `SELECT` statements; provided it must not violate the database purity levels. These rules are as follows:

- A function called from a `SELECT` statement cannot contain DML statements
- A function called from a `UPDATE` or `DELETE` statement on a table cannot query (`SELECT`) or perform transaction (DMLs) on the same table
- A function called from SQL expressions cannot contain the TCL (`COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK`) command or the DDL (`CREATE` or `ALTER`) command

Besides these rules, a standalone user-defined function must qualify the following conditions:

- The parameters to the stored function, if any, should be passed in "pass by reference" mode that is, `IN` parameter only. The data type of the parameter must be a valid SQL data type. Also, the parameters must follow positional notation in the list.
- The return type of the function must be a valid SQL data type.

The `F_GET_DOUBLE` function can easily be embedded within a `SELECT` statement as it perfectly respects all the preceding rules:

```
/*Invoke the function F_GET_DOUBLE from SELECT statement*/
SQL> SELECT F_GET_DOUBLE(10) FROM DUAL;

F_GET_DOUBLE(10)
-----
                20
```

In Oracle, `DUAL` is a table owned by the `SYS` user, which has a single column, `DUMMY`, of `VARCHAR2 (1)` type. It was first designed by Charles Weiss while working with internal views to duplicate a row. The `DUAL` table is created by default during the creation of data dictionaries with a single row, whose value is `x`. The users other than `SYS`, use its public synonym, to select the value of pseudo columns, such as `USER`, `SYSDATE`, `NEXTVAL`, or `CURRVAL`. Oracle 10g has considerably improved the performance implications of the `DUAL` table through a "fast dual" access mechanism.

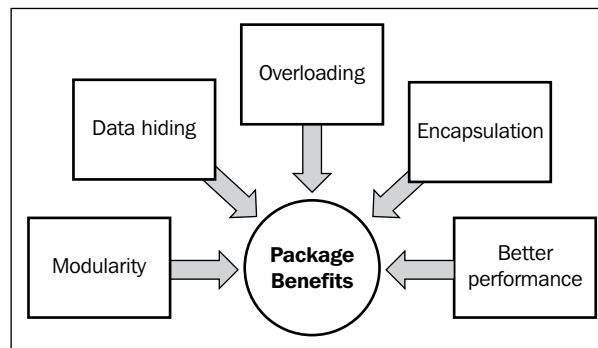
## PL/SQL packages

**Packages** are the database objects which behave as libraries and grounds on the principle of encapsulation and data hiding. A package is privileged to contain a variety of constructs such as subprograms, variables, cursors, exceptions, and variables. In addition, it enjoys multiple add-on features such as subprogram overloading, public and private member constructs, and so on.



Standalone subprograms cannot be overloaded. Only packaged subprograms can be overloaded by virtue of their signatures.

The following diagram shows the advantages of a package:




A package has two components – package specification and package body. While package specification contains the prototype of public constructs, the package body contains the definition of public, as well as private (local) constructs.

The characteristics of package specification are as follows:

- Package specification is the mandatory component of the package. A package cannot exist without its specification.
- Package specification contains the prototypes of the constructs. The prototype is the forward declaration of the constructs which would be referenced later in the package body. The subprogram (procedure and function) prototype includes the signature information with a semicolon. The subprograms, once prototyped, must have their definition in the package body section. The package specification cannot contain an executable section.

- These member constructs enjoy their visibility within and outside the package. They can be invoked from outside the package by the privileged users.

 The public constructs of a package are accessed as  
[PACKAGE NAME] . [CONSTRUCT] .

- The valid package constructs can be PL/SQL types, variables, exceptions, procedures, and functions.
- If package specification contains variables, they are implicitly initialized to NULL by Oracle.

The characteristics of the package body are as follows:

- The package body contains the definition of the subprograms which were declared in package specification.
- The package body can optionally contain local constructs. The visibility scope of the local constructs is limited to the package body only.
- The package body is an optional component; a package can exist in a database without its package body.

The syntax for creating a package is as follows:

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] PACKAGE [NAME] IS
    [PRAGMA]
    [PUBLIC CONSTRUCTS]
END;
```

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] PACKAGE BODY [NAME] IS
    [LOCAL CONSTRUCTS]
    [SUBPROGRAM DEFINITION]
    [BEGIN...END]
END;
```

Note the optional BEGIN-END block in the package body. It is optional, but gets executed only the first time the package is referenced. They are used for initialization of global variables.

A package can be compiled with its specification component alone. In such cases, packaged program units cannot be invoked as their executable logic has not been defined yet.

The compilation of a package with specification and body ensures the concurrency between the program units prototyped in the specification and the program units defined in the package body. All the packaged program units are compiled in the single package compilation. If the package is compiled with errors, it is created as an invalid object in the database. The `USER_OBJECTS` dictionary view is used to query the status of a schema object. The `STATUS` column in the view shows the current status as `VALID` or `INVALID`.

## Cursors—an overview

Cursors make a concrete conceptual ground for database professionals. In simple words, a **cursor** is a memory pointer to a specific private memory location where a `SELECT` statement is processed. This memory location is known as a **context area**.

Every SQL statement in a PL/SQL block can be realized as a cursor. The context area is the memory location which records the complete information about the SQL statement currently under process. The processing of the SQL statement in this private memory area involves its parsing, data fetch, and retrieval information. The data retrieved should be pulled into local variables and, henceforth, used within the program.

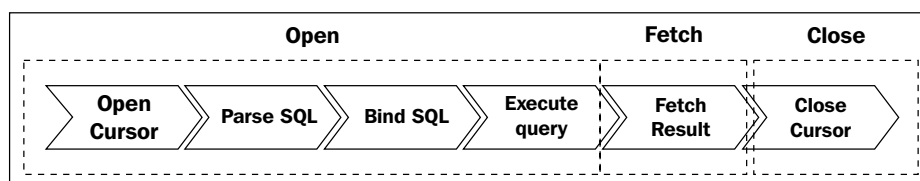
On the basis of their management, cursors are classified as **implicit** and **explicit** cursors.

The Oracle server is fully responsible for the complete execution cycle of an implicit cursor. Oracle implicitly creates a cursor for all SQL statements (such as `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE`) within the PL/SQL blocks.

For explicit cursors, the execution cycle is maneuvered by database programmers. Explicit cursors are meant only for the `SELECT` statements which can fetch one or more rows from the database. The developers have the complete privilege and control to create a cursor, fetch data iteratively, and close the cursor.

## Cursor execution cycle

Let us have a quick tour through the cursor management and execution cycle. Note that this execution cycle starts after the cursor has been prototyped in the declarative section:



- The **OPEN** stage allocates the context area in **Process Global Area (PGA)** for carrying out further processing (parsing, binding, and execution) of the **SELECT** statement associated with the cursor. In addition, the record pointer moves to the first record in the data set.
- The **FETCH** stage pulls the data from the query result set. If the result set is a multi-record set, the pointer increments with every fetch. The Fetch stage is live until the last record is reached in the result set.
- The **CLOSE** stage closes the cursor, flushes the context area, and releases the memory back to the PGA.

## Cursor attributes

The cursor attributes, which carry important information about the cursor processing at each stage of their execution, are as follows:

- **%ROWCOUNT**: Number of rows returned/changed in the last executed query. Applicable for **SELECT** as well as DML statements.
- **%ISOPEN**: Boolean **TRUE** if the cursor is still open, else **FALSE**. For an implicit cursor, it is only **FALSE**.
- **%FOUND**: Boolean **TRUE**, if the fetch operation switches and points to a record, else **FALSE**.
- **%NOTFOUND**: Boolean **FALSE** when the cursor pointer switches but does not point to a record in the result set.



**%ISOPEN** is the only cursor attribute which is accessible outside the cursor execution cycle.

We will illustrate the usage of cursor attributes with a simple PL/SQL program. The following program implements the **%ISOPEN**, **%NOTFOUND**, and **%ROWCOUNT** attributes to iterate the employee data from the **EMPLOYEES** table and display it:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display block messages*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Start the PL/SQL Block*/
DECLARE

/*Declare a cursor to select employees data*/
    CURSOR C_EMP IS
        SELECT EMPNO, ENAME
        FROM EMPLOYEES;
```

```

        L_EMPNO EMPLOYEES.EMPNO%TYPE;
        L_ENAME EMPLOYEES.ENAME%TYPE;
BEGIN
    /*Check if the cursor is already open*/
IF NOT C_EMP%ISOPEN THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Cursor is closed....Cursor has to be
opened');
    END IF;
    /*Open the cursor and iterate in a loop*/
    OPEN C_EMP;
    LOOP
        /*Fetch the cursor data into local variables*/
        FETCH C_EMP INTO L_EMPNO, L_ENAME;
EXIT WHEN C_EMP%NOTFOUND;
        /*Display the employee information*/
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(chr(10)||'Display Information for
employee: '||C_EMP%ROWCOUNT);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee Id: '||L_EMPNO);
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee Name: '||L_ENAME);
    END LOOP;
END;
/

```

Cursor is closed....Cursor has to be opened

Display Information for employee:1  
Employee Id:7369  
Employee Name:SMITH

Display Information for employee:2  
Employee Id:7499  
Employee Name:ALLEN

Display Information for employee:3  
Employee Id:7521  
Employee Name:WARD

Display Information for employee:4  
Employee Id:7566  
Employee Name:JONES

....

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

## Cursor FOR loop

The iterative construct, `FOR` loop, can be aligned to the cursor execution cycle. The benefit is that the cursor can be directly accessed without physically opening, fetching, or closing the cursor. In addition, it reduces the overhead of declaring local identifiers. The stages are handled implicitly by the `FOR` loop construct.

The cursor `FOR` loop qualifies for the best programming practices where the cursor carries multi-row set. The following program demonstrates the working of a cursor `FOR` loop:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT parameter to print the results in the
environment*/
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
/*Declare an explicit cursor to select employee name and salary*/
    CURSOR CUR_EMP IS
        SELECT ENAME, SAL
        FROM EMPLOYEES;
BEGIN
/*FOR Loop uses the cursor CUR_EMP directly*/
    FOR EMP IN CUR_EMP
    LOOP
/*Display appropriate message*/
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee ' || EMP.ENAME || ' earns ' || EMP.SAL || '
per month');
    END LOOP;
END;
/
```

```
Employee SMITH earns 800 per month
Employee ALLEN earns 1600 per month
Employee WARD earns 1250 per month
Employee JONES earns 2975 per month
Employee MARTIN earns 1250 per month
Employee BLAKE earns 2850 per month
Employee CLARK earns 2450 per month
Employee SCOTT earns 3000 per month
Employee KING earns 5000 per month
Employee TURNER earns 1500 per month
Employee ADAMS earns 1100 per month
Employee JAMES earns 950 per month
Employee FORD earns 3000 per month
Employee MILLER earns 1300 per month
```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

## Exception handling in PL/SQL

During runtime, the abnormal program flow which occurs within a precompiled program unit with the actual data is known as an **exception**. Such errors can be trapped in the `EXCEPTION` section of a PL/SQL block. The exception handlers within the section can capture the appropriate error and redirect the program flow for an alternative or final task. An efficient exception handling ensures safe and secure termination of the program. The situation without exceptions may become serious if the program involves transactions and the program doesn't handle the appropriate exception, thus ending up in abrupt termination of the program.

There are two types of exceptions – system-defined exceptions and user defined exceptions. While system defined exceptions are implicitly raised by the Oracle server, user-defined exceptions follow different ways to be explicitly raised within the program.

In addition, Oracle avails two utility functions, `SQLCODE` and `SQLERRM`, to retrieve the error code and message for the last occurred exception.

## System-defined exceptions

As the name suggests, the system-defined exceptions are defined and maintained implicitly by the Oracle server. They are defined in the Oracle `STANDARD` package. Whenever an exception occurs inside the program. The Oracle server matches and identifies the appropriate exception from the available set of exceptions. Majorly, these exceptions have a negative error code associated with it. In addition to the error code and error message, the system-defined exceptions have a short name which is used with the exception handlers.

For example, `ORA-01422` is the error code for the `TOO_MANY_ROWS` exception whose error message is "exact fetch returns more than requested number of rows". But the name is required only in exception handlers.

The PL/SQL block contains a `SELECT` statement which selects the name and salary of an employee whose employee ID is one of the declared variables. Note that such `SELECT` statements are more prone to the `NO_DATA_FOUND` exception.

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT parameter to print the results in the
environment*/
SQL> SET SERVEROUT ON

/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
SQL> DECLARE
    /*Declare the local variables*/
    L_ENAME VARCHAR2 (100);
```

```

        L_SAL NUMBER;
        L_EMPID NUMBER := 8376;
BEGIN
    /*SELECT statement to fetch the name and salary details of
the employee*/
    SELECT ENAME, SAL
    INTO L_ENAME, L_SAL
    FROM EMPLOYEES
    WHERE EMPNO = L_EMPID;
EXCEPTION
    /*Exception Handler when no data is fetched from the
table*/
    WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
        /*Display an informative message*/
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('No Employee exists with the id '||L_
EMPID);
    END;
/

```

No Employee exists with the id 837

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

The following table consolidates some of the common system-defined exceptions along with their ORA error code:

Error	Named exception	Comments (raised when)
ORA-00001	DUP_VAL_ON_INDEX	Duplicate value exists
ORA-01001	INVALID_CURSOR	Cursor is invalid
ORA-01012	NOT_LOGGED_ON	User is not logged in
ORA-01017	LOGIN_DENIED	System error occurred
ORA-01403	NO_DATA_FOUND	The query returns no data
ORA-01422	TOO_MANY_ROWS	A single row query returns multiple rows
ORA-01476	ZERO_DIVIDE	A number is attempted to divide by zero
ORA-01722	INVALID_NUMBER	The number is invalid
ORA-06504	ROWTYPE_MISMATCH	Mismatch occurred in row type
ORA-06511	CURSOR_ALREADY_OPEN	Cursor is already open
ORA-06531	COLLECTION_IS_NULL	Working with NULL collection
ORA-06532	SUBSCRIPT_OUTSIDE_LIMIT	Collection index out of range
ORA-06533	SUBSCRIPT_BEYOND_COUNT	Collection index out of count

## User-defined exceptions


Sometimes, the programs are expected to follow agile convention norms of an application. The programs must have standardized error codes and messages. Oracle gives flexibility in declaring and implementing your own exceptions through user-defined exceptions.

Unlike system-defined exceptions, they are raised explicitly in the `BEGIN...END` section using the `RAISE` statement.

There are three ways of declaring user-defined exceptions:

- Declare the `EXCEPTION` type variable in the declaration section. Raise it explicitly in the program body using the `RAISE` statement. Handle it in the `EXCEPTION` section. Note that here no error code is involved.
- Declare the `EXCEPTION` variable and associate it with a standard error number using `PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT`.

[



A **Pragma** is a clue to the compiler to manipulate the behavior of the program unit during compilation, and not at the time of execution.

`PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT` can also be used to map an exception to a non-predefined exception. These are standard errors from the Oracle server, but not defined as PL/SQL exceptions.

]

- Use the `RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR` to declare own error number and error message.

The following PL/SQL block declares a user-defined exception and raises it in the program body:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT parameter to print the results in the
environment*/
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Declare a bind variable M_DIVISOR*/
SQL> VARIABLE M_DIVISOR NUMBER;

/*Declare a bind variable M_DIVIDEND*/
SQL> VARIABLE M_DIVIDEND NUMBER;

/*Assign value to M_DIVISOR as zero*/
SQL> EXEC :M_DIVISOR := 0;
```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

/\*Assign value to M\_DIVIDEND as 10/

SQL> EXEC :M\_DIVIDEND := 10;

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

/\*Start the PL/SQL block\*/

SQL> DECLARE

/\*Declare the local variables and initialize with the bind variables\*/

L\_DIVISOR NUMBER := :M\_DIVISOR;

L\_DIVIDEND NUMBER := :M\_DIVIDEND;

L\_QUOT NUMBER;

/\*Declare an exception variable\*/

NOCASE EXCEPTION;

BEGIN

/\*Raise the exception if Divisor is equal to zero\*/

IF L\_DIVISOR = 0 THEN

RAISE NOCASE;

END IF;

L\_QUOT := L\_DIVIDEND/L\_DIVISOR;

DBMS\_OUTPUT.PUT\_LINE('The result : '||L\_QUOT);

EXCEPTION

/\*Exception handler for NOCASE exception\*/

WHEN NOCASE THEN

DBMS\_OUTPUT.PUT\_LINE('Divisor cannot be equal to zero');

END;

/

Divisor cannot be equal to zero

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

/\*Assign a non zero value to M\_DIVISOR and execute the PL/SQL block again\*/

SQL> EXEC :M\_DIVISOR := 2;

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

SQL> /

The result : 5

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

## The RAISE\_APPLICATION\_ERROR procedure

Oracle gives privilege to the database programmers to create their own error number and associate an error message, too. These are dynamic user defined exceptions and are done through an Oracle-supplied method, `RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR`. It can be implemented either in the executable section to capture specific and logical errors, or it can be used in the exception section to handle errors of a generic nature.

The syntax for the `RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR` procedure is as follows:

```
RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR (error_number, error_message[, {TRUE | FALSE}])
```

In this syntax, the `error_number` parameter is a mandatory formal parameter whose value must be in the range of -20000 to -20999. The second parameter, `error_message`, corresponds to the error number and appears with the exception when raised in the program. The last parameter is the optional parameter which allows the error to be added to the current error stack. By default, its value is `FALSE`.

The following program rewrites the last program by creating a user-defined exception, dynamically (note that it doesn't have the `EXCEPTION` type variable):

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT parameter to print the results in the
environment*/
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Declare a bind variable M_DIVISOR*/
SQL> VARIABLE M_DIVISOR NUMBER;

/*Declare a bind variable M_DIVIDEND*/
SQL> VARIABLE M_DIVIDEND NUMBER;

/*Assign value to M_DIVISOR as zero*/
SQL> EXEC :M_DIVISOR := 0;

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

/*Assign value to M_DIVIDEND as 10/
SQL> EXEC :M_DIVIDEND := 10;

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
SQL> DECLARE
    /*Declare the local variables and initialize them with
bind variables*/
```

```
L_DIVISOR NUMBER := :M_DIVISOR;
L_DIVIDEND NUMBER := :M_DIVIDEND;
L_QUOT NUMBER;
BEGIN
    /*Raise the exception using RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR is
the divisor is zero*/
    IF L_DIVISOR = 0 THEN
        RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR(-20005,'Divisor cannot be equal
to zero');
    END IF;
    L_QUOT := L_DIVIDEND/L_DIVISOR;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The result : '||L_QUOT);
EXCEPTION
    /*Print appropriate message in OTHERS exception handler*/
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(SQLERRM);
END;
/
```

**ORA-20005: Divisor cannot be equal to zero**

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

/\*Assign a non zero value to M\_DIVISOR and check the output of the  
PL/SQL block\*/

SQL> EXEC :M\_DIVISOR := 2;

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

SQL> /

The result : 5

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

As soon as the exception is raised through `RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR`, the program control skips the further execution and jumps to the `EXCEPTION` section. As there is no exception name mapped against this error code, only `OTHERS` exception handler can handle the exception.

If a EXCEPTION variable has been declared and mapped to the same user-defined error number, the exception handler can be created with the exception variable. Let us rewrite the preceding program to include an exception variable and suitable exception handler. The following program demonstrates the working of user-defined exceptions and dynamic user-defined exceptions in a single program:

```

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT parameter to print the results in the
environment*/
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Declare a bind variable M_DIVISOR*/
SQL> VARIABLE M_DIVISOR NUMBER;

/*Declare a bind variable M_DIVIDEND*/
SQL> VARIABLE M_DIVIDEND NUMBER;

/*Assign value to M_DIVISOR as zero*/
SQL> EXEC :M_DIVISOR := 0;

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

/*Assign value to M_DIVIDEND as 10/
SQL> EXEC :M_DIVIDEND := 10;

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
SQL> DECLARE
    /*Declare an exception variable*/
    NOCASE EXCEPTION;
    /*Declare the local variables and initialize them with
bind variables*/
    L_DIVISOR NUMBER := :M_DIVISOR;
    L_DIVIDEND NUMBER := :M_DIVIDEND;
    L_QUOT NUMBER;
    /*Map the exception with a non predefined error number*/
    PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT(NOCASE,-20005);
BEGIN
    /*Raise the exception using RAISE statement if the
divisor is zero*/
    IF L_DIVISOR = 0 THEN
        RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR(-20005,'Divisor cannot be equal
to zero');
    END IF;

```

```

        L_QUOT := L_DIVIDEND/L_DIVISOR;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The result : '||L_QUOT);
    EXCEPTION
        /*Include exception handler for NOCASE exception*/
        WHEN NOCASE THEN
            DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(SQLERRM);
    END;
/
ORA-20005: Divisor cannot be equal to zero

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

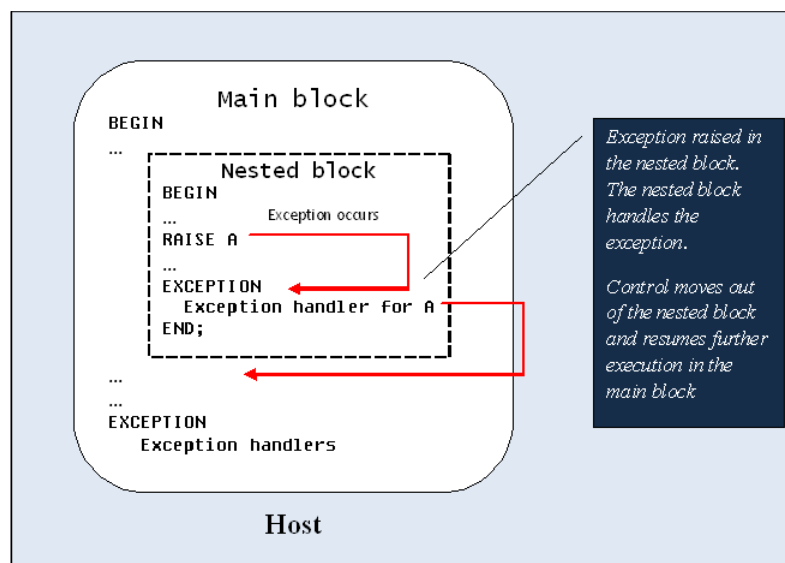
```

## Exception propagation

Exception propagation is an important concept when dealing with nested blocks. A propagating exception always searches for the appropriate exception handler until its last host. The search starts from the `EXCEPTION` section of the block, that raised it, and continues abruptly until the host environment is reached. As soon as the exception handler is found, the program control resumes the normal flow.

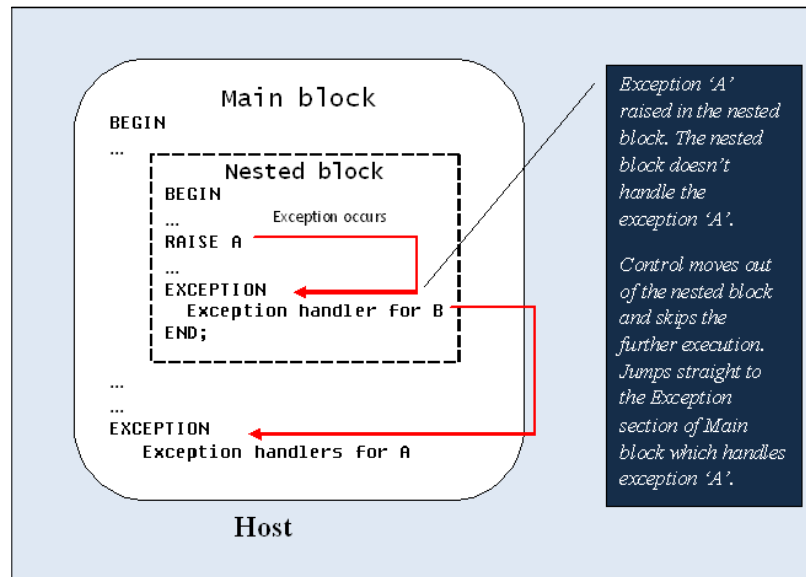
The following cases demonstrate the propagation of exception which is raised in the innermost block:

- **Case 1:** The following diagram shows the state of a nested PL/SQL block. The inner block raises an exception which is handled in its own `EXCEPTION` section:



Exception A is raised by the inner block. The inner block handles the exception A within its scope. After the exception is handled, the program control resumes the flow with statements after the inner block in the outer block.

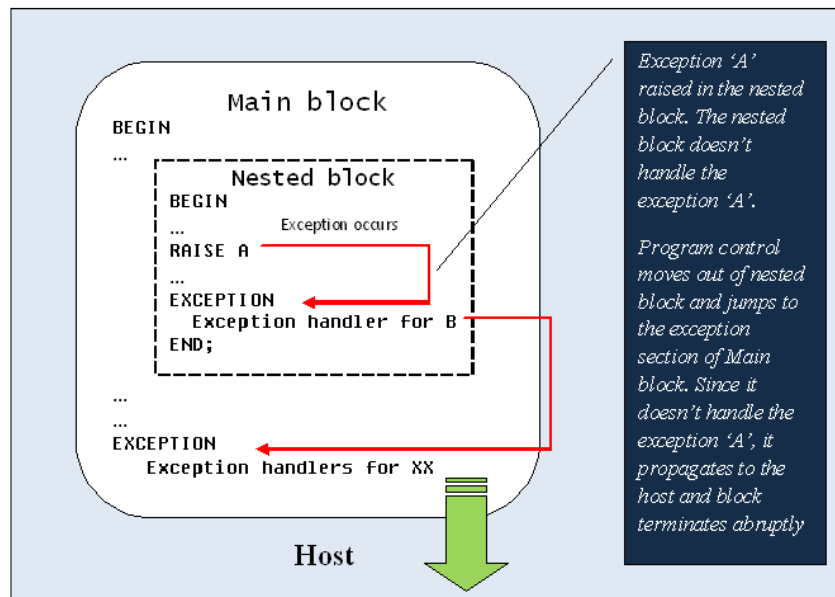
- **Case 2:** The following diagram shows the state of a nested PL/SQL block where the inner block raises an exception but does not handle the same in its own EXCEPTION section. The EXCEPTION section of the outer block handles the raised exception:



The inner block raises the exception A but does not handle it, so it gets propagated to the EXCEPTION section of the enclosing outer block. Note the abrupt skipping of statements in the outer block.

Now, the outer block handles the exception A. The exception propagated from the inner block is handled in the outer block and is then terminated.

- **Case 3:** The following diagram shows the state of a nested PL/SQL block where both the inner and outer block doesn't handle the exception raised in the inner block:



Handling for exception A is missing in the inner as well as the outer block. As a result, the unhandled exception error is raised. The exception is propagated to the host with an error message and the program is terminated abruptly.

## Managing database dependencies

Oracle objects which avail the standings and services of other objects are dependent on them. Suppose, a complex view, V, is created on two tables, T1 and T2. The object, V, is dependent on T1 and T2, while T1 and T2 are the referenced objects. Therefore, as a thumb rule of dependency, a valid database object can either be a dependent or a referenced object. The thumb rule of dependency has some exceptions for synonyms and the package body. While synonyms can always be referenced objects, the package body is always a dependent object.

Database dependency can be classified as **direct** or **indirect**. Consider three objects – P, M, and N. If P references M and M references N, then P is directly dependent on M. In the same case, P and N share indirect dependency. Schema objects can refer tables, views, sequences, procedures, functions, packages specification, triggers, and synonyms in their definitions and can behave as both dependent and referenced objects. Out of these, a sequence can appear as a referenced object only, while package body can only be a dependent object.

## Displaying the direct and indirect dependencies

The dependency matrix is automatically generated and maintained by the Oracle server. The status of an object is the basis of dependency among the objects. The status of an object can be queried from the `USER_OBJECTS` view. The following query displays the status of our previously created functions:

```
/*Check the status of the function F_GET_DOUBLE*/
SQL> SELECT STATUS
      FROM USER_OBJECTS
      WHERE OBJECT_NAME='F_GET_DOUBLE';

STATUS
-----
VALID
```

`DEPTREE` and `IDEPTREE` are two views which capture and store necessary information about the direct and indirect dependencies, respectively. The views are created by a DBA by running the script from `$ORACLE_HOME\RDBMS\ADMIN\utldtree.sql`

The execution steps for the script are as follows:

1. Login as SYSDBA in SQL Developer or SQL\*Plus.
2. Copy the complete path and script name (prefix with @).
3. Execute the script (with F9).
4. Query the `DEPTREE` and `IDEPTREE` views to verify their creation.

The script creates the `DEPTREE_TEMPTAB` table and the `DEPTREE_FILL` procedure. The `DEPTREE_FILL` procedure can be executed as follows, to populate the dependency details of an object:

```
/*Populate the dependency matrix for the function F_GET_DOUBLE*/
SQL> EXEC DEPTREE_FILL('FUNCTION','ORADEV','F_GET_DOUBLE');

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

Note that the first parameter of the `DEPTREE_FILL` procedure is the object type, second is the owner and third is the object name.

Then, the `DEPTREE` and `IDETREE` views can be queried to view the dependency information.

## Dependency metadata

Oracle provides the data dictionary views, namely, `USER_DEPENDENCIES`, `ALL_DEPENDENCIES`, and `DBA_DEPENDENCIES`, to view complete dependency metrics shared by an object. Besides the dependent object's list, it also lists its referencing object name and owner.

The following screenshot shows the structure of the dictionary view `DBA_DEPENDENCIES`:

```
SQL> DESC DBA_DEPENDENCIES
```

Name	Null?	Type
OWNER	NOT NULL	VARCHAR2(30)
NAME	NOT NULL	VARCHAR2(30)
TYPE		VARCHAR2(18)
REFERENCED_OWNER		VARCHAR2(30)
REFERENCED_NAME		VARCHAR2(64)
REFERENCED_TYPE		VARCHAR2(18)
REFERENCED_LINK_NAME		VARCHAR2(128)
DEPENDENCY_TYPE		VARCHAR2(4)

## Dependency issues and enhancements

As per the conventional dependency phenomenon, the status validity of the dependent object depends upon the status of the referenced object. So, if the definition of the referenced object is altered, the dependent object is marked `INVALID` in the `USER_OBJECTS` view. Though the object recompilation can easily solve the problem, it becomes a serious hindrance in working of the object validations. Dependent objects are used to fall prey to their own dependency matrix. They are rendered invalidated even if the change is not for them.

Oracle 11g brings in a fundamental change in dependency management, known as **Fine Grained Dependency (FGD)**. The FGD concept modifies the dependency principle as *if the alteration in the referenced object does not affect the dependent object, the dependent object would remain in `VALID` state*. The new principle was received well amongst the community as it shifted the granularity from object level to element level. For instance, if a view is created with selected columns of a table and the table is altered to add a new column, the view shall remain in a valid state.

## Reviewing Oracle-supplied packages

Oracle-supplied packages are provided by the Oracle server and inbuilt in the database as a wrapper code. These packages not only facilitate the database programmers to work on extended functionalities but also reduce writing extensive and complex code. Use of Oracle-supplied API is always recommended as it improves the code standardization, too.

The scripts for these packages are available in the `$ORACLE_HOME\RDBMS\ADMIN\` folder. All packages reside on the database server. Public synonyms are available for these packages so that these packages are accessible to all users. Until Oracle 11g, more than 1000 packages were available and this count tends to increase with every database release.

Some of the important packages are listed as follows:

- **DBMS\_ALERT:** This package is used for notification of database events
- **DBMS\_LOCK:** This package is used for managing the lock operations (lock, conversion, release) in PL/SQL applications
- **DBMS\_SESSION:** This package is used to set session level preferences from PL/SQL programs (similar to ALTER SESSION)
- **DBMS\_OUTPUT:** This package is one of the most frequently used built ins for buffering of data messages and display debug information
- **DBMS\_HTTP:** This package is used for HTTP callouts
- **UTL\_FILE:** This package is used for reading, writing and other file operations on the server
- **UTL\_MAIL:** This package is used to compose and send mails
- **DBMS\_SCHEDULER:** This package is used for scheduling execution of stored procedures at a given time

Based on the objective achieved, the packages can be categorized as follows:

- **Standard application development:** **DBMS\_OUTPUT** is the most frequently used package to display the required text. It is used for tracing and debugging purposes. Accessing and writing OS files was made possible through **UTL\_FILE**. Similarly, system dependent binary files are accessed through the **DBMS\_LOB** package.

The Oracle supplied packages often try to access SQL features which is their other big advantage.

- **General usage and application administration:** The Oracle server has many packages to monitor the applications and users. Stats generation, load history, and space management are the key objectives accomplished by these packages
- **Internal support packages:** Oracle maintains these packages for its own use.
- **Transaction processing packages:** Oracle provides utility packages which enables the monitoring of transaction stages. Though they are rarely used, but could efficiently ensure transparent and smooth transactions. For example, `DBMS_TRANSACTION`.

Among these categories, standard application development packages are the most frequently used ones.

## Summary

We toured the fundamentals of PL/SQL programming. Starting with a small flashback on evolution of PL/SQL, we understood its working with Oracle Development tools such as SQL Developer and SQL\*Plus.

We had an overview of cursor handling and major Oracle schema objects such as procedures, functions, and packages. Thereafter, we refreshed the error management in PL/SQL through exception handlers using server-defined, user-defined, and dynamic exceptions.

In the upcoming chapters, we will discuss programming guidelines and advanced PL/SQL concepts in details. In the next chapter, we will cover cursor handling in detail and usage guidelines for various types of cursors.

## Practice exercise

1. Which of the following features are not available in SQL Developer?
  - a. Query builder
  - b. Database export and import
  - c. Database backup and recovery functions
  - d. Code Subversion repository

2. For a function to be called from the SQL expression, which of the following conditions should it obey:
  - a. A function in the `SELECT` statement should not contain DML statements.
  - b. The function should return a value.
  - c. A function in the `UPDATE` or `DELETE` statement should not query the same table.
  - d. A function called from SQL expressions cannot contain the TCL (`COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK`) command or the DDL (`CREATE` or `ALTER`) command.
3. The following query is executed in the ORADEV schema:

```
SELECT NAME, referenced_owner, referenced_name
FROM all_dependencies
WHERE owner = USER
AND referenced_type IN ('TABLE', 'VIEW')
AND referenced_owner IN ('SYS')
ORDER BY owner, NAME, referenced_owner, referenced_name;
```

Which statement is true about the output of this query?

- a. It displays the schema objects created by the user ORADEV which use a table or view owned by SYS.
  - b. Exception occurs as user ORADEV has insufficient privileges to access `ALL_DEPENDENCIES` view.
  - c. It displays all PL/SQL code objects that reference a table or view directly for all the users in the database.
  - d. It displays only those PL/SQL code objects created by the user OE that reference a table or view created by the user SYS.
4. Which of the following is true about PL/SQL blocks?
  - a. Exception is a mandatory section without which an anonymous PL/SQL block fails to compile.
  - b. Bind variables cannot be referred inside a PL/SQL block.
  - c. The scope and visibility of the variables declared in the declarative section of the block is within the current block only.
  - d. The `RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR` procedure maps a predefined error message to a customized error code.

5. From the following options, identify the ways of defining exceptions:
  - a. Declare a `EXCEPTION` variable and raise it using the `RAISE` statement.
  - b. Use `PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT` to associate a customized exception message to a pre-defined Oracle error number.
  - c. Declare a `EXCEPTION` variable and use it in `RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR`.
  - d. Use `RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR` to create a dynamic exception at any stage within the executable or exception section of a PL/SQL block.
6. Chose the differences between procedures and functions:
  - a. A function must mandatorily return a value, while a procedure may or may not.
  - b. A function can be called from SQL queries, while a procedure can never be invoked from SQL.
  - c. A function can accept parameters passed by value, while a procedure can accept parameters as passed by reference only.
  - d. A standalone function can be overloaded but a procedure cannot.
7. Examine the values of the cursor attribute for the following query and pick the attribute with the wrong value:

```
BEGIN
...
SELECT ENAME, SAL
INTO L_ENAME, L_SAL
FROM EMPLOYEES
WHERE EMPID = 7900;
...
END;
```

- a. `SQL%ROWCOUNT = 1`
- b. `SQL%ISOPEN = FALSE`
- c. `SQL%FOUND = FALSE`
- d. `SQL%NOTFOUND = FALSE`

# 2

## Designing PL/SQL Code

The PL/SQL code construction can accommodate SQL to interact with the Oracle database for transactions or data retrieval. The data operations and activities such as iteration, comparison or manipulation is one of the major accomplishments of PL/SQL control structures. In a PL/SQL block, the data fetch strategy is realized through **cursor structures**. The design and handling of cursor structures forms the basis of the PL/SQL code design. In this chapter, we will understand the cursor structures in detail, their types and implementation along with some best practices. This chapter covers the following topics:

- Cursor fundamentals
  - Cursor execution cycle
  - Cursor design guidelines
  - Cursor attributes
  - Overview of implicit cursor and explicit cursor
- Cursor variables
- Introduction to subtypes

### Understanding cursor structures

Cursor structures in PL/SQL allow the data access for a row or set of rows. Every SQL statement executed from PL/SQL is processed as a cursor. For all the SQL statements encountered by the PL/SQL engine, the Oracle server assigns a chunk of memory, privately held in SGA, for processing the statement. A cursor is a constant pointer to this work area in the memory which is also termed as **context area**. This context area contains the complete processing information of the SQL statement. It includes the SQL query, its parsing information, and the data set pulled out from the database tables. Even, the cursor structure captures the relevant information of the context-area activities as cursor attributes.

There are number of methods to act and access upon this work area. These methods are as follows:

- **Implicit cursors:** Every SQL query in the executable section of a PL/SQL block is executed as an implicit cursor by Oracle. The SQL statement can be a `SELECT` statement or a DML statement.
- **Explicit cursors:** Only the `SELECT` statements, which are physically named and declared by the user in the declaration section, are explicit cursors. A user has full control on their execution cycle.
- **Cursor variables:** A variable of cursor type allows program units to share data sets as parameters and variables.
- **Cursor expressions:** `REF` cursors usually make use of cursor expressions to dynamically associate the query to it.
- **Dynamic SQL:** Dynamic SQL provide the execution of all SQL queries during runtime. Unlike explicit cursors or cursor variables, dynamic SQL can work with DML statements, too.

As per the scope of the chapter, we will cover implicit cursor, explicit cursor, and cursor variables.

## Cursor execution cycle

The cursor execution cycle involves the stages which describe the processing of the SQL query associated with the cursor. This execution cycle remains common for all types of cursors in PL/SQL. In case of implicit cursors, the Oracle server takes care of these steps. But for explicit cursors, the user has full control on these stages.



Cursors cannot be stored in the database; instead they enjoy their life within the scope of a session. For this reason, they are often marked as **session cursors**.

The stages of cursor execution cycle are summarized as follows:

- **OPEN:** The Oracle server allocates a portion of private memory of the server process which is available for this session. The allocated memory would be used for SQL statement processing. It is in this stage when the cursor points to a specific memory location. Prior to this stage, the cursor acts as a null pointer variable.
- **PARSE:** It is the starting step of SQL processing where the SQL statement is checked for the syntax, object status, and optimization.

- **BIND:** If the SQL statement requires additional input values, the placeholders created for them are replaced by the actual values (either from the program or from the available bind parameters, if any).
- **EXECUTE:** The SQL engine executes the SQL statement, fetches the data result set from the database, and sets the record pointer on the first record of the set.
- **FETCH:** Fetch the record from the result set corresponding to the current position of the record pointer. The record pointer leaps forward by one step after each successful fetch.
- **CLOSE:** The cursor is closed and the context area is flushed off. The memory is released back to the server and, hence, no reference to the last result set can be made. If you skip this step, the PL/SQL engine implicitly performs the close operation after exiting the block.

## Cursor design considerations

The factors to consider for the cursor design are as follows:

- **Data required from the database:** A `SELECT` query fetching single record should be made an implicit cursor instead of an explicit cursor.

Steven Feuerstein, a renowned Oracle expert, writes in his book, *Oracle PL/SQL Programming* (fifth edition) regarding the encapsulation and exposure of implicit cursor queries:

*You should always encapsulate your single-row query, hiding the query behind a function interface, and passing back the data through the RETURN clause.*

- **Cursor usability and scalability in the program:** The explicit cursor design depends on the cursor's role in the PL/SQL block. It can be a conventional one, if the role of the cursor is purely a data source in the block. It can be made a parameterized one, if the same data source has to be accessed for varying inputs in the query predicate.

Parameterized cursors enhance the reusability of the cursor. For example, consider the following code snippet:

```
/*Cursor to select employees who have joined before 01st Jan
1985*/
CURSOR cur IS
SELECT ename, deptno
FROM employees
WHERE hiredate < TO_DATE('01-01-1985', 'DD-MM-YYYY');
```

The preceding code can be rewritten as:

```
/*Cursor to select employees who have joined before the input
date parameter*/
CURSOR cur (p_date VARCHAR2) IS
  SELECT ename, deptno
  FROM employees
  WHERE hiredate < p_date;
```

- **Usage of cursor variables:** If the cursor role has to be of a data source in different scenarios within a single block, ref cursors must be used. As we understood, an explicit cursor is a constant pointer to a view created by the SELECT statement. If the view via the SELECT statement has to be different upon each invocation, ref cursors provide the best solution. Cursor variables act like an actual pointer variable which can refer to different cursor objects. Cursor variables can be well used as arguments to subprograms especially while passing result sets from a database to client environments.

## Cursor design—guidelines

We have already seen the multiple ways for framing a SQL statement in a cursor. The same results can be achieved with the use of an explicit or parameterized cursor and even with cursor variables. The appropriate strategy can be followed depending on the usage and application demanding in the program.

Certain recommendations to be followed during cursor design and handling are as follows:

- If the SELECT statement associated with the explicit cursor requires substitutable inputs in the WHERE clause, a parameterized cursor must be preferred over an explicit cursor. It extends the reusability of the cursor and reduces erratic hard coding in the program. It can be opened multiple times in the block or nested blocks for different values of input arguments.
- One must follow the complete execution cycle of the cursor. The cursor must be opened, accessed, and closed. If it is not closed, the allocated memory remains busy and, thus, the program memory reduces. It is released only when the block is terminated.
- Except for %ISOPEN, all the cursor attributes must be addressed within the same cursor execution cycle. Similarly, for implicit cursors, the attributes must be accessed just after the SQL statement as they might reset later for other SQL statements.

- Use of %ROWTYPE must be encouraged to fetch a record from the cursor result set. It not only reduces the overhead of creating and maintaining multiple local variables but also inherits the structure of the SELECT column list. For example, consider the following code snippet:

```
/*Cursor to select employees with its annual salary*/
CURSOR cur_dept IS
    SELECT ename, deptno, (sal*12) annual_sal
    FROM employees;

l_cur_dept cur_dept%ROWTYPE;
```

- Note that the columns which are created virtually for calculative purposes must have an alias name for reference through the record variable.
- A cursor FOR loop associates a cursor with the FOR loop construct. It is one of the strongest features of PL/SQL which simplifies the code writing. It implicitly takes care of all the stages of cursor execution such as OPEN, FETCH, or CLOSE and minimizes the erroneous handling.

```
/*Demonstrate working with cursor FOR loop*/
DECLARE
CURSOR cur_dept IS
    SELECT ename, deptno
    FROM employees;
BEGIN
    FOR c IN cur_dept
    LOOP
        ...
    END LOOP;
END;
```

## Cursor attributes

As I stated earlier, the cursor structure retains the relevant information of the context area's processing activities. This information is stored as cursor attributes. These attributes are %ROWCOUNT, %ISOPEN, %FOUND, and %NOTFOUND.



%BULK\_ROWCOUNT and %BULK\_EXCEPTIONS are the additional cursor attributes used in bulk processing using the FORALL statement.

These attributes must be accessed by prefixing their respective explicit cursor name. For example, cur\_emp%ROWCOUNT returns the rows selected by the cursor cur\_emp. As implicit cursors don't have any name, a keyword SQL must be prefixed to access attributes for implicit cursors, as in SQL%FOUND or SQL%NOTFOUND.

The cursor attributes are briefly explained as follows:

- **%ROWCOUNT**: This attribute answers the question – "how many" – of the cursor processing. It returns the number of rows fetched or affected by the SQL statement in the context area. In the **OPEN** stage of the cursor, the attribute is initialized with zero. During the **FETCH** stage, the value of the **%ROWCOUNT** attribute increments parallel to the record pointer in the result set, that means it increases by one for each forward movement. Once the **FETCH** stage is over, the attribute holds the final number of rows fetched or affected by the cursor SQL statement.

Note that the attribute must be addressed within the cursor execution cycle that is within the **OPEN** and **CLOSE** stages of a cursor or else it raises the **INVALID\_CURSOR** exception.

- **%ISOPEN**: This attribute is set to **TRUE** if the cursor has already entered the **OPEN** stage, otherwise it is **FALSE**. It is often used in the programs to make sure that no action should be taken on the cursor without opening it.

Unlike other attributes, it can be referenced outside the cursor execution cycle.

- **%FOUND**: This attribute reveals whether the current position of the record pointer points to a valid record or not. If it points to a record in the record set, it returns **TRUE**. If the last record of the result set is reached and a further request for fetch is made, the attribute returns **FALSE**.

Again, the attribute must be addressed within the cursor execution cycle or else it raises a **INVALID\_CURSOR** exception.

- **%NOTFOUND**: This attribute is just the reverse of the **%FOUND** attribute. The **%NOTFOUND** attribute also returns the status of the last fetch request and set to **FALSE**, if the fetch request returns a record from the data set. It returns **TRUE** when the last record is reached and a request for fetch is made.

The attribute must be addressed within the cursor execution cycle or else it raises the **INVALID\_CURSOR** exception.

## Implicit cursors

The SQL statements in the executable section of a PL/SQL block are treated as implicit cursors by the Oracle server. The Oracle server takes end to end responsibility of their processing such cursor opening, memory allocation, fetching, and closing the cursor. The SQL statement liable to be an implicit cursor can be **SELECT**, **INSERT**, **UPDATE**, and **DELETE**.

While the `SELECT` statement involved in the implicit cursor must return a single row, the DML operations might affect multiple rows of a table.

The executable section of the following block contains a `SELECT` and a `UPDATE` statement. Both, the `SELECT` and `UPDATE` statements are processed as different implicit cursors by PL/SQL. The programmer has no control over any stage of the cursor execution cycle except the cursor attributes:

```

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT parameter to print the results in the
environment*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Demonstrate implicit cursors in PL/SQL execution block*/
DECLARE
    l_ename employees.ename%TYPE;
    l_sal employees.sal%TYPE;
BEGIN
    /*Select name and salary of employee 7369. Oracle creates an
    implicit cursor to execute it*/
    SELECT ename, sal
    INTO l_ename, l_sal
    FROM employees
    WHERE empno = 7369;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Rows returned from SELECT:' || SQL%ROWCOUNT);
    /*Update the salary of employee 7369. Oracle recreates an implicit
    cursor to execute it*/
    UPDATE employees
    SET sal = l_sal + 1000
    WHERE empno = 7369;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Rows updated from UPDATE:' || SQL%ROWCOUNT);
END;
/

Rows returned from SELECT:1
Rows updated from UPDATE:1

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

```

The information about the last executed SQL statement can be checked by querying the cursor attributes. Let us check out these attributes for implicit cursors:

Cursor attributes	Description
SQL%FOUND	This attribute returns TRUE if SELECT fetches a single record or DML statement affects a minimum one record of the table. Otherwise it is set as FALSE
SQL%NOTFOUND	This attribute returns TRUE if SELECT...INTO fetches no row from the database that is NO_DATA_FOUND exception would be raised.
SQL%ROWCOUNT	This attribute returns 1 for the SELECT statement and the number of rows affected by the DML statement.
SQL%ISOPEN	This is a redundant attribute for implicit cursors. It is always set as FALSE.

## Explicit cursors

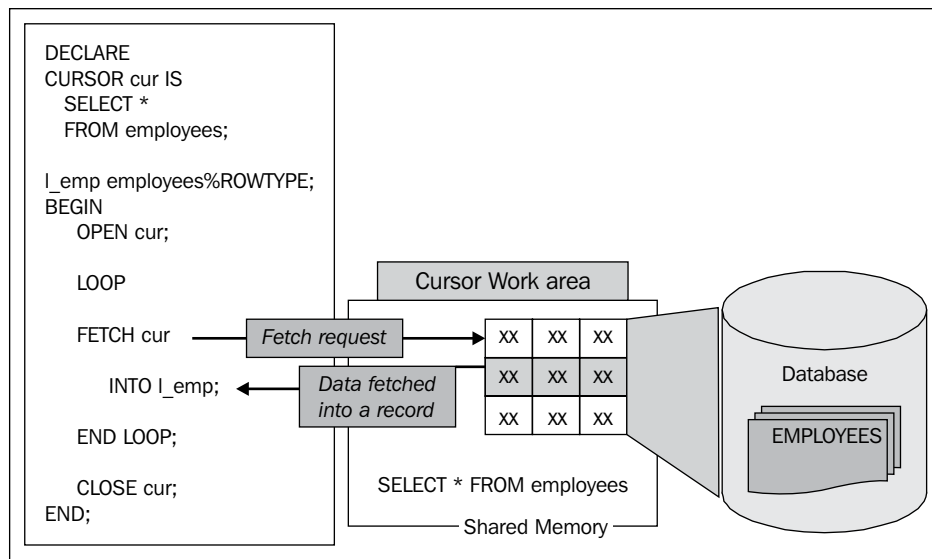
Explicit cursors go exactly with their name – they are explicitly handled by the user. An explicit cursor requires its prototype declaration and manually operated execution cycle. This authoritative control over the cursor execution cycle has made explicit cursors the hallmark of PL/SQL coding.

Explicit cursors can accommodate only the SELECT statements; no DML statements are allowed. Unlike, an implicit cursor, an explicit cursor prototype has to be given in the DECLARE section with a valid cursor name. During its declaration, the cursor is similar to a pointer. The cursor execution cycle can be observed in the executable section of the PL/SQL block. The steps in the cursor execution cycle involve opening the cursor (OPEN), iterating through the result set and fetching the records (FETCH), and closing the cursor (CLOSE). For each stage, the Oracle server performs the following operations:

- OPEN stage
  - **Open cursor:** Allocate and open a work area in memory for cursor processing
  - **Parse SQL:** Check the SQL query for syntax, object status, and optimization
  - **Bind SQL:** Check for the inputs required by the SQL along with their replacements
  - **Execute query:** Execute the parsed SQL statement to pull the data from the database and move the pointer to the first record of the data set

- **FETCH stage**
  - **Fetch result:** Iterate the data set for each fetch request. Fetch the data into block variables (or record) and move the result set pointer to the next record.
- **CLOSE stage**
  - **Close cursor:** Close the cursor and release the memory back to SGA

The following diagram demonstrates a fetch operation in a cursor execution cycle:



Let us examine the syntax followed for declaring and controlling the execution cycle of an explicit cursor:

```

DECLARE
  CURSOR [Cursor Name] [Parameters]
  RETURN [Return type]
  IS
    [SELECT statement];
BEGIN
  OPEN [Cursor Name];
  FETCH...INTO [Cursor into a ];
  CLOSE [Cursor Name];
END;

```

In the syntax, [Cursor Name] is any valid cursor name. Naming convention for cursors is same as that of identifiers. Thereafter, the cursor shall be referenced with the same name. Parameters are required in parameterized explicit cursors. The argument value would be used as input to the `SELECT` statement. `RETURN` is the optional clause for strong cursors, where the return type of the cursor is fixed. [SELECT statement] is any valid SQL `SELECT` statement. Make sure, no DMLs are allowed.

Here are a few examples for reference. You can observe that the same cursor is rewritten in different formats.

In the following code snippet, the cursor `CUR_EMP` is the simplest explicit cursor which selects the employees working in department number 10:

```
/*Cursor definition to fetch employee data working in department
10*/
CURSOR CUR_EMP IS
    SELECT *
    FROM employees
    WHERE deptno = 10;
```

The same cursor can be parameterized as follows:

```
/*Cursor definition to fetch employee data working in input
department parameter*/
CURSOR CUR_EMP (P_DEPTNO NUMBER)
IS
    SELECT *
    FROM employees
    WHERE deptno = P_DEPTNO;
```

Even the optional `RETURN` statement can be added to the above cursor, as shown in the following code snippet:

```
/*Cursor definition to fetch employee data working in input
department parameter and return type as the employee record
structure*/
CURSOR CUR_EMP (P_DEPTNO NUMBER)
RETURN employees%ROWTYPE
IS
    SELECT *
    FROM employees
    WHERE deptno = P_DEPTNO;
```

The following PL/SQL block selects the details for the first two employees, based on their salary (note the usage of cursor attributes in the executable section):

```

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT parameter to print the results in the
environment*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
DECLARE
/*Declare a cursor to select top 2 highest paid employees*/
CURSOR cur_emp
IS
    SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal
    FROM
        (SELECT empno, ename, hiredate, sal,
            ROW_NUMBER() OVER (PARTITION BY 1 ORDER BY sal DESC) RN
        FROM employees)
    WHERE RN < 3;
l_empno employees.empno%TYPE;
l_ename employees.ename%TYPE;
l_doj employees.hiredate%TYPE;
l_sal employees.sal%TYPE;
BEGIN
/*Open the cursor*/
OPEN cur_emp;
LOOP
/*Fetch the cursor select column list into local variables*/
    FETCH cur_emp INTO l_empno, l_ename, l_doj, l_sal;
    EXIT WHEN cur_emp%NOTFOUND;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee details for '||l_ename);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Employee Number: '||l_empno);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Date of joining: '||l_doj);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary: '||l_sal);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(CHR(10));
END LOOP;
/*Close the cursor*/
CLOSE cur_emp;
END;
/

Employee details for SMITH
Employee Number: 7369
Date of joining: 17-DEC-80
Salary: 800

```

```
Employee details for ALLEN
Employee Number: 7499
Date of joining: 20-FEB-81
Salary: 1600
```

```
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

Cursor attributes play a vital role while traversing through the explicit cursor execution cycle. The attributes are automatically set at each stage and the following table shows the behavioral flow:

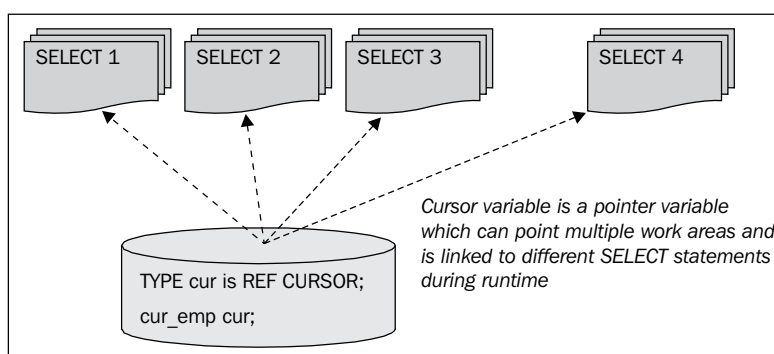
Event	%FOUND	%NOTFOUND	%ISOPEN	%ROWCOUNT
Before OPEN	Exception	Exception	FALSE	Exception
After OPEN	NULL	NULL	TRUE	0
Before first FETCH	NULL	NULL	TRUE	0
After first FETCH	TRUE	FALSE	TRUE	1
Before next FETCH	TRUE	FALSE	TRUE	1
After next FETCH	TRUE	FALSE	TRUE	n + 1
Before last FETCH	TRUE	FALSE	TRUE	n + 1
After last FETCH	FALSE	TRUE	TRUE	n + 1
Before CLOSE	FALSE	TRUE	TRUE	n + 1
After CLOSE	Exception	Exception	FALSE	Exception

## Cursor variables

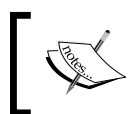
Cursor variables provide a unique service to refer to different context areas in SGA as they can be associated to more than one `SELECT` statement in the same block. While static cursors remain stuck to a single static `SELECT`, cursor variables purely act like a pointer variable. At runtime, the pointer can be moved to point to different work areas having different `SELECT` statements and hence, different result sets.

By virtue of their behavior, a cursor variable differs from a static cursor. Static cursors have the life cycle of only one SQL processing, but cursor variables can live for many SQL statements. Once the processing under a work area is finished, they are ready to move on and point to a different work area. Cursors cannot be passed as arguments, but cursor variables can pass the result sets to other programs and even client environments. These indifferent properties make cursor variables a robust and flexible code feature in PL/SQL.

Cursor variables can be very handy in improving performance while communicating from server to the client. In a single round trip, multiple cursor variables, hence multiple memory references, can be sent to the client environments:



In Oracle, cursor variables exist in the form of ref cursors that is, reference to a cursor. A variable can be declared as the REF CURSOR type to point to a context area in SGA.



As cursor variables have to be opened explicitly, they are not supported with cursor FOR loops. cursor FOR loops are exclusively supported for explicit cursors only.

A REF CURSOR follows the following syntax:

```
DECLARE
  TYPE [CURSOR VARIABLE NAME] IS REF CURSOR [RETURN (return type)]
```

In the preceding syntax, the RETURN type of a cursor variable must be a record type. It is required in strong ref cursors to fix the return type of the result set.

In the example code shown as follows, the PL/SQL block declares a ref cursor as a cursor type and a subsequent cursor variable. Observe the capabilities of a cursor variable to be opened more than once in the program.

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT parameter to print the results in the
environment*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
DECLARE
/*Declare a REF cursor type*/
TYPE C_REF IS REF CURSOR;
/*Declare a Cursor variable of REF cursor type*/
CUR C_REF;
l_ename employees.ename%TYPE;
l_sal employees.sal%TYPE;
l_deptno departments.deptno%TYPE;
l_dname departments.dname%TYPE;
BEGIN
/*Open the cursor variable for SELECT statement*/
OPEN cur FOR SELECT ename, sal
FROM employees
WHERE ename='JAMES';
FETCH cur INTO l_ename, l_sal;
CLOSE cur;
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Salary of '||l_ename||' is '||l_sal);
/*Reopen the same cursor variable for second SELECT statement*/
OPEN cur FOR SELECT deptno, dname
FROM departments
WHERE loc='DALLAS';
FETCH cur INTO l_deptno, l_dname;
CLOSE cur;

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Department name '||l_dname||' for '||l_
deptno);
END;
/

Salary of JAMES is 950
Department name RESEARCH for 20

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

## Ref cursor types—strong and weak

A ref cursor can be either of a strong or weak type.

A ref cursor can be made strong if its return type is fixed during the prototype. The RETURN clause makes the ref cursor restrictive upon the SQL query statement being associated to it. Additionally, in a large application environment, such cursors are less error prone and set the application standards. The return type of a cursor must always be of a record type only.

The return type of a cursor can be a record structure of the table or a user-defined record structure.

For example, a strong ref cursor having a return type record structure of the employees table:

```
TYPE c_strong_rf IS REF CURSOR OF employees%ROWTYPE;
```

Alternatively, a user-defined record can be declared and assigned as the return type of a strong ref cursor.

For example, the cursor in the following code snippet specifies the structure of the return type as the structure of a local record:

```
/*Demonstrate the strong ref cursor where type is a local record
structure*/
DECLARE
    TYPE myrec IS RECORD
        (myname VARCHAR2(10),
         myclass VARCHAR2(10));
    TYPE mycur IS REF CURSOR RETURN myrec;
    cur_var mycur;
```

A ref cursor without the return type makes it weak and open to all SELECT statements. As they provide free-hand association, they are the most frequently used cursor variables. For example, see the following code:

```
TYPE c_weak_rf IS REF CURSOR;
```

## SYS\_REFCURSOR

SYS\_REFCURSOR is an Oracle built-in cursor variable data type which declares a weak ref cursor variable without declaring the ref pointer type. It is used as a generic cursor variable and extensively used as an argument for stored subprograms. It carries data sets across the client environments.

`SYS_REFCURSOR` acts like a cursor variable type, as shown in the following syntax:

```
DECLARE
    [Cursor variable name] SYS_REFCURSOR;
```

As stated, `SYS_REFCURSOR` can also be specified as a parameter type in Oracle subprograms. It appears as follows:

```
PROCEDURE P_DEMO (P_DATA OUT SYS_REFCURSOR)
IS
...
END;
```

## Processing a cursor variable

The process and execution life cycle of a cursor variable resembles the same as that of an explicit cursor.

Let us recapitulate the execution cycle with the help of an example.

The following program displays the grades of all employees based on their salary (the highlighted sections represent the `DECLARE`, `OPEN`, `FETCH`, and `CLOSE` stages):

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT parameter to print the results in the
environment*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

DECLARE
/*Define a ref cursor type and declare cursor variable*/
TYPE c_ref IS REF CURSOR;
cur C_REF;

    l_empno employees.empno%type;
    l_ename employees.ename%type;
    l_deptno employees.deptno%type;
    l_grade salgrade.grade%type;
BEGIN
/*Open the cursor variable for a SELECT query*/
    OPEN cur FOR SELECT e.empno, e.ename, e.deptno, s.grade
FROM employees e, salgrade s
WHERE e.sal between s.losal and s.hisal;

    LOOP
/*Iterate and fetch the records from the result set*/
        FETCH cur INTO l_empno, l_ename, l_deptno, l_grade;
        EXIT WHEN cur%NOTFOUND;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Grade for '||l_ename||'('||l_empno||') is
' ||l_grade);
```

```
        END LOOP;
/*Close the cursor variable*/
CLOSE cur;
END;
/

Grade for SMITH(7369) is 1
Grade for JAMES(7900) is 1
Grade for ADAMS(7876) is 1
Grade for WARD(7521) is 2
Grade for MARTIN(7654) is 2
Grade for MILLER(7934) is 2
Grade for TURNER(7844) is 3
Grade for ALLEN(7499) is 3
Grade for CLARK(7782) is 4
Grade for BLAKE(7698) is 4
Grade for JONES(7566) is 4
Grade for SCOTT(7788) is 4
Grade for FORD(7902) is 4
Grade for KING(7839) is 5

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

## Cursor variables as arguments

Very often in a client-based application, data sets are required to be passed from database to the client environment such as Oracle forms, C++, or Java. One of the most feasible and easily implementable solutions is the cursor variable. Cursor variables can appear in a formal parameter list of a procedure or as return type of a function. Logically, there is no passing of physical data sets over the client but it is just sharing of a pointer variable. Once an active memory pointer has been shared among the database programs or other clients, the cursor work area in the memory and hence, the containing result set can be accessible to all.

For example, the organization asks for the report showing the employees and their current location. The report has to be shown on the employee portal of the company. Now, our task is to transfer the information from the database to the client. Let us write a program to achieve the purpose:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT parameter to print the results in the
environment*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Create the procedure to demonstrate cursor variable in parameter
list*/
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE
```

```
p_emp_location (p_emp_data OUT SYS_REFCURSOR)
IS
/*Declare a local ref cursor variable*/
  TYPE cur_emp_rf IS REF CURSOR;
  cur_emp_loc cur_emp_rf;
BEGIN
/*Open the local ref cursor variable for the SELECT query*/
  OPEN cur_emp_loc FOR SELECT e.ename, d.loc
                        FROM employees e, departments d
                        WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno;
/*Assign the cursor OUT parameter with the local cursor variable*/
  p_emp_data := cur_emp_loc;
END;
/
Procedure created.

/*Declare a host cursor variable in SQLPLUS*/
SQL> VARIABLE M_EMP_LOC REFCURSOR;

/*Execute the procedure P_EMP_LOCATION using the above host cursor
variable*/
SQL> EXEC P_EMP_LOCATION(:M_EMP_LOC);

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

/*Print the host cursor variable*/
SQL> PRINT M_EMP_LOC
```

ENAME	LOC
CLARK	NEW YORK
KING	NEW YORK
MILLER	NEW YORK
JONES	DALLAS
FORD	DALLAS
ADAMS	DALLAS
SMITH	DALLAS
SCOTT	DALLAS
WARD	CHICAGO
TURNER	CHICAGO
ALLEN	CHICAGO
JAMES	CHICAGO
BLAKE	CHICAGO
MARTIN	CHICAGO

14 rows selected.

## Cursor variables—restrictions

The following list shows the restrictions on the usage of cursor variables:

- Cursor variables cannot be declared as a public construct of a package specification. But a ref cursor type can be declared in a package specification:

```
/*Demonstrate the restriction listed above*/
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE pkg_dec_public_cursor IS
    cur_public SYS_REFCURSOR;
END;
/
```

Warning: Package created with compilation errors.

```
/*List the errors in the last compilation*/
SHOW ERROR
Errors for PACKAGE PKG_DEC_PUBLIC_CURSOR:
```

```
LINE/COL ERROR
```

```
-----
2/3      PL/SQL: Declaration ignored
2/3      PLS-00994: Cursor Variables cannot be declared as part of
          a package
```

```
/*Recreate the package with the ref cursor type prototype*/
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE pkg_dec_public_cursor IS
    TYPE cur_public IS REF CURSOR;
END;
/
```

Package created.

The preceding example also deduces the fact that the cursor and the cursor variables are interoperable and mutually exclusive. They must fit in the code appropriately as per the requirement.

- Cursor variables cannot be shared across the servers through remote procedures.
- The `SELECT` query associated to a cursor variable during runtime should not lock the rows that is, it must not have the `FOR UPDATE` clause.

- Cursor variables cannot be used to specify the data type for a database column in a table or collection attribute. It implies that cursor variables cannot be stored in the database. Instead, they are non persistent pointers and are available only within a session's scope.
- Cursor variables cannot be assigned the NULL value.

## Subtypes

The Oracle data type is one of the fundamental concepts of the database. Every element, or piece of data in the database, has its own basic behavioral pattern, which is known as **data type**. An element can be numeric, string, periodic, Boolean or large object. Scalar data types are the original data types which are not derivatives of any other types. Scalar data types constitute a family of base types and their subtypes.

PL/SQL is open to all categories of SQL data types. In addition to available SQL data types, PL/SQL maintains its own data types, most of which are subtypes of SQL data types. We will extend our discussion on these subtypes now.

The following table shows the base types and subtypes under each scalar data types:

Number	Character	Date/Time	Boolean
NUMBER	VARCHAR	DATE	BOOLEAN
DECIMAL/DEC	VARCHAR2	INTERVAL	
DOUBLE PRECISION	NVARCHAR2	TIMESTAMP	
FLOAT	CHAR		
INTEGER/INT	NCHAR		
NUMERIC	CHARACTER		
REAL	LONG		
SMALLINT	LONG RAW		
PLS_INTEGER	RAW		
BINARY_DOUBLE	ROWID		
BINARY_FLOAT	STRING		
BINARY_INTEGER	UROWID		
POSITIVE			
POSITIVEN			
NATURAL			
NATURALN			
SIGNTYPE			

A **subtype** is a data type evolved from the existing scalar data types. The purpose of creating subtypes is to customize the primitive data types by constraining some of the other property features such as nullity, range, or sign. A subtype can be an unconstrained one too, which can be often used in place of base types to maintain application standards.

The evolution of subtypes has categorized the scalar data types into super types. The subtype inherits the behavior of its parent base type and extends it by a distinguishing feature. For example, `NATURALN` is a subtype of `BINARY_INTEGER` which prevents the entry of nulls and non negative values. Similarly, `SIGNTYPE` permits only three fixed values as -1, 0, or 1.

## Subtype classification

Once again, similar to cursors, subtypes can be classified based on their creator and mentor. The subtypes can be categorized as predefined and user-defined.

### Oracle's predefined subtypes

These are built-in subtypes maintained by the Oracle server. They reside within the `STANDARD` package along with the scalar data types.

The following list of the `NUMBER` base type and subtypes has been compiled from Oracle's `STANDARD` package:

```
/*NUMBER family from STANDARD package*/
type NUMBER is NUMBER_BASE;
subtype FLOAT is NUMBER;
subtype INTEGER is NUMBER(38,0);
subtype INT is INTEGER;
subtype SMALLINT is NUMBER(38,0);
subtype DECIMAL is NUMBER(38,0);
subtype NUMERIC is DECIMAL;
subtype DEC is DECIMAL;
subtype BINARY_INTEGER is INTEGER range '-2147483647'..2147483647;
subtype NATURAL is BINARY_INTEGER range 0..2147483647;
subtype NATURALN is NATURAL not null;
subtype POSITIVE is BINARY_INTEGER range 1..2147483647;
subtype POSITIVEN is POSITIVE not null;
subtype SIGNTYPE is BINARY_INTEGER range '-1'..1;
```



FLOAT is an unconstrained subtype of NUMBER. The constrained subtypes such as NATURAL and NATURALN work mostly on the ranges and nullity.

## User-defined subtypes

Oracle allows the users to create a subtype of their own. User-defined subtypes aims to create an alias of predefined types or set certain rules on them in regards to ranges or constraints. It can be created in the `DECLARE` section of a PL/SQL block or subprogram:

```
SUBTYPE [SUBTYPE NAME] IS [PREDEFINED TYPE] [CONSTRAINT | RANGE (range
specification)]
```

The following PL/SQL block defines a subtype of `NUMBER` base type which has been constrained in the range of 1 to 10. As soon as the subtype variable is assigned with an out-of-range value, the `VALUE_ERROR` exception is raised.

```
SQL> DECLARE
/*Create a subtype with value range between 1 to 10*/
  SUBTYPE ID IS BINARY_INTEGER RANGE 1..10;
  L_NUM ID;
BEGIN
/*Assign a value beyond range*/
  L_NUM := 11;
END;
/
DECLARE
*
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-06502: PL/SQL: numeric or value error
ORA-06512: at line 5
```

The PL/SQL block shows the working of a constrained subtype. Note that the variable of a not null subtype must be initialized with a definite default value. Observe the working of a constrained subtype by equating a `NULL` variable to it. It prevents the action by raising an exception against it.

```
SQL> DECLARE
/*Create a not null constrained subtype with value range between 1 to
10*/
  SUBTYPE ID IS BINARY_INTEGER RANGE 1..10 NOT NULL;
  L_NUM ID := 3;
  L_NULL NUMBER;
BEGIN
/*Assign NULL to the subtype variable*/
  L_NUM := L_NULL;
END;
/
```

```

DECLARE
*
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-06502: PL/SQL: numeric or value error
ORA-06512: at line 6

```

Subtypes are beneficial in setting up the standards of large applications where the data types must be compatible with ANSI/ISO or DB2 data types. They increase code interactivity, readability, and offer code sampling advantages. The programmer defines the subtype at higher level. If any change in the behavior of the data type is identified, changes can be cascaded by modifying the subtype definition at the top level.

## Type compatibility with subtypes

This is a quite obvious feature of subtypes that they are interchangeable with their base types under their service conditions. These service conditions are the constraints in the subtype definitions, which must be obeyed during assignment.

In the following program, the SUBTYPE ID is a BINARY\_INTEGER whose range is constrained from 1 to 10. If a NUMBER variable with a value greater than 10 is assigned to it, Oracle raises the VALUE\_ERROR exception:

```

SQL> DECLARE
/*Create a subtype with value range between 1 to 10. Declare the
subtype variable*/
    SUBTYPE ID IS binary_integer range 1..10;
    L_NUM ID ;
    L_BN BINARY_INTEGER;
BEGIN
/*Assign a NUMBER variable to SUBTYPE variable*/
    L_NUM := 4;
    L_BN := 15;
    L_NUM := L_BN;
END;
/
DECLARE
*
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-06502: PL/SQL: numeric or value error
ORA-06512: at line 8

```

In this case, reverse assignment is possible because BINARY\_INTEGER can accept numeric values in range of -2147483647 to 2147483647.

## Summary

In this chapter, we discussed the importance of cursor structures in the PL/SQL code. We understood the working of cursor structures, their execution cycle, design considerations, and guidelines. We discussed implicit and explicit cursors and covered the working of cursor variables. Meanwhile, we learnt how cursor variables are superior to static cursors. At the end, we overviewed the working of subtypes in Oracle. Subtypes can be a handy feature in large database systems to provide flexibility and maintenance of data types in a modularized way.

In the next chapter, we shall cover composite data types and understand how collections can boost PL/SQL code performance and perform data caching.

## Practice exercise

1. What are the possible reasons that cause the `INVALID_CURSOR` exception to occur?
  - a. The cursor result set has not been fetched.
  - b. The cursor does not have parameters.
  - c. The value of the `%ROWCOUNT` attribute has been referenced after closing the cursor.
  - d. The cursor result set has been fetched into a non matching variable.
2. Identify the guidelines to be considered when designing cursors in a PL/SQL block:
  - a. Explicit cursors must be used irrespective of the number of records returned by the query.
  - b. Cursor `FOR` loops must be used as it implicitly takes care of the `OPEN`, `FETCH`, and `CLOSE` stages.
  - c. Cursor data must be fetched as a record.
  - d. Use `ROWNUM` to index the records in the cursor result sets.
3. While processing DMLs as implicit cursors in the PL/SQL executable block, implicit cursor attributes can be used anywhere in the block.
  - a. True
  - b. False

- 
4. From the following, identify the two correct statements about the `REF CURSOR` types:
    - a. Ref cursors are reference pointers to cursor objects
    - b. `REF CURSOR` types can be declared in package specification
    - c. `SYS_REFCURSOR` is a strong ref cursor type
    - d. Cursor variables cannot be used as arguments in stored subprograms
  5. The `RETURN` type for a ref cursor can be declared using `%TYPE`, `%ROWTYPE`, or a user-defined record.
    - a. True
    - b. False
  6. Which two statements, among the following, are true about cursor variables?
    - a. Cursor variables can process more than one `SELECT` statement
    - b. Cursor variables can be passed as program arguments across subprograms and even to the client end programs
    - c. A cursor variable can be declared as a public construct in package specification
    - d. Cursor variables can be stored in the database as database columns
  7. Similar to static explicit cursors, cursor variables can also be opened in the `FOR` loop.
    - a. True
    - b. False
  8. Which of the following is true while creating subtypes from a table record structure?  
`SUBTYPE [Name] IS [TABLE] %ROWTYPE`
    - a. The subtype inherits complete column structure of the record structure
    - b. The subtype inherits the default values of the database columns in the table
    - c. The subtype inherits the index information of the database columns
    - d. The subtype inherits none except the `NOT NULL` constraint information of the database columns



# 3

## Using Collections

Conceptually, "array" has been a colloquial term in programming glossaries. It refers to a list of similar elements. In Oracle, an array is known by the name, collection. A **collection** consists of a list of elements of the same type, where each element can be identified by its index or subscript.

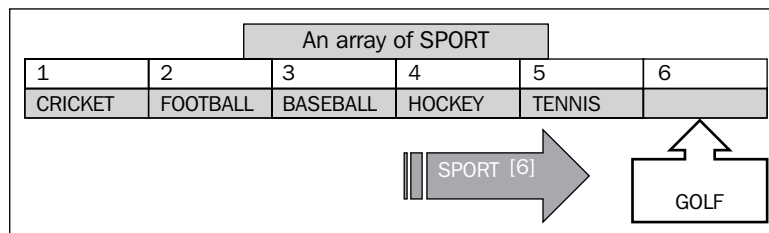
A collection works on the same philosophy as an array, a queue, or a linked list works. Collections provide wide scope of usability and applications in database programming. Besides being a performance booster, collections can also be used for data caching mechanisms in programs. It can also be used as database columns, type attributes or subprogram parameters. In this chapter, we shall perform a detailed study on collections, its types and usage in the following topics:

- Collections – an overview
  - Categorization
  - Selection of an appropriate collection type
- Associative arrays
- Nested tables
- Varray
- Collections – a comparative study
- PL/SQL collection methods
- Manipulating collection elements
- Collection initialization

## Collections—an overview

A collection is a homogeneous single dimensional structure, which constitutes an ordered set of elements of a similar type. Being a homogeneous structure, all elements are of the same data type. The structure of the element contains cells with a subscript. The elements reside in these cells to make the index as their location information. The subscript or cell index becomes identification of an element and is used for its access.

Structure of a collection type, *SPORT*, is shown in the following diagram. Note the subscript and elements into it. A new element, *GOLF*, enters at the last empty location and is represented as *SPORT* [6] :



A collection element can be of any valid SQL data type or a user-defined type. An element of the SQL primitive data type is a scalar value while an element of the user-defined type is an object type instance. A collection can be used within a PL/SQL program by declaring a PL/SQL variable of collection type. The local PL/SQL variable can hold the instances of its collection type. Besides, a database column in a table can also be of the schema collection type.

The collections in Oracle are strictly one dimensional. They cannot be realized on two-dimensional coordinates. However, multidimensional arrays can be realized when the collection has an object type or collection type attribute.

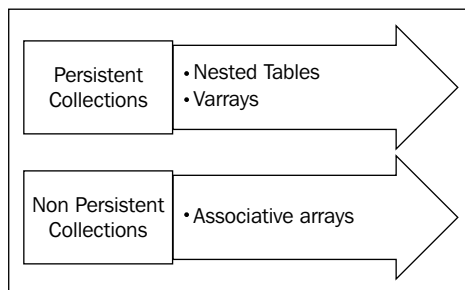
A collection can be bounded or unbounded. Bounded collections can accommodate a limited number of elements while unbounded collections have no upper limit for subscripts.

Collections provide an efficient way to organize the data in an array or set format while making the use of object-oriented features. An instance of a nested table or varray collection type is accessed as an object while the data is still stored in database columns. Collections can be used to avail data caching in programs and boost up the performance of SQL operations. On dedicated server connections, a session always uses **User Global Area (UGA)**, a component of PGA, for collection operations. On the other hand, for shared server mode, the collection operations are still carried out in UGA; but UGA is now a part of **System Global Area (SGA)**, thus indirectly in SGA. This is because in shared server connections, multiple server processes can affect a session, thus UGA must be allocated out of the SGA.

## Categorization

Collections are of two types – **persistent** and **non-persistent**. A collection is persistent if it stores the collection structure and elements physically in the database. Contrarily, a non-persistent collection is active for a program only that is, maximum up to a session.

Apart from the preceding categories, a collection can be realized in three formats namely, associative array, nested table or varray. This categorization is purely based on their objective and behavioral properties in a PL/SQL program. The following diagram combines the abstract and physical classification of collections:



We will take a quick tour of these collection types now and discuss them in detail in the coming sections:

- **Associative array (index-by table):** This is the simplest form of non-persistent unbounded collections. As a non-persistent collection, it cannot be stored in the database, but they are available within a PL/SQL block only. The collection structure and data of associative array cannot be retained once the program is completed. Initially, during the days of Oracle 7, it was known as PL/SQL tables. Later, Oracle 8 version released it as index-by tables as they used an index to identify an element.

- **Nested table:** This is a persistent form of unbounded collections which can be created in the database as well as in PL/SQL block.
- **Varray (variable-size array):** This is a persistent but bounded form of collection which can be created in the database as well as in PL/SQL. Similar to a nested table, a varray is also a unidimensional homogeneous collection. The collection size and storage scheme are the factors which differentiate varrays from nested tables. Unlike a nested table, a varray can accommodate only a defined (fixed) number of elements.

## Selecting an appropriate collection type

Here are a few guidelines to decide upon the appropriate usage of collection types in programs:

Use of associative arrays is required when:

- You have to temporarily cache the program data in an array format for lookup purpose.
- You need string subscripts for the collection elements. Note that it supports negative subscripts, too.
- Map hash tables from the client to the database.

Use of nested tables is preferred when:

- You have to store data as sets in the database. Database columns of nested table type can be declared to hold the data persistently.
- Perform major array operations such as insertion and deletion, on a large volume of data.

Use of varrays is preferred when:

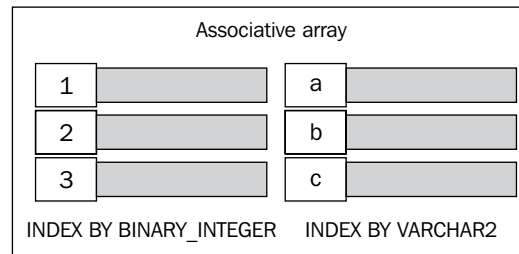
- You have to store calculated or predefined volume of data in the database. Varray offers limited and defined storage of rows in a collection.
- Order of the elements has to be preserved.

## Associative arrays

Associative arrays are analogous to conventional arrays or lists which can be defined within a PL/SQL program only. Neither the array structure nor the data can be stored in the database. It can hold the elements of a similar type in a key-value structure without any upper bound to the array. Each cell of the array is distinguished by its subscript, index, or cell number. The index can be a number or a string.

Associative arrays were first introduced in Oracle 7 release as PL/SQL tables to signify its usage within the scope of a PL/SQL block. Oracle 8 release identified the PL/SQL table as Index by table due to its structure as an index-value pair. Oracle 10g release recognized the behavior of index by tables as arrays so as to rename it as associative arrays due to association of an index with an array.

The following diagram explains the physical lookup structure of an associative array:



Associative arrays follow the following syntax for declaration in a PL/SQL declare block:

```
TYPE [COLL NAME] IS TABLE OF [ELEMENT DATA TYPE] NOT NULL
INDEX BY [INDEX DATA TYPE]
```

In the preceding syntax, the index type signifies the data type of the array subscript. RAW, NUMBER, LONG-RAW, ROWID, and CHAR are the unsupported index data types. The suited index types are BINARY\_INTEGER, PLS\_INTEGER, POSITIVE, NATURAL, SIGNTYPE, or VARCHAR2.

The element's data type can be one of the following:

- **PL/SQL scalar data type:** NUMBER (along with its subtypes), VARCHAR2 (and its subtypes), DATE, BLOB, CLOB, or BOOLEAN
- **Inferred data:** The data type inherited from a table column, cursor expression or predefined package variable
- **User-defined type:** A user defined object type or collection type

For illustration, the following are the valid conditions of the associative array in a PL/SQL block:

```
/*Array of CLOB data*/
TYPE clob_t IS TABLE OF CLOB
INDEX BY PLS_INTEGER;
/*Array of employee ids indexed by the employee names*/
TYPE empno_t IS TABLE OF employees.empno%TYPE NOT NULL
INDEX BY employees.ename%type;
```

The following PL/SQL program declares an associative array type in a PL/SQL block. Note that the subscript of the array is of a string type and it stores the number of days in a quarter. This code demonstrates the declaration of an array and assignment of the element in each cell and printing them. Note that the program uses the `FIRST` and `NEXT` collection methods to display the array elements. The collection methods would be covered in detail in the *PL/SQL collection methods* section:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT on to display the output*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
/*Declare a collection type associative array and its variable*/
  TYPE string_asc_arr_t IS TABLE OF NUMBER
  INDEX BY VARCHAR2(10);
  l_str string_asc_arr_t;
  l_idx VARCHAR2(50);
BEGIN
/*Assign the total count of days in each quarter against each cell*/
  l_str ('JAN-MAR') := 90;
  l_str ('APR-JUN') := 91;
  l_str ('JUL-SEP') := 92;
  l_str ('OCT-DEC') := 93;
  l_idx := l_str.FIRST;
  WHILE (l_idx IS NOT NULL)
  LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Value at index '||l_idx||' is '||l_str(l_
idx));
    l_idx := l_str.NEXT(l_idx);
  END LOOP;
END;
/

Value at index APR-JUN is 91
Value at index JAN-MAR is 90
Value at index JUL-SEP is 92
Value at index OCT-DEC is 93
```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

In the preceding block, note the string indexed array. A string indexed array considerably improves the performance by using indexed organization of array values. In the last block, we noticed the explicit assignment of data.

In the following program, we will try to populate the array automatically in the program. The following PL/SQL block declares an associative array to hold the ASCII values of number 1 to 100:

```

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT on to display the output*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL Block*/
DECLARE
/*Declare an array of string indexed by numeric subscripts*/
  TYPE ASCII_VALUE_T IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(12)
  INDEX BY PLS_INTEGER;
  L_GET_ASCII ASCII_VALUE_T;
BEGIN
/*Insert the values through a FOR loop*/
  FOR I IN 1..100
  LOOP
    L_GET_ASCII(I) := ASCII(I);
  END LOOP;
/*Display the values randomly*/
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(L_GET_ASCII(5));
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(L_GET_ASCII(15));
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(L_GET_ASCII(75));
END;
/

53
49
55

```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.


The salient features of associative arrays are as follows:

- An associative array can exist as a sparse or empty collection
- Being a non-persistent collection, it cannot participate in DML transactions
- It can be passed as arguments to other local subprograms within the same block
- Sorting of an associative array depends on the NLS\_SORT parameter
- An associative array declared in package specification behaves as a session-persistent array

## Nested tables

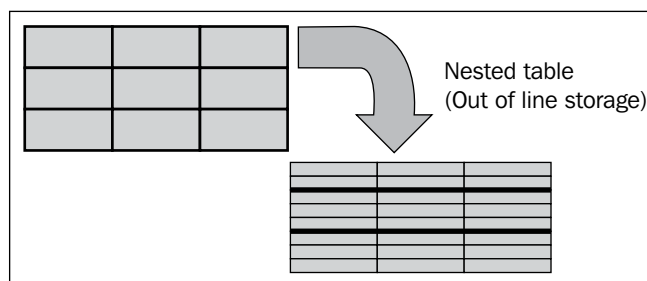
Nested tables are a persistent form of collections which can be created in the database as well as PL/SQL. It is an unbounded collection where the index or subscript is implicitly maintained by the Oracle server during data retrieval. Oracle automatically marks the minimum subscript as 1 and relatively handles others. As there is no upper limit defined for a nested table, its size can grow dynamically. Though not an index-value pair structure, a nested table can be accessed like an array in a PL/SQL block.

A nested table is initially a dense collection but it might become sparse due to delete operations on the collection cells.

 **Dense collection** is the one which is tightly populated. That means, there exists no empty cells between the lower and upper indexes of the collection. Sparse collections can have empty cells between the first and the last cell of the collection. A dense collection may get sparse by performing the "delete" operations.

When a nested table is declared in a PL/SQL program, they behave as a one-dimensional array without any index type or upper limit specification.

A nested table defined in a database exists as a valid schema object type. It can be either used in a PL/SQL block to declare a PL/SQL variable for temporarily holding program data or a database column of particular nested table type can be included in a table, which can persistently store the data in the database. A nested table type column in a table resembles a table within a table, but Oracle draws an out-of-line storage table to hold the nested table data. This scenario is illustrated in the following diagram:



Whenever a database column of nested table type is created in a table (referred to as **parent table**), Oracle creates a storage table with the same storage options as that of the parent table. The storage table created by Oracle in the same segment carries the name as specified in the `NESTED TABLE STORE AS` clause during creation of the parent table. Whenever a row is created in the parent table, the following actions are performed by the Oracle server:

- A unique identifier is generated to distinguish the nested table instances of different parent rows, for the parent row
- The instance of the nested table is created in the storage table alongside the unique identifier of the parent row

The Oracle server takes care of these nested table operations. For the programmer or user, the whole process is hidden and appears as a normal "insert" operation.

A nested table definition in PL/SQL follows the following syntax:

```
DECLARE
  TYPE type_name IS TABLE OF element_type [NOT NULL];
```

In the preceding syntax, `element_type` is a primitive data type or a user-defined type, but not as a `REF CURSOR` type.

In a database, a nested table can be defined using the following syntax:

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] TYPE type_name IS TABLE OF [element_type] [NOT
NULL];
/
```

In the preceding syntax, `[element_type]` can be a SQL supported scalar data type, a database object type, or a `REF` object type. Unsupported element types are `BOOLEAN`, `LONG`, `LONG-RAW`, `NATURAL`, `NATURALN`, `POSITIVE`, `POSITIVEN`, `REF CURSOR`, `SIGNTYPE`, `STRING`, `PLS_INTEGER`, `SIMPLE_INTEGER`, `BINARY_INTEGER` and all other non-SQL supported data types.

If the size of the element type of a database collection type has to be increased, follow this syntax:

```
ALTER TYPE [type name] MODIFY ELEMENT TYPE [modified element type]
[CASCADE | INVALIDATE];
```

The keywords, `CASCADE` or `INVALIDATE`, decide whether the collection modification has to invalidate the dependents or the changes that have to be cascaded across the dependents.

The nested table from the database can be dropped using the `DROP` command, as shown in the following syntax (note that the `FORCE` keyword drops the type irrespective of its dependents):

```
DROP TYPE [collection name] [FORCE]
```

## Nested table collection type as the database object

We will go through the following illustration to understand the behavior of a nested table, when created as a database collection type:

```
/*Create the nested table in the database*/
SQL> CREATE TYPE NUM_NEST_T AS TABLE OF NUMBER;
/
```

Type created.

The nested table type, `NUM_NEST_T`, is now created in the database. Its metadata information can be queried from the `USER_TYPES` and `USER_COLL_TYPES` dictionary views:

```
SELECT type_name, typecode, type_oid
FROM USER_TYPES
WHERE type_name = 'NUM_NEST_T';
```

TYPE_NAME	TYPECODE	TYPE_OID
NUM_NEST_T	COLLECTION	96DE421E47114638A9F5617CE735731A

Note that the `TYPECODE` value shows the type of the object in the database and differentiates collection types from user-defined object types:

```
SELECT type_name, coll_type, elem_type_name
FROM user_coll_types
WHERE type_name = 'NUM_NEST_T';
```

TYPE_NAME	COLL_TYPE	ELEM_TYPE_NAME
NUM_NEST_T	TABLE	NUMBER

Once the collection type has been successfully created in the database, it can be used to specify the type for a database column in a table. The `CREATE TABLE` statement in the following code snippet declares a column of the `NUM_NEST_T` nested table type in the parent table, `TAB_USE_NT_COL`. The `NESTED TABLE [Column] STORE AS [Storage table]` clause specifies the storage table for the nested table type column. A separate table for the nested table column, `NUM`, ensures its out-of-line storage.

```
SQL> CREATE TABLE TAB_USE_NT_COL
      (ID NUMBER,
       NUM NUM_NEST_T)
      NESTED TABLE NUM STORE AS NESTED_NUM_ID;
```

Table created.

## DML operations on nested table columns

Let us check out the way we perform DML operations on nested table type columns.

### Inserting a nested table instance

The nested table data will be inserted using a collection type constructor. A collection type constructor is a default constructor from Oracle which can be used to provide value of each of its attributes.

```
INSERT INTO TAB_USE_NT_COL (ID, NUM)
VALUES
(1, NUM_NEST_T(10,12,3));
/
```

1 row created.

```
INSERT INTO TAB_USE_NT_COL (ID, NUM)
VALUES
(2, NUM_NEST_T(23,43));
/
```

1 row created.

## Selecting a nested table column

When a table having a nested table column is queried, the nested table column appears as an instance of the nested table object type:

```
SQL> SELECT *
      FROM tab_use_nt_col;

      ID NUM
-----
      1 NUM_NEST_T(10, 12, 3)
      2 NUM_NEST_T(23, 43)
```

The TABLE expression can be used to open the instance and display the data in relational format. The TABLE expression is used to access the attributes of the nested table type. Oracle implicitly joins the parent row with the nested table row in the query output.

```
SQL> SELECT T.id, T1.column_value
      FROM tab_use_nt_col T, TABLE (T.num) T1;

      ID COLUMN_VALUE
-----
      1             10
      1             12
      1              3
      2             23
      2             43
```

In the preceding SELECT query, COLUMN\_VALUE is an Oracle pseudo column which is used in the SELECT queries to signify the nested table column with no attribute name.

## Updating the nested table instance

Nested table data can be updated either as a "cut and replace" option or through the TABLE expression. Using the UPDATE statement, an instance can be replaced with the new one.

Let us update the collection instance for ID 2 in the TAB\_USE\_NT\_COL table:

```
UPDATE tab_use_nt_col
SET num = num_nest_t(10,12,13)
WHERE id=2
/

1 row updated.
```

Now, query the table data to verify the nested table update:

```
SQL> SELECT * FROM tab_use_nt_col;
```

```

ID NUM
-----
1 NUM_NEST_T(10, 12, 3)
2 NUM_NEST_T(10, 12, 13)

```

The TABLE expression can be used to update a single element in the collection. For example, in the table data shown above, if the collection instance has to be NUM\_NEST\_T(10, 100, 3) for ID 1 instead of NUM\_NEST\_T(10, 12, 3), the TABLE expression can be used to update the single element. Let us check out how to do it:

```

UPDATE TABLE (SELECT num FROM tab_use_nt_col WHERE id = 1) P
SET P.COLUMN_VALUE = 100
WHERE P.COLUMN_VALUE = 12;

```

```
1 row updated.
```

In the preceding UPDATE statement, the TABLE expression reads the collection type instance returned by the subquery. It opens up the instance in relational format and the instance values can be accessed and, hence, manipulated. It is to be noted that the subquery must return a single instance only. It implies that the subquery must return a single collection row.

Now query the table to verify the preceding modification:

```
SQL> SELECT * FROM TAB_USE_NT_COL;
```

```

ID NUM
-----
1 NUM_NEST_T(10, 100, 3)
2 NUM_NEST_T(10, 12, 13)

```

## A nested table collection type in PL/SQL

In PL/SQL, a nested table can be declared and defined in the declaration section of the block as a local collection type. As a nested table follows object orientation, the PL/SQL variable of the nested table type has to be necessarily initialized. The Oracle server raises the exception `ORA-06531: Reference to uninitialized collection` if an uninitialized nested table type variable is encountered during block execution.

As the nested table collection type has been declared within the PL/SQL block, its scope, visibility, and life is the execution of the PL/SQL block only.

The following PL/SQL block declares a nested table. Observe the scope and visibility of the collection variable. Note that the COUNT method has been used to display the array elements. It is covered later in this chapter in the *Collections – a comparative study* section:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display the results*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
/*Declare a local nested table collection type*/
  TYPE LOC_NUM_NEST_T IS TABLE OF NUMBER;
  L_LOCAL_NT LOC_NUM_NEST_T := LOC_NUM_NEST_T (10,20,30);
BEGIN
/*Use FOR loop to parse the array and print the elements*/
  FOR I IN 1..L_LOCAL_NT.COUNT
  LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Printing ' || i || ' element: ' || L_LOCAL_
NT(I));
  END LOOP;
END;
/

Printing 1 element: 10
Printing 2 element: 20
Printing 3 element: 30

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

## Additional features of a nested table

In the earlier sections, we saw the operational methodology of a nested table. We will now focus on the nested table's metadata. Furthermore, we will demonstrate a peculiar behavior of the nested table for the "delete" operations.

Oracle's USER\_NESTED\_TABLES and USER\_NESTED\_TABLE\_COLS data dictionary views maintain the relationship information of the parent and the nested tables. These dictionary views are populated only when a database of a nested table collection type is included in a table.

The USER\_NESTED\_TABLES static view maintains the information about the mapping of a nested table collection type with its parent table.

The structure of the dictionary view is as follows:

```
SQL> desc USER_NESTED_TABLES
```

Name	Null?	Type
TABLE_NAME		VARCHAR2 (30)
TABLE_TYPE_OWNER		VARCHAR2 (30)
TABLE_TYPE_NAME		VARCHAR2 (30)
PARENT_TABLE_NAME		VARCHAR2 (30)
PARENT_TABLE_COLUMN		VARCHAR2 (4000)
STORAGE_SPEC		VARCHAR2 (30)
RETURN_TYPE		VARCHAR2 (20)
ELEMENT_SUBSTITUTABLE		VARCHAR2 (25)

Let us query the nested table relationship properties for the TAB\_USE\_NT\_COL table from the preceding view:

```
SELECT parent_table_column, table_name, return_type, storage_spec
FROM user_nested_tables
WHERE parent_table_name='TAB_USE_NT_COL'
/
```

PARENT_TAB	TABLE_NAME	RETURN_TYPE	STORAGE_SPEC
NUM	NESTED_NUM_ID	VALUE	DEFAULT

In the preceding view query, RETURN\_TYPE specifies the return type of the collection. It can be VALUE (in this case) or LOCATOR. Another column, STORAGE\_SPEC, signifies the storage scheme used for the storage of a nested table which can be either USER\_SPECIFIED or DEFAULT (in this case).

The USER\_NESTED\_TABLE\_COLS view maintains the information about the collection attributes contained in the nested tables:

```
SQL> desc USER_NESTED_TABLE_COLS
```

Name	Null?	Type
TABLE_NAME	NOT NULL	VARCHAR2 (30)
COLUMN_NAME	NOT NULL	VARCHAR2 (30)
DATA_TYPE		VARCHAR2 (106)
DATA_TYPE_MOD		VARCHAR2 (3)
DATA_TYPE_OWNER		VARCHAR2 (30)
DATA_LENGTH	NOT NULL	NUMBER
DATA_PRECISION		NUMBER
DATA_SCALE		NUMBER
NULLABLE		VARCHAR2 (1)

COLUMN_ID	NUMBER
DEFAULT_LENGTH	NUMBER
DATA_DEFAULT	LONG
NUM_DISTINCT	NUMBER
LOW_VALUE	RAW (32)
HIGH_VALUE	RAW (32)
DENSITY	NUMBER
NUM_NULLS	NUMBER
NUM_BUCKETS	NUMBER
LAST_ANALYZED	DATE
SAMPLE_SIZE	NUMBER
CHARACTER_SET_NAME	VARCHAR2 (44)
CHAR_COL_DECL_LENGTH	NUMBER
GLOBAL_STATS	VARCHAR2 (3)
USER_STATS	VARCHAR2 (3)
AVG_COL_LEN	NUMBER
CHAR_LENGTH	NUMBER
CHAR_USED	VARCHAR2 (1)
V80_FMT_IMAGE	VARCHAR2 (3)
DATA_UPGRADED	VARCHAR2 (3)
HIDDEN_COLUMN	VARCHAR2 (3)
VIRTUAL_COLUMN	VARCHAR2 (3)
SEGMENT_COLUMN_ID	NUMBER
INTERNAL_COLUMN_ID	NOT NULL NUMBER
HISTOGRAM	VARCHAR2 (15)
QUALIFIED_COL_NAME	VARCHAR2 (4000)

We will now query the nested storage table in the preceding dictionary view to list all its attributes:

```
SELECT COLUMN_NAME, DATA_TYPE, DATA_LENGTH, HIDDEN_COLUMN
FROM user_nested_table_cols
where table_name='NESTED_NUM_ID'
/
```

COLUMN_NAME	DATA_TYP	DATA_LENGTH	HID
NESTED_TABLE_ID	RAW	16	YES
COLUMN_VALUE	NUMBER	22	NO

We observe that though the nested table had only number elements, there is two-columned information in the view. The `COLUMN_VALUE` attribute is the default pseudo column of the nested table as there are no "named" attributes in the collection structure. The other attribute, `NESTED_TABLE_ID`, is a hidden unique 16-byte system generated raw hash code which latently stores the parent row identifier alongside the nested table instance to distinguish the parent row association.

If an element is deleted from the nested table, it is rendered as parse. This implies that once an index is deleted from the collection structure, the collection doesn't restructure itself by shifting the cells in a forward direction. Let us check out the sparse behavior in the following example.

The following PL/SQL block declares a local nested table and initializes it with a constructor. We will delete the first element and print it again. The system raises the `NO_DATA_FOUND` exception when we query the element at the index 1 in the collection:

```

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display the block messages*/
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
SQL> DECLARE

    /*Declare the local nested table collection*/
    TYPE coll_method_demo_t IS TABLE OF NUMBER;

    /*Declare a collection variable and initialize it*/
    L_ARRAY coll_method_demo_t := coll_method_demo_t
(10,20,30,40,50);
    BEGIN

        /*Display element at index 1*/
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Element at index 1 before deletion:'||l_
array(1));
        /*Delete the 1st element from the collection*/
        L_ARRAY.DELETE(1);
        /*Display element at index 1*/
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Element at index 1 after deletion:'||l_
array(1));
    END;
/

Element at index 1 before deletion:10
DECLARE
*
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-01403: no data found
ORA-06512: at line 15

```

## Varray

Varrays were introduced in Oracle8i as a modified format of a nested table. The varray or variable size arrays are bounded and the persistent form of collection whose major operational features resemble nested tables. The varray declaration defines the limit of elements a varray can accommodate. The minimum bound of the index is 1, current bound is the total number of resident elements and maximum bound is the varray size. At any moment, the current bound cannot exceed the maximum bound.

Like nested tables, varrays can be created as database objects and can also be used in PL/SQL. Though the implementation is the same as a nested table, varray follow a different storage orientation than the nested tables. They are stored in line with their parent record as a raw value in the parent table. The inline storage mechanism no more needs a storage clause specification, unique identifier or separate storage table. For some exceptional situations when the varray exceeds 4 K data, Oracle follows the out-of-line storage mechanism and stores varray as an LOB.



The inline storage mechanism of varrays helps Oracle to reduce the number of IOs on the disk. This makes varrays superior and more performance efficient than nested tables.

As a database collection type, varrays can be a valid type for a table column or object type attribute. If declared in a PL/SQL block, varrays are visible only within the block.

The syntax for varrays, when defined as a database collection type, is as follows:

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] TYPE type_name IS {VARRAY | VARYING ARRAY} (size_
limit) OF element_type
```

In PL/SQL, varrays can be declared as follows:

```
DECLARE
TYPE type_name IS {VARRAY | VARYING ARRAY} (size_limit) OF
element_type [NOT NULL];
```

In the preceding syntax, `size_limit` represents the maximum count of elements in the array.

If the varray size has to be modified after its creation in the database, follow this ALTER TYPE syntax:

```
ALTER TYPE [varray name] MODIFY LIMIT [new size_limit]
[INVALIDATE | CASCADE];
```



The varray size can only be increased by using the ALTER TYPE... MODIFY statement. Even if the current maximum size has not been utilized, Oracle doesn't allow the ripping off a varray size. If a user attempts to reduce the varray size, Oracle raises the PLS-00728: the limit of a VARRAY can only be increased and to a maximum 2147483647 exception and invalidates the varray collection type.

The INVALIDATE and CASCADE options signify the invalidation or propagation effect on the dependent objects as a result of the type alteration.

Use the DROP command to drop a varray type from the database:

```
DROP TYPE [varray type name] [FORCE]
```

## Varray in PL/SQL

Similar to the handling of a nested table as PL/SQL construct, varrays also can be declared local to a PL/SQL block. In the following illustrations, observe the scope and visibility of the varray variables.

Similar to nested tables, varrays too follow object orientation. For this reason, varrays require initialization mandatorily before accessing them in the executable section of the PL/SQL block.

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display the results*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
/*Declare a local varray type, define collection variable and
initialize it*/
    TYPE V_COLL_DEMO IS VARRAY(4) OF VARCHAR2(100);
    L_LOCAL_COLL V_COLL_DEMO := V_COLL_DEMO('Oracle 9i',
                                              'Oracle 10g',
                                              'Oracle 11g');
BEGIN
/*Use FOR loop to parse the array variable and print the elements*/
    FOR I IN 1..L_LOCAL_COLL.COUNT
    LOOP
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Printing Oracle version:' || L_LOCAL_
COLL(I));
    END LOOP;
END;
/
```

```
Printing Oracle version:Oracle 9i
Printing Oracle version:Oracle 10g
Printing Oracle version:Oracle 11g
```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

## Varray as a database collection type

Let us illustrate the creation of a varray as a database collection type. We will see the SELECT and DML operations on varrays:

```
/*Create the nested table in the database*/
SQL> CREATE OR REPLACE TYPE num_varray_t AS VARRAY (5) OF NUMBER;
/
```

Type created.

Oracle maintains the complete information about the newly created varray types in the dictionary views USER\_VARRAYS, USER\_COLL\_TYPES, and USER\_TYPES.

Now, we will create a table which has a column of the varray type. Note that it has no NESTED TABLE STORE AS clause as it used in the case of nested tables to specify the name of the storage table.

```
CREATE TABLE tab_use_va_col
  (ID NUMBER,
   NUM num_varray_t);
```

Table created.

```
/*Query the USER_VARRAYS to list varray information*/
SELECT parent_table_column, type_name, return_type, storage_spec
FROM user_varrays
WHERE parent_table_name='TAB_USE_VA_COL'
/
```

PARENT_TAB	TYPE_NAME	RETURN_TYPE	STORAGE_SPEC
NUM	NUM_VARRAY_T	VALUE	DEFAULT

## DML operations on varray type columns

Being the common behavior of the homogeneous collections, varrays respond affirmatively to the DML operations upon them. Similar to the nested tables, let us demonstrate the DML actions on varray type columns.

## Inserting a varray collection type instance

The following code inserts the test data into the table created in the *Varray as a database collection type* section. The INSERT statement uses a collection type constructor and looks similar to that of the nested table:

```
/*Insert the sample data in the varray collection*/
INSERT INTO tab_use_va_col
VALUES
(1, num_varray_t (10,12,13))
/

1 row created.

INSERT INTO tab_use_va_col
VALUES
(2, num_varray_t (32, 23, 76, 27))
/

1 row created.
```

Note that the DML statements on varrays raise exception if elements supplied exceed the defined limit. The following INSERT statement attempts to include six elements in the collection type instance. Note that the maximum limit of a varray collection is five. Exception roars!!

```
INSERT INTO tab_use_va_col
VALUES
(3, num_varray_t (32, 23, 76, 27, 38, 3));
(3, num_varray_t (32, 23, 76, 27, 38, 3))
*
ERROR at line 3:
ORA-22909: exceeded maximum VARRAY limit
```

## Selecting a varray column

The following SELECT query selects the varray in an instance format:

```
SQL> SELECT * FROM tab_use_va_col;

      ID NUM
-----
1 NUM_VARRAY_T(10, 12, 13)
2 NUM_VARRAY_T(32, 23, 76, 27)
```

Like we saw in nested tables, the `TABLE` expression can open the collection instance and represent the object rows in relational format:

```
SQL> SELECT T.id, T1.column_value
FROM tab_use_va_col T, TABLE(T.num) T1;
```

ID	COLUMN_VALUE
1	10
1	12
1	13
2	32
2	23
2	76
2	27

7 rows selected.

## Updating the varray instance

Similar to the demonstration shown in the nested tables, varrays can be updated using the instance replacement option. The following `UPDATE` statement modifies the varray instance for ID 1:

```
UPDATE TAB_USE_VA_COL
SET NUM = NUM_VARRAY_T(10, 12, 25)
WHERE ID = 1;
```

1 row updated.

Now, the table can be queried to verify the update:

```
SQL> select * from tab_use_va_col;
```

ID	NUM
1	NUM_VARRAY_T(10, 12, 25)
2	NUM_VARRAY_T(32, 23, 76, 27)

In case of varrays, a single element cannot be updated using the `TABLE` expression. The reason is the different storage philosophy of varrays. A varray is stored in line with the parent row and not as separate storage tables, as in the case of nested tables. Therefore, a single element of a varray can be updated only through a PL/SQL block.

## Collections—a comparative study

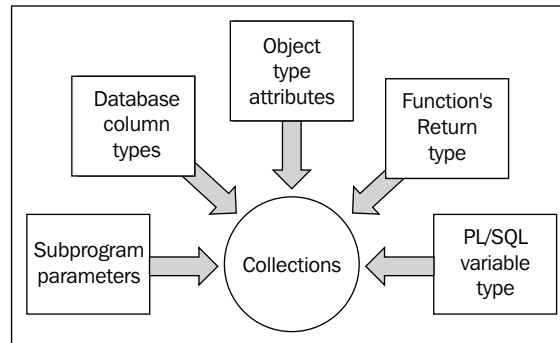
In this section, we will compare the available collection types and also throw light on the considerable points to select the appropriate collection type in the database.

### Common characteristics of collection types

All three forms of collection types oblige to certain characteristics under all situations. Let us check out some of the common properties of collection types:

- Persistent collection types can be passed as a formal argument to database stored subprograms. Local collection types and non-persistent collection types can be used for local subprograms only.
- Collection types can be used as a RETURN type of a function.
- Due to the object-oriented behavior of persistent collection types – nested tables and varrays – the PL/SQL variables must be initialized by either of the following ways:
  - Use the default collection constructor during declaration or in the executable section
  - Assign a NOT NULL collection to the uninitialized collection variable
  - Fetch data from the database to assign to the uninitialized collection variable
- A collection element can always be referenced as [Collection][index].[Attribute].
- Common collection related exceptions are as follows:
  - COLLECTION\_IS\_NULL: This exception is raised when the collection is NULL
  - NO\_DATA\_FOUND: This exception is raised when the element corresponding to a subscript does not exist
  - SUBSCRIPT\_BEYOND\_COUNT: This exception is raised when the index exceeds the number of elements in the collection.
  - SUBSCRIPT\_OUTSIDE\_LIMIT: This exception is raised when the index is not a legal value
  - VALUE\_ERROR: This exception is raised when an element is attempted for access without index

The following diagram branches the different places where collections can mark their presence:



## Nested table versus associative arrays

The following table compares the nested table and associative arrays in terms of size, sparse, ordering, and storage:

Factor	Nested table	Associative array
Maximum size	Dynamic	Dynamic
Sparsity	May exist	Exists
Storage	Out-of-line storage	Non-persistent temporary memory storage
Ordering	No retention of index ordering	Retains index order

Nested tables are preferred over associative arrays when the data has to be physically stored in the database. Also, array operations are much more convenient and smoother in nested tables as compared to associative arrays.

Associative arrays are used to temporarily hold the data for lookup or caching purposes.

## Nested table versus varrays

Nested tables and varrays resemble each other up to a greater extent. Both store their structures and data persistently in the database as collection types. The upper limit is notably a difference which makes varrays more disciplined and tidy. Varrays are always dense and maintain their subscript order:

Factor	Nested table	Varray
Maximum size	Dynamic	Fixed
Sparsity	May exist	Dense
Storage	Out-of-line storage	In Line storage (up to 4K)
Ordering	No retention of index ordering	Retains index order

Varrays are used in scenarios when the element count is fixed and sequential access of elements is expected. For example, Address of employees is fixed to three lines and must be accessed sequentially to maintain its credibility. Nested tables provide untidy access to all elements where a user can delete or insert elements simultaneously.

## PL/SQL collection methods

Oracle provides a set of methods which can be used in conjunction with collections in PL/SQL blocks. These methods access a collection type variable and perform relevant activities such as extension, trimming, and deleting collection elements. Besides these activities, few methods also provide information about the collection such as `COUNT` and `EXISTS`. These utilities are known as **collection methods** and they are not a built-in subprogram, because they can be used exclusively in conjunction with collections.

The common syntax for all the collection methods is as follows:

```
[COLLECTION] .METHOD (PARAMETERS)
```

## EXISTS

The `EXISTS` function checks the existence of an element in a collection. The general syntax of this function is `EXISTS (<index>)`. It takes the subscript as an input argument and searches it in the collection. If the element corresponding to the index is found, it returns `TRUE` or else, returns `FALSE`. It is the only method which doesn't raise any exception during its application with an uninitialized collection.

The following PL/SQL block declares a local nested table collection and its two variables. While one array is uninitialized, the other one is initialized with sample data. We will check the existence of the first element in both arrays:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT on to display the output*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
/*Declare a local nested table collection*/
  TYPE coll_method_demo_t IS TABLE OF NUMBER;
/*Declare collection type variables*/
  L_ARRAY1 coll_method_demo_t;
  L_ARRAY2 coll_method_demo_t := coll_method_demo_t (45,87,57);
BEGIN
/*Check if first cell exists in the array 1*/
  IF L_ARRAY1.EXISTS(1) THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Element 1 found in Array 1');
  ELSE
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Element 1 NOT found in Array 1');
  END IF;

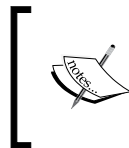
/*Check if first cell exists in the array 2*/
  IF L_ARRAY2.EXISTS(1) THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Element 1 found in Array 2');
  ELSE
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Element 1 NOT found in Array 2');
  END IF;
END;
/

Element 1 NOT found in Array 1
Element 1 found in Array 2

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

## COUNT

As the name suggests, the COUNT function counts the number of elements in an initialized collection. The COUNT method raises the COLLECTION\_IS\_NULL exception for uninitialized collections.



The COUNT function returns zero when:

A nested table or varray collection is initialized with an empty collection

An associative array doesn't have any elements

It can be operated upon all three types of collections.

The following PL/SQL block declares a local nested table collection and its two variables. We will check the element count in both the collection variables:

```

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT on to display the output*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
/*Declare the local collection type*/
    TYPE coll_method_demo_t IS TABLE OF NUMBER;
/*Declare the collection variables and initialize them with test
data*/
    l_loc_var coll_method_demo_t := coll_method_demo_t (10,20,30);
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The array size is '||l_loc_var.count);
END;
/

The array size is 3

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

```

## LIMIT

The **LIMIT** function returns the maximum number of elements that can be accommodated by a **VARRAY** collection type variable. This method can be used with **VARRAY** collection types only. The **LIMIT** method raises the **COLLECTION\_IS\_NULL** exception for uninitialized collections.



For associative arrays and nested tables, the **LIMIT** method returns **NULL**.

The following PL/SQL block declares a local varray type and a variable of its type. The varray type variable has been initialized with test data. Observe the difference between the **COUNT** and **LIMIT** methods:

```

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT on to display the output*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
/*Declare local varray and its variable*/
    TYPE coll_method_demo_v IS VARRAY(10) OF NUMBER;
    L_ARRAY1 coll_method_demo_v := coll_method_demo_v (10,20,30);

```

```
BEGIN
/*Display the current count*/
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The varray has '||L_ARRAY1.COUNT||'
elements');
/*Display the maximum limit*/
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The varray can hold '||L_ARRAY1.LIMIT||'
elements');
END;
/

The varray has 3 elements
The varray can hold 10 elements

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

## FIRST and LAST

The `FIRST` and `LAST` functions return the first and last subscripts of a collection. For an empty collection, these methods return `NULL` value. These methods can be used with all three types of collections. The `FIRST` and `LAST` methods raise exception `COLLECTION_IS_NULL` for uninitialized collections.

The following PL/SQL block demonstrates the use of the `FIRST` and `LAST` methods with an initialized collection:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT on to display the output*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
/*Display a local nested table collection*/
  TYPE coll_method_demo_t IS TABLE OF NUMBER;
  L_ARRAY coll_method_demo_t := coll_method_demo_t (10,20,30);
BEGIN
/*Display the first and last elements*/
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('First element of the array: '|| L_ARRAY (L_
ARRAY.FIRST));
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Last element of the array: '|| L_ARRAY (L_
ARRAY.LAST));
END;
/

Starting Index of the array: 10
Last Index of the array: 30

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

## PRIOR and NEXT

The `PRIOR` and `NEXT` functions take an input index and return its previous and next index from the given collection. If the `PRIOR` and `NEXT` functions are used with the first and last indexes respectively, the method returns `NULL`.

Both the methods can be used with all three types of collections. The `PRIOR` and `NEXT` methods raise exception `COLLECTION_IS_NULL` for uninitialized collections.

The following PL/SQL shows the usage of the `PRIOR` and `NEXT` methods with a PL/SQL type collection:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT on to display the output*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
/*Declare a local nested table collection*/
  TYPE coll_method_demo_t IS TABLE OF NUMBER;
  L_ARRAY coll_method_demo_t := coll_method_demo_t
(10,20,30,100,48,29,28);
BEGIN
/*Display the element which appears before 5th index*/
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Element before 5th element: '||L_ARRAY(L_
ARRAY.PRIOR(5)));

/*Display the element which appears after 6th index*/
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Element after 6th element: '||L_ARRAY(L_ARRAY.
NEXT(6)));
END;
/

Element before 5th element: 100
Element after 6th element: 28

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

## EXTEND

The `EXTEND` function is used to append elements to a collection variable of nested table or varray type. It cannot be used with associative arrays.

It is an overloaded function which can be used in three signatures as follows:

- `EXTEND`: It appends the collection with a `NULL` element
- `EXTEND(x)`: It appends the collection with `x` number of `NULL` elements

- `EXTEND(x,y)`: It appends the collection with `x` elements and with the value as that of the `y` element. If the `y` element doesn't exist, the system raises a `SUBSCRIPT_BEYOND_COUNT` exception.

The following PL/SQL block demonstrates the extension using all three signatures of the `EXTEND` method. The first extension appends the fourth `NULL` element to the array. The second extension appends the fifth and sixth `NULL` elements to the array. The third extension appends the seventh and eighth elements as 10 (value of the first element) to the array:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT on to display the output*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
/*Declare local nested table collection type*/
TYPE coll_method_demo_t IS TABLE OF NUMBER;
/*Declare collection type variable and initialize it*/
L_ARRAY coll_method_demo_t := coll_method_demo_t (10,20,30);
BEGIN
/*Extend the collection. It adds a NULL element to the collection*/
  L_ARRAY.EXTEND;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(L_ARRAY.LAST||' element of the array is  =
'|L_ARRAY(L_ARRAY.LAST));
/*Extend the collection. It adds two NULL elements at the end of the
collection*/
  L_ARRAY.EXTEND(2);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(L_ARRAY.LAST||' element of the array is  =
'|L_ARRAY(L_ARRAY.LAST));
/*Extend the collection. It adds two NULL elements at the end of the
collection and populates with the 1st element*/
  L_ARRAY.EXTEND(2,1);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(L_ARRAY.LAST||' element of the array is  =
'|L_ARRAY(L_ARRAY.LAST));
END;
/

L_ARRAY(4) element of the array is  =
L_ARRAY(6) element of the array is  =
L_ARRAY(8) element of the array is  = 10

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

The `EXTEND` method raises the `COLLECTION_IS_NULL` exception for uninitialized collections. If a varray is attempted for extension beyond its maximum allowed limit, Oracle raises a `SUBSCRIPT_BEYOND_LIMIT` exception.

## TRIM

The `TRIM` function is used to cut the elements from the specified collection, of the nested table or varray type. It cannot be used with associative array type collections. `TRIM` is an overloaded method, which can be used in the following two signatures:

- `TRIM`: It trims one element from the end of the collection
- `TRIM(n)`: It trims `n` elements from the end of the collection. If `n` exceeds the total count of elements in the collection, the system raises a `SUBSCRIPT_BEYOND_COUNT` exception. No action has been defined for `NULL` value of `n`.

The following PL/SQL block shows the operation of the `TRIM` method on an initialized PL/SQL table collection type:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT on to display the output*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE

/*Declare a local nested table collection type*/
  TYPE coll_method_demo_t IS TABLE OF NUMBER;

/*Declare a collection variable and initialize it*/
  L_ARRAY coll_method_demo_t := coll_method_demo_t (10,20,30,40,50);
BEGIN

/*Trim the last element of the collection*/
  L_ARRAY.TRIM;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('L_ARRAY('||L_ARRAY.LAST||') element is =
'|L_ARRAY(L_ARRAY.LAST));

/*Trim the last 2 elements of the collection*/
  L_ARRAY.TRIM(2);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('L_ARRAY('||L_ARRAY.LAST||') element is =
'|L_ARRAY(L_ARRAY.LAST));
END;

/

L_ARRAY(4) element is = 40
L_ARRAY(2) element is = 20

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

Like other methods, the `TRIM` method raises a `COLLECTION_IS_NULL` exception for uninitialized collections.

## DELETE

The `DELETE` function is used to delete elements from a given collection. The `DELETE` operation leaves the collection sparse. Any reference to the deleted index would raise a `NO_DATA_FOUND` exception. The `DELETE` method raises a `COLLECTION_IS_NULL` exception for uninitialized collections. It can be used with all three types of collections.

The overloaded method can be used in the following signatures:

- `DELETE`: It flushes out all the elements of a collection
- `DELETE (n)`: It deletes the *n*th index from the collection
- `DELETE (n, m)`: It performs range deletion, where all the elements within the range of the subscripts *n* and *m* are deleted.

The following PL/SQL block declares a `coll_method_demo_t` collection along with its collection variable. This program displays the first element of the collection before and after the deletion of the first subscript:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT on to display the output*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE

/*Declare the local nested table collection*/
TYPE coll_method_demo_t IS TABLE OF NUMBER;

/*Declare a collection variable and initialize it*/
L_ARRAY coll_method_demo_t := coll_method_demo_t (10,20,30,40,50);
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('First element before deletion is : L_
ARRAY(' || L_ARRAY.FIRST || ') = ' || L_ARRAY(L_ARRAY.FIRST));

/*Delete the 1st element from the collection*/
    L_ARRAY.DELETE(1);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('First element after deletion is : L_
ARRAY(' || L_ARRAY.FIRST || ') = ' || L_ARRAY(L_ARRAY.FIRST));
END;
/

First element before deletion is : L_ARRAY(1) = 10
First element after deletion is : L_ARRAY(2) = 20

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

Interestingly, Oracle doesn't allow the deletion of individual elements in a varray collection. Either all the elements of the varray have to be removed using the `VARRAY.DELETE` method or the elements can be trimmed from the end of the varray collection. This scenario is illustrated in the following program:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT on to display the output*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
/*Declare the local varray collection*/
TYPE coll_method_demo_t IS VARRAY (10) OF NUMBER;
/*Declare a collection variable and initialize it*/
L_ARRAY coll_method_demo_t := coll_method_demo_t (10,20,30,40,50);
BEGIN
/*Delete the second element of varray*/
  L_ARRAY.DELETE(2);
END;
/
  L_ARRAY.DELETE(2);
  *
```

ERROR at line 8:  
ORA-06550: line 8, column 3:  
PLS-00306: wrong number or types of arguments in call to 'DELETE'  
ORA-06550: line 8, column 3:  
PL/SQL: Statement ignored



It is recommended that the `TRIM` and `DELETE` methods must not be operated together or simultaneously on a collection. The `DELETE` method retains a placeholder for the deleted element, while the `TRIM` method destroys the element from the collection. Therefore, the operation sequence "`DELETE(last)` followed by `TRIM(1)`" would result in removal of a single element only.

## Manipulating collection elements

A database column of collection type physically stores the data in the database. As part of data operations, the collection type instance held by a column might get updated. There are two approaches to manipulate the collection instance in the database column:

- The complete instance can be replaced with a new one
- The target element can be solely modified

The first approach is feasible when the structure of the collection and the value of other attributes of the instance are known. But it may not be the case every time. However, it has been demonstrated in earlier sections. Therefore, Oracle recommends manipulating the collection element through a PL/SQL program.

Let us demonstrate the collection element update with the following illustration. Check out the latest data in the table TAB\_USE\_NT\_COL:

```
SQL> SELECT * FROM TAB_USE_NT_COL;
```

```
      ID NUM
-----
      1 NUM_NEST_T(10, 12, 3)
      2 NUM_NEST_T(10, 12, 13)
```

Now, we will try to add an element (23) at the end of the collection instance for ID 2.

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT on to display the output*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE

/*Declare a local variable of database collection type*/
  L_INS_NUM NUM_NEST_T;
BEGIN

/*Select the collection instance into the local variable for ID = 2*/
  SELECT num INTO L_INS_NUM
  FROM tab_use_nt_col WHERE id=2;

/*Extend the collection variable using EXTEND method. Include the new
element at the end of the collection*/
  L_INS_NUM.EXTEND;
  L_INS_NUM (L_INS_NUM.LAST) := 23;

/*Update the local collection instance in the table for ID = 2*/
  UPDATE tab_use_nt_col
  SET num = L_INS_NUM
  WHERE id=2;
END;
/
```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

Query the table to verify the manipulation in the collection:

```
SQL> SELECT * FROM TAB_USE_NT_COL;
```

```

      ID NUM
-----
      1 NUM_NEST_T(10, 12, 3)
      2 NUM_NEST_T(10, 12, 13, 23)

```

## Collection initialization

The persistent collection types—nested tables and varrays—follow features of object orientation. By virtue of their behavior, PL/SQL variables of collection types must be initialized. Initialization is a mandatory activity before the collection is accessed in the PL/SQL program. An uninitialized exception generates the ORA-06531: Reference to uninitialized collection exception.

Associative arrays are the local non-persistent arrays, so no initialization is required for them.

We will discuss some of the ways to initialize a collection type variable in a PL/SQL block:

- **Using the default collection constructor during declaration or in the executable section:**

Oracle provides a default constructor (with the same name as the collection type) with every type which can be used to provide attribute values. It can be used to initialize the collection variable either as NULL or with the sample default data:

```

/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
    TYPE coll_nt_t IS TABLE OF NUMBER;
/*A collection variable is initialized with sample data in default
constructor*/
    L_LOCAL_VAR1 coll_nt_t := coll_nt_t (10,20);
/*A collection variable is initialized with an empty collection*/
    L_LOCAL_VAR2 coll_nt_t := coll_nt_t();
BEGIN
    ...
    ...
END;
```

In the preceding PL/SQL block, the `L_LOCAL_VAR1` collection variable is initialized with a collection constructor having two rows. Note that this is a default initialization, not the actual assignment. The actual assignment of collection instances is done in the executable section only which overrides the initialized instance. The `L_LOCAL_VAR2` collection variable is initialized with an empty collection.

However, the initialization can be made in an executable section also before the collection variable is accessed for any operation:

```
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
    TYPE coll_nt_t IS TABLE OF NUMBER;
/*Uninitialized collection variables*/
    L_LOCAL_VAR1 coll_nt_t;
    L_LOCAL_VAR2 coll_nt_t;
BEGIN
/*Initialization in executable section*/
    L_LOCAL_VAR1:= coll_nt_t (10,20);
    L_LOCAL_VAR2:= coll_nt_t();
END;
```

- **Selecting a collection instance into the local collection variable:**

In the executable section, a `SELECT` statement can pull a collection instance (of the same collection type) into the local collection variable. This method is permissible only when the collection type exists as a database type and the PL/SQL collection variable is of that particular collection type.

In our earlier illustrations, `num_nest_t` is a nested table in the database. We will use the same type to declare a local collection variable:

```
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
    l_loc_num num_nest_t;
BEGIN
/*Fetching collection instance from database to initialize a
collection variable*/
    SELECT num INTO l_loc_num
    FROM tab_use_nt_col
    WHERE id = 1;
END;
/
```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

## Summary

This chapter covers one of the efficient features of PL/SQL programming – collections. We discussed and learned the three types of collections in PL/SQL. With the help of the illustrations, we understood their handling such as the selections and transactions in the database as well as in PL/SQL. We learned about the various collection methods and discovered the ways of collection initialization. The next chapter brings in a unique feature and one of the strengths of PL/SQL language – external procedures.

## Practice exercise

1. Which two statements are true about associative arrays?
  - a. Associative arrays can have negative subscripts.
  - b. Associative arrays are always dense collections.
  - c. Associative arrays don't need initialization in a PL/SQL block.
  - d. The upper limit of associative arrays can be dynamically modified.
2. Which of the following statements is true about nested tables?
  - a. Nested tables are stored in a segment different from that of the parent table.
  - b. Nested table columns can have string subscripts
  - c. Nested tables can grow dynamically up to any extent.
  - d. A database column of the nested table collection type can be separately queried by its storage name.
3. Only varrays can have sequential numbers as subscripts.
  - a. True
  - b. False

4. Which of the following associative array declarations is/are correct?

```
DECLARE
TYPE T1 IS TABLE OF NUMBER INDEX BY BOOLEAN;
TYPE T2 IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(10) INDEX BY NUMBER;
TYPE T3 IS TABLE OF DATE INDEX BY SIGNTYPE;
TYPE T4 IS TABLE OF EMPLOYEES%ROWTYPE INDEX BY POSITIVE;
BEGIN
...
...
END;
```

- a. T1
- b. T2
- c. T3
- d. T4

5. Which of the following statements is/are true about varrays?

- a. The limit of varray elements can be modified during runtime using the ALTER TABLE statement.
- b. A Varray element can be deleted using the DELETE method.
- c. For an empty collection of a varray type, the value of LAST is equal to COUNT.
- d. Varrays can exist as sparse collections.

6. What will be the output of the following PL/SQL block?

```
DECLARE
    TYPE T IS TABLE OF NUMBER;
    L_NUM T := T(1,2);
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(L_NUM(1));
    L_NUM := T(10,20);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(L_NUM(1));
END;
```

- a. 1 and 1.
- b. 1 and 10.
- c. Oracle raises a COLLECTION\_IS\_NULL exception at line 5.
- d. 10 and 10.

7. The EMPLOYEES table stores the details of 14 employees. Identify the solution of the error in the following PL/SQL program:

```

DECLARE
    TYPE EMP_VARRAY_T IS VARRAY (10) OF EMPLOYEES%ROWTYPE;
    L_EMP EMP_VARRAY_T := EMP_VARRAY_T();
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(L_EMP.COUNT);
    SELECT *
    BULK COLLECT INTO L_EMP
    FROM EMPLOYEES;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(L_EMP.COUNT);
END;
/
0
DECLARE
*
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-22165: given index [11] must be in the range of [1] to [10]
ORA-06512: at line 6

```

- a. The varray size must be increased to 14 or a higher limit.
  - b. The varray variable must be initialized with a define employee data.
  - c. Data for only 10 employees must be selected into a varray variable.
  - d. The varray definition is wrong; a record type cannot be made as an element type of a varray collection.
8. Which of the following statements are wrong about the collection methods?
- a. EXISTS raises NO\_DATA\_FOUND exception if the element for the input subscript does not exist.
  - b. DELETE can be used with varrays.
  - c. LIMIT returns the current limit of the nested table collection.
  - d. TRIM removes an element of the collection from the end.



# 4

## Using Advanced Interface Methods

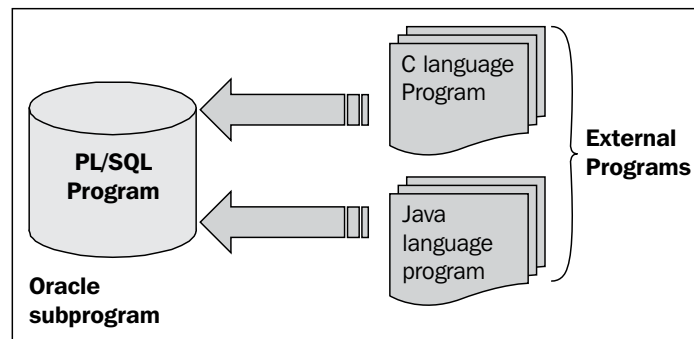
External routines enable the communication between the Oracle database and the programs, which are written in non-database language such as C, C++, Java, or COBOL. The fact is not new that Oracle has emerged as a compatible database manager for application clients. But from the programming and development perspective, every language has its own special features and utilities. Before `UTL_MAIL` and `UTL_SMTP` came to the rescue, there was no option for sending an e-mail in Oracle. In some situations, a special logic written on the client side is required to be used on the server side too. The idea is to resolve the situations where a non-PL/SQL program has to be invoked from PL/SQL. To confront such situations, Oracle introduced external routines in its eighth release (Oracle 8) to bridge the gap between the database and non-PL/SQL programs. This chapter covers the external procedures and its implementation in the following topics:

- Understanding external routines
  - Architecture
  - Benefits
- Executing external C programs from PL/SQL
- Executing external Java programs from PL/SQL

## Understanding external routines

An external routine allows a program, which is written in a language other than PL/SQL, to be used in PL/SQL. For instance, a program logic written in Java can be invoked and used from PL/SQL. The program in non-PL/SQL language is referred to as external programs. The favorable situations for the use of external routines may arise in an application development environment which follows strict regimentation of the client, API and database layers. On broader terms, an external program has to be stored as a shared library on the server followed by its publishing through call specification. Once the external routine is published, it is ready to be used in PL/SQL.

Within the scope of this chapter, we will discuss the invocation of external programs written in C and Java language from PL/SQL.



## Architecture of external routines

Before we get into the core methodology followed for external routines, we will discuss some of the crucial components of Oracle architectural support to the external routines. These components are

- **The extproc process:** The extproc process is the protagonist of the complete architecture. It is a session specific process which receives the request from the Oracle Net listener and kicks off the external program execution. It loads the DLL, takes care of the arguments, receives the required output from the execution of an external program and sends it back through the listener. It is an essential element of the architecture.

- **Shared library of external routine:** An external program has to be executed as a shared library to be accessed in Oracle PL/SQL. Microsoft operating systems identify shared libraries in the form of .dll files (Dynamic Linked Library) while the shared files of operating systems such as Unix, Linux, or Solaris, have .so extension. The external program language must be the one whose shared library can be invoked from C. It can be C, C++, FORTRAN, COBOL, or Visual Basic. The shared libraries may include multiple programs which can be invoked as external programs. Thus, loading a smaller number of libraries can provide access to multiple external programs.

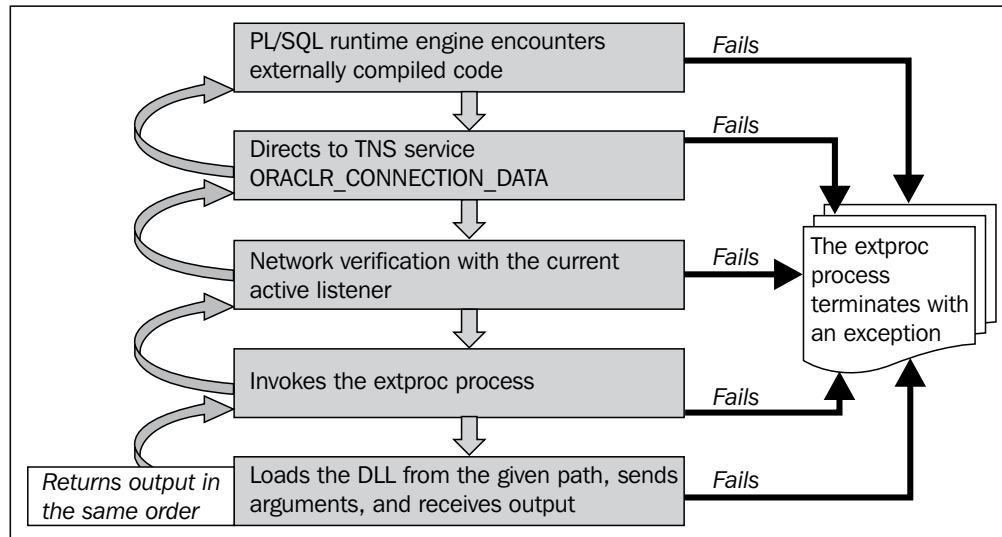
Dynamic linked shared libraries are easy to create and maintain than their statically linked component. A shared library can be shared across the database sessions; thus reducing memory consumption in multisession environments. Spawned by the Oracle listener, the `extproc` process automatically loads the shared libraries. The external program contained within the shared library is executed and the result is returned back to the `extproc` process and flows down to the PL/SQL procedure call.

There are two relevant terms—**callout** and **callback**—associated with the external routine handling.

A call is referred to as callout when the PL/SQL procedure invokes an external procedure. On the other hand, if the external procedure invokes a statement, which drives the database engine, the call is known as callback. The statement can be a SQL or a PL/SQL construct, which hits the Oracle server to perform an operation.

The architecture of an external program processing depends a lot on the two components mentioned earlier. Whenever the PL/SQL runtime engine receives the request for the execution of an externally implemented procedure, it directs the call to the TNS service `ORACLR_CONNECTION_DATA`. Note that the `ORACLR_CONNECTION_DATA` is the default TNS service for external routine connections, which is configured by the Oracle Net Configuration assistant during database software installation to establish the interaction between the database server and external routine connections. **Oracle Common Language Runtime (ORACLR)** is a host which coordinates the external process to invoke a non-PL/SQL program in PL/SQL. However, the default net configurations can be modified manually to ensure enhanced security standards. From the TNS service address, it picks up the key and verifies the network with the current running active listener. Now, using the specific connection details, it invokes the `extproc` process. As stated earlier, the `extproc` process uses the specified DLL path to load the shared library. In addition, the process handles the input arguments (if any) and transfers the output from the execution of the external program through the listener.

The preceding description has been pictorially demonstrated in the following flowchart:



The processing of the extproc process is carried out separately from the other database process. Even if the extproc process crashes, it does not produce any side effects on the kernel memory.

In the course of the steps shown in the preceding flowchart, failure of any of them results in the termination of the extproc process. Some of the commonly encountered exceptions during the cycle are as follows:

- **ORA-28576: Lost RPC connection to external procedure agent:** The exception is raised when the Oracle listener is not able to establish the connection with the extproc process.
- **ORA-28595: Extproc agent: Invalid DLL path:** The exception is raised when the extproc process is not able to locate the compatible DLL in the specified location. The probable causes of the exception may be:
  - **Wrong DLL path specification:** DLL has been generated at a different OS location and manually moved to the target location. It is always recommended to move the program file at the target location and natively generate the DLL at the particular location.

- The Oracle Net configuration expects a dedicated listener for the `extproc` process. If the mapping of the `TNSNAMES.ora` and `LISTENER.ora` file works perfectly, this step can be overruled. However, it has been a recommended step to maintain concurrencies among the listeners.
- **ORA-06521: PL/SQL Error mapping function:** The external program has been wrongly mapped in the PL/SQL call specification. The reason can be parameter data type mismatch or an incorrect program name reference in the call specification.

## Oracle Net Configuration

As we discussed in the previous section, the `extproc` process acts as the communication channel between PL/SQL and the external program. It is started by the Oracle listener and interacts with the external program through the DLL and transmits back the program output through the same passage.

The `extproc` process activation is governed by the Oracle Net services where the `TNSNAMES.ora` and `LISTENER.ora` files are configured by default by the Oracle Net Configuration assistant during database software installation. However, the net configuration can be modified to enforce and ensure high-level security. We will now discuss the requirements of Oracle Net services configuration and management. Both the ORA files can be found under `$ORACLE_HOME\network\admin\` directory. One must keep a hawk eye on the security scheme to modify the files on the server as we will be working with the ORA files in this section.

## TNSNAMES.ora

The `TNSNAMES.ora` file provides the database connection aliases or service names to connect to the appropriate listener and, hence, the target database. It takes the requests from the client which is trying to establish the connection with the database.



The term **TNS** stands for **Transparent Network Substrate**.

In the default `TNSNAMES.ora` file, which is configured during the database software installation, a `ORACLR_CONNECTION_DATA` service is created to support external services. This service is responsible for activating the `extproc` process. It verifies the network connection using the `ADDRESS` parameter value, followed by a connection establishment using the `CONNECT_DATA` parameter value. The service entry in the `TNSNAMES.ora` file looks as follows:

```
ORACLR_CONNECTION_DATA =
  (DESCRIPTION =
    (ADDRESS_LIST =
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = IPC) (KEY = EXTPROC1521))
    )
    (CONNECT_DATA =
      (SID = CLRExtProc)
      (PRESENTATION = RO)
    )
  )
```

In the preceding entry, the parameters `KEY` and `SID` have variable values while other values are fixed. The values must be concurrent with those of the corresponding listener entries.

The `ADDRESS` parameter value checks for the listeners which can receive `IPC` (Internet Procedure Calls) requests through the `KEY` value `EXTPROC1521`. The `PROTOCOL` parameter has a fixed value `IPC` to establish the interaction between the server and the external service requests. Once the `ADDRESS` setup matches the current active listener, it uses the `CONNECT_DATA` parameter value to shoot the `extproc` process. The `PRESENTATION` parameter is a performance booster parameter which directs the database server to concentrate and respond to the client through a protocol – **Remote-Ops (RO)**.



Note the `CONNECT_DATA` parameter value. It searches for the listener with the same `SID CLRExtProc`. The `CLRExtProc` is a listener mode which allows `PL/SQL` programs to access external programs.

## LISTENER.ora

All the database connection requests pass through the listeners. A listener entry in the file contains the network configuration parameters of the server.

A typical `LISTENER.ora` file which is set up during the database installation contains two entries namely `LISTENER` and `SID_LIST_LISTENER`.

The `LISTENER` entry gives the protocol and key details. From the entry details, we can notice that it can listen to an IPC request, as well as TCP requests:

```
LISTENER =
  (DESCRIPTION_LIST =
    (DESCRIPTION =
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = IPC) (KEY = EXTPROC1521))
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP) (HOST = localhost) (PORT = 1521))
    )
  )
```

The `SID_LIST_LISTENER` contains the SID details of the external services which can interact with the `LISTENER` listener. It contains the `SID_NAME`, `ORACLE_HOME`, and `PROGRAM` parameters. The `SID_NAME` parameter must be in sync with the SID value under the `CONNECT_DATA` parameter of the `ORACLE_CONNECTION_DATA` service in `TNSNAMES.ora`. It identifies the `extproc` process. The `PROGRAM` parameter value is used for the program identification for `extproc`.

The `SID_LIST_LISTENER` entry in the `LISTENER.ora` is as follows:

```
SID_LIST_LISTENER =
  (SID_LIST =
    (SID_DESC =
      (SID_NAME = CLRExtProc)
      (ORACLE_HOME = <<Oracle Home>>)
      (PROGRAM = EXTPROC1521)
      (ENVS= "EXTPROC_DLLS=[ONLY | ANY | (DLL path)]")
    )
  )
```

The location of the shared library file has to be registered in the preceding `SID_LIST_LISTENER` entry. From Oracle 9.2 and higher, Oracle has imposed restriction on the default location of shared libraries. By default, it can interpret the shared libraries located in the `$ORACLE_HOME\bin\` directory. If the shared library is located at another location on the server, it has to be specified in the `EXTPROC_DLLS` environment parameter. The permissible value for the environment are `ONLY`, `ANY`, or the actual DLL path.

- `ONLY: [DLL: DLL . . .]` gives the authority to specify multiple DLL files in varied locations. The DLL file paths are separated by a colon. It offers high-level security as it limits the libraries to be interpreted by `extproc`.
- `[DLL : DLL . . .]`: One can specify only the DLL path without using the `ONLY` parameter. In such case, all the DLLs under the `$ORACLE_HOME\bin\` directory are accessible by the `extproc` process.
- `ANY` allows any DLL on the server to be loaded by the `extproc` process.

Some of the sample ENVS parameter looks as follows:

- ENVS= "EXTPROC\_DLLS=ANY" (allows any DLL on the server to be loaded by the extproc process)
- ENVS= "EXTPROC\_DLLS=ONLY:C:\MyDLL\Hello.dll"
- ENVS= "EXTPROC\_DLLS=ONLY:C:\MyDLL\Hello.dll:C:\TestDLL\Math.dll"

These specifications allow only the DLLs from the specified locations to be loaded by the extproc process.

In secured production environments, it is advisable to include a separate listener for the extproc process to segregate the handling of the IPC and TCP requests through the SID\_LIST entries. In that case, follow the following steps:

1. Take the backup of the existing LISTENER.ora and TNSNAMES.ora files.
2. Modify the existing LISTENER and SID\_LIST\_LISTENER entries for TCP requests and SID\_NAME, respectively.
3. Add the EXTPROC\_LISTENER and SID\_LIST\_EXTPROC\_LISTENER entries in the LISTENER.ora file. An example of externally registered LISTENER entries is shown as follows:

```
LISTENER =
  (DESCRIPTION_LIST =
    (DESCRIPTION =
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP) (HOST = <<host>>) (PORT = 1521))
    )
  )

SID_LIST_LISTENER =
  (SID_LIST =
    (SID_DESC =
      (SID_NAME = <<Database Name>>)
      (ORACLE_HOME = <<Oracle Home>>)
    )
  )

EXTPROC_LISTENER =
  (DESCRIPTION_LIST =
    (DESCRIPTION =
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = IPC) (KEY = <<extproc key>>))
    )
  )
```

```

)

SID_LIST_EXTPROC_LISTENER =
(SID_LIST =
(SID_DESC =
(SID_NAME = CLRExtProc)
(ORACLE_HOME = <<Oracle Home>>)
(PROGRAM = EXTPROC1521)
(ENVS= "EXTPROC_DLLS=[ONLY | ANY | (DLL path)]")
)
)

```

4. The original service has to be rebuilt to inherit the changes and a new service has to be created for the new listener.

With the default settings, Oracle 11g configuration has not been reported for issues in the extproc process establishment, activation, or working.

## Oracle Net Configuration verification

The Oracle Net Configuration can be verified by testing the ORACLR\_CONNECTION\_DATA TNS service in the command-line window. The `tnsping` command verifies only the existence of the service name. Neither does it verify the listener configuration for the external routines nor does it ensure the listener compatibility on the server. The probable responses of the `tnsping` command are as follows:

- If the result of the `tnsping` command is OK, it means the configuration has been perfectly done
- If the result of the `tnsping` command is an exception TNS-03505: Failed to resolve name, the service name doesn't exist in the TNSNAMES.ora file
- If the result of the `tnsping` command is an exception TNS-12541: TNS:no listener, the service is not currently available on the server

The demonstrations for these cases are as follows:

- **Case 1:** The service exists in the TNSNAMES.ora file:

```
C:\>tnsping ORACLR_CONNECTION_DATA
```

```
TNS Ping Utility for 32-bit Windows: Version 11.2.0.1.0 -
Production on 05-JAN-2012 14:46:24
```

```
Copyright (c) 1997, 2010, Oracle. All rights reserved.
```

```
Used parameter files:
```

```
C:\ORACLE\product\11.2.0\dbhome_1\network\admin\sqlnet.ora
```

```
Used TNSNAMES adapter to resolve the alias
Attempting to contact (DESCRIPTION = (ADDRESS_LIST = (ADDRESS
= (PROTOCOL = IPC)(KEY = EXTPROC1521))) (CONNECT_DATA = (SID =
CLRExtProc)
(PRESENTATION = RO))
OK (20 msec)
```

- **Case 2:** The service does not exist in the TNSNAMES.ora file:

```
C:\>tnsping MYEXT_CONNECTION_DATA
```

```
TNS Ping Utility for 32-bit Windows: Version 11.2.0.1.0 -
Production on 05-JAN-2012 14:51:38
```

```
Copyright (c) 1997, 2010, Oracle. All rights reserved.
```

```
Used parameter files:
```

```
C:\app\INSAGUP\product\11.2.0\dbhome_1\network\admin\sqlnet.ora
```

```
TNS-03505: Failed to resolve name
```

## Benefits of external procedures

The benefits of external procedures are:

- **Integration of strengths:** The realization of capabilities of a programming language in another one demonstrates flexibility of one and adaptation of the other. Also a program adding up to the features of another language integrates strengths and capabilities of the programming.
- **Reusability of client logic:** As the server-side external program is sharable among all the database users, the logic could be reused by the connecting user.
- **Logical extensibility:** External routines maintain the margin to extend its logic. From the application's perspective, external procedures also avoid logical redundancy.
- **Enhanced performance:** Moving the execution of calculative programs and methods from client to server side improve their execution by reducing the network round trips.

## Executing external C programs from PL/SQL

Oracle extends the architectural support to the external programs in C, C++, Java, or the one whose library is interpretable by C. In the external procedure architecture, we saw the processing steps of an external program. Now, we will list the development steps to run a C program from PL/SQL:

1. Write a C program and compile it.
2. Copy the C program's code file in the `$ORACLE_HOME\bin\` directory. Generate the DLL using a hardware supported native C compiler.



For demonstration purposes, we will use the MingW (Minimal GNU for Windows) compiler to compile C program and generate the DLLs. It can be downloaded from [http://www.mingw.org/wiki/Getting\\_Started](http://www.mingw.org/wiki/Getting_Started).

3. Configure the Oracle Net service.
4. Create a PL/SQL library object for the DLL.
5. Create a call specification in PL/SQL to publish the external program. Specify the external language used in the program (here, it is C), the PL/SQL library name, the method in the external program and the parameters mapped as per the mapping matrix between PL/SQL and external programming language.
6. Execute the call specification to observe the execution of the external program.

We will illustrate these steps in detail in the case study mentioned in the following section.

## Executing C program through external procedure—development steps

In a secure application environment, the client team has segregated the string utility methods from the data layer to the client layer. We will take up a small program, which converts the case of a string input to uppercase, as an example. Check it out!

1. Creating and compiling the C program:

The following C program (CaseConvert.c) takes two numeric inputs and returns their sum:

```
#include<stdio.h>
#include<conio.h>
char ChangeCase(char *caps)
{
    int index = 0;
    while (caps[index])
    {
        caps[index] = toupper(caps[index]);
        index++;
    }
    return caps;
    getch();
}
```

The file can be placed at any writable OS location on the server. In production environments, the privilege scheme to create or save a file on the operation system is decisive over the security factor on the server. For demonstration purposes, we will place the compiled file in the C:\Labs\C\ directory.

Note that compilation is necessary to check the validity of the program.

```
C:\Labs\C> gcc -c CaseConvert.c
```

As a result, the CaseConvert.o compiled module got generated at the same location.

2. Generating the shared library for the C program:

The shared library (DLL) can be generated using the gcc command:

```
C:\Labs\C>gcc -shared CaseConvert.c -o CaseConvert.dll
```

Verify the generation of DLL at the same path. Moreover, the DLL path must be included in the ENVS="EXTPROC\_DLLS=" parameter in the LISTENER.ora file.

3. Configuring the Oracle Net service:

Recheck the Oracle Net services configuration based on the recommendations made in the last section. The configuration checklist is as follows:

- The KEY value under the ADDRESS parameter of the ORACLR\_CONNECTION\_DATA TNS service is same as the KEY value under ADDRESS parameter of the active listener. Make note of the case sensitiveness.

- The SID value under `CONNECT_DATA` parameter of TNS service `ORACLR_CONNECTION_DATA` matches the `SID_NAME` of the `SID_LIST_LISTENER`.
  - The DLL path has been mapped correctly for the `ENVS` parameter in the listener file.
  - The `ORACLR_CONNECTION_DATA` pings successfully.
4. Creating a PL/SQL library object for the DLL:

This is the first programming step in the Oracle database. The PL/SQL library object acts as a database alias for the shared library location to be accessed by the PL/SQL subprograms. It is created either by a DBA or a user who enjoys the `CREATE LIBRARY` or the `CREATE ANY LIBRARY` privilege. If a DBA creates the library, he must grant the `EXECUTE` privilege on the library to the user.

A PL/SQL library can be created as per the following syntax:

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE ] LIBRARY [Library name] [IS | AS]
[DLL path with the name in single quotes]
AGENT [Agent DB link, if any];
/
```

In the syntax, the DLL path is the OS location of the DLL on the server. Note that the Oracle server never verifies the existence of the file specified in the library syntax.

In our case, we will follow the first method. The DBA or a user with DBA privileges grants the `CREATE LIBRARY` privilege to the `ORADEV` user and the `ORADEV` user creates the library

```
/*Connect as SYSDBA*/
CONN sys/system AS SYSDBA
Connected.

/*Grant the CREATE LIBRARY privilege*/
GRANT CREATE LIBRARY TO ORADEV;
Grant succeeded.
```

Now, the `ORADEV` user can create the library in its own schema as follows:

```
/*Connect as ORADEV*/
CONN ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Connect the library specifying the complete DLL path*/
CREATE OR REPLACE LIBRARY EXTDLL
AS 'C:\Labs\C\CaseConvert.dll'
/
Library created.
```

5. Publishing the external program through call specification:

A PL/SQL wrapper method is created to invoke the external procedure from the database. It uses the library object to refer to the DLL which contains the C program as a linked module. It contains the external program method name which must be exactly the same as the one used in the external program. It maps the parameter based on inter compatibility between PL/SQL and the external program's base language. For example, `char` will be mapped as `VARCHAR2`, `int` will be mapped as `NUMBER`, and so on.

This PL/SQL wrapper method is known as **call specification** and the process is known as **publishing** the external program. The call specification serves the following objectives:

- Intercommunicates between the database engine and the external base language (C or Java)
- Dispatches the C-language program
- Parameter mode mappings and data type conversions
- Memory management
- Database purity state

The call specification can be a standalone procedure, function, or a package, too. It is the structure of the external C program which categorizes the call specification object type. The general structure of a call specification of function type looks as follows:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION [Name] [Parameters]
RETURN [data type]
[IS | AS]
[call specification]
END;
```

Similarly, call specification when linked to a procedures looks as follows:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE [Name] [Parameters]
[IS | AS]
[Call specification]
END;
```

The call specification unites the details of the database library, external programming language, and the external program. It links the complete call to a subprogram such as procedure, function, package, or object type body.

The call specification follows the following syntax:

```
AS LANGUAGE C
[LIBRARY (library name)]
[NAME (external program name)]
[WITH CONTEXT]
[AGENT IN (formal parameters)]
[PARAMETERS (parameter list)];
```

The components in the preceding syntax are listed as follows:

- LANGUAGE C states the base language of the external program. In this case, it is C.
- LIBRARY is the database library object.
- NAME is the external program name. Note that it is case sensitive; it must be the same as specified in the program code.
- The [WITH CONTEXT] clause directs PL/SQL to pass the "context pointer" to the external program being invoked. Such parameters are of the OCIEExtProcContext type.
- [AGENT IN (formal parameters)] is a list of formal parameters to the call specification.
- [PARAMETERS (parameter list)] represents the parameter mapping between PL/SQL and C by position.

For our illustration, the call specification can be coded as follows:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION F_CASE_CONVERT (P_STRING VARCHAR2)
/*Specify the RETURN type in compatibility with the external
program*/
RETURN VARCHAR2

/*Specify the external program's base language*/
AS LANGUAGE C

/*Specify the PL/SQL library object name*/
LIBRARY EXTDLL

/*Specify the external function name*/
NAME "ChangeCase"

/*Specify the parameters*/
PARAMETERS (P_STRING STRING);

Function created.
```

Let us verify the working of the preceding call specification with a PL/SQL anonymous block, shown as follows:

```
SQL> DECLARE
      /*Declare a local parameter. Initialize with the test
data*/
      l_str VARCHAR2(1000) := 'oracle pl/sql developer';
BEGIN
      /*Invoke the function and display the result*/
      l_str := F_CASE_CONVERT (l_str);
      DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(l_str);
END;
/
ORACLE PL/SQL DEVELOPER
```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

## Executing Java programs from PL/SQL

Similar to C programs, Oracle can communicate with Java classes as external procedures, too. Unlike C external programs, the Java classes and Java source files are stored as schema objects in the database. But the caveat here is that the Java classes must be operational in the logical side and not on the user interface. It implies that the Java programs which offer generic utility or data processing operations are the best candidates to be loaded into Oracle.

Invoking Java code from PL/SQL not only reduces the network overhead from the client but it also helps in the distribution of logic across the layers and reduces code redundancy. Under this section, we will discuss how to load a Java class into the database and access it through the call specification.

Unlike C external procedures, calling Java program from PL/SQL is convenient. There is no dependency on the shared library, too. But yes, there is something known as **Libunit** which is like the Java shared library. Upon invocation of a Java external procedure, these shared libraries are loaded automatically by the `extproc` process and executed.

Java is natively a part of the Oracle database. It doesn't use the `extproc` agent process for setting up the communication between Java and Oracle. Instead, the channel known as **Java Virtual Machine (JVM)** resides within the Oracle itself. The Java program execution process is carried out in the dedicated portion of SGA known as **Java pool**. For this reason, C programs might be better performers than Java programs when invoked from PL/SQL.

## Calling a Java class method from PL/SQL

A Java class must be made available in the database for its access from a PL/SQL program. Oracle provides a command-line utility tool known as `loadjava` to perform the program loading activity. Internally, the `loadjava` utility creates some schema objects such as tables and an index. Then the class files and source files are loaded in PL/SQL as Java objects. The syntax of the utility is as follows:

```
loadjava {-user | -u} username/password[@database] [option ...]  
filename [filename ]...
```

Whenever a Java class is loaded into the database through the command link utility, JVM acknowledges the request. It loads the Java binaries and resources from the OS location to the database library units. This operation is similar to the generation of shared library units in an external C program access through PL/SQL.

The help regarding the `loadjava` command-line tool can be found using `loadjava -h | -help`.

## Uploading a Java class into the database—development steps

The following steps can be followed to upload a Java class or source file to the database:

1. Prepare a Java class file and place it at an OS location on the server.
2. Load the Java source or class file from the command-line editor with the help of the `loadjava` utility.
3. Create a call specification or a PL/SQL subprogram to publish the Java program.
4. Verify the execution of the Java class' method.

## The loadjava utility—an illustration

As discussed earlier, a Java class file can be uploaded into the database using the `loadjava` utility of the command DOS shell. Once the Java program is successfully loaded into the database, its metadata is record in the `USER_OBJECTS` and `USER_SOURCE` data dictionary views. Lets us take up a case study to illustrate the whole process.

This is just a case similar to our last case study with C, we have a computational-based utility method to add and multiply two numbers. You need a similar utility in PL/SQL. Instead of rewriting the code again, you decide to use the same program in PL/SQL through external procedures. This is demonstrated in the following steps:

1. Writing a Java class for demo purpose:

A mathematical utility class has been created to include two methods to add and multiply two given numbers:

```
public class Compute {
    public static int Sum (int x, int y) {
        return x+y;
    }
    public static int Cross (int x, int y) {
        return x*y;
    }
}
```

2. Loading the Java class into the database:

Save the program in the C:\Labs\Java\ directory as ComputeSumCross.java. Now, run the loadjava command-line tool to load the program into the database.

```
C:\> CD C:\Labs\Java
```

```
C:\Labs\Java>loadjava -user ORADEV/ORADEV ComputeSumCross.java
```

The task completion is not confirmed by any message. Once the Java class is loaded into the database, it is stored as a Java stored object in the schema. A Java object can be queried from the USER\_OBJECTS data dictionary view and Java class source code can be viewed from the USER\_SOURCE data dictionary view. Let us check the details in the USER\_OBJECTS view:

```
/*Query the Java objects in the schema*/
```

```
SELECT object_name, object_type
FROM USER_OBJECTS
WHERE TRUNC(created)=TRUNC(SYSDATE)
order by timestamp;
```

OBJECT_NAME	OBJECT_TYPE
-----	-----
SYS_LOB0000080347C00002\$\$	LOB
CREATE\$JAVA\$LOB\$TABLE	TABLE
SYS_C0014189	INDEX
JAVA\$OPTIONS	TABLE
Compute	JAVA SOURCE
Compute	JAVA CLASS
6 rows selected.	

In the preceding query result, note the objects which were created by the `loadjava` utility; a `CREATE$JAVA$LOB$TABLE` table with an LOB column. And, finally the class name, `Compute`, appeared as `JAVA SOURCE` and `JAVA CLASS` in the query output.

### 3. Publishing the Java class method:

Similar to the C external program publishing, a call specification is required to map the Java class to a PL/SQL subprogram along with the parameter mapping. A call specification can be an Oracle stored procedure or a function. The syntax for the call specification looks as follows:

```
{IS | AS} LANGUAGE JAVA
    NAME 'method_fullname (java_type_fullname [, java_type_
fullname]...)
    [return java_type_fullname]';
```

Note that it is different from the one we discussed in the *Executing external C programs from PL/SQL* section.

The following `F_COMPUTE` function contains a call specification which maps the `Sum` method of the `Compute` class to the PL/SQL function:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION F_COMPUTE_SUM (P_X NUMBER, P_Y NUMBER)
/*Specify the return type as per the method in the java class*/
RETURN NUMBER
AS
/*Specify the external programs base language*/
LANGUAGE JAVA
NAME 'Compute.Sum(int,int) return int';
/
```

Function created.

### 4. Verifying the Java class execution method:

As the `F_COMPUTE_SUM` function maintains the purity level of the database, it can be called from the `SELECT` statement as follows:

```
SQL> SELECT f_compute_sum(200,482) FROM DUAL;
```

```
F_COMPUTE_SUM(200,482)
-----
                        682
```

## Creating packages for Java class methods

If a Java class code has several member methods, creating multiple standalone subprograms would not be a scalable approach. It would be better to follow the Java approach and create a package to encapsulate all Java class methods under one schema object.

The Java class which we used in the illustration, in the *The loadjava utility – an illustration* section, contains two methods `Sum` and `Cross`. But we published only one of them for demonstration purposes. Let us see how we can publish both the methods as one package. The Java class has been already loaded into the database.

The package specification prototypes for the Java class methods as follows:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE PKG_ComputeJavaClass
AUTHID DEFINER
AS
/*Declare the functions with similar structure as that of Java
class methods*/
    FUNCTION F_GET_SUM(P_X NUMBER, P_Y NUMBER) RETURN NUMBER;
    FUNCTION F_GET_CROSS (P_X NUMBER, P_Y NUMBER) RETURN NUMBER;
END;
/
```

Package created.

The package body defines the call specification for both the functions:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY PKG_ComputeJavaClass
IS
/*Attach the call specification for each function*/
    FUNCTION F_GET_SUM(P_X NUMBER, P_Y NUMBER) RETURN NUMBER IS
    LANGUAGE JAVA
    NAME 'Compute.Sum(int,int) return int';

    FUNCTION F_GET_CROSS (P_X NUMBER, P_Y NUMBER) RETURN NUMBER IS
    LANGUAGE JAVA
    NAME 'Compute.Cross(int,int) return int';
END;
/
```

Package body created.

Now, we have mapped all the Java class methods with the packaged functions through call specifications:

```
SQL> SELECT PKG_ComputeJavaClass.F_GET_SUM(293,182) FROM DUAL;
```

```
PKG_COMPUTEJAVACLASS.F_GET_SUM(293,182)
-----
                                475
```

```
SQL> SELECT PKG_ComputeJavaClass.F_GET_CROSS(23,43) FROM DUAL;
```

```
PKG_COMPUTEJAVACLASS.F_GET_CROSS(23,43)
-----
                                989
```

## Summary

This chapter has covered the philosophy, architecture, and support for external routines in PL/SQL. We learned the external routine concepts from basic to advanced level. We demonstrated the execution of C and Java programs as external procedures.

In the next chapter, we will learn a fresh application data security feature known as Virtual Private Database

## Practice exercise

1. Which of the following statements are true about the `extproc` process?
  - a. It loads the shared library of the external C program.
  - b. It is started by the PL/SQL runtime engine.
  - c. It is a session specific process.
  - d. The `extproc` process compiles the C program while loading.
2. Oracle 7 introduced the external procedure feature for sending mails from PL/SQL.
  - a. True
  - b. False

3. Determine the effect of dropping the library object which has been used in a PL/SQL call specification and in use:
  - a. The PL/SQL wrapper method gets invalidated
  - b. The shared library gets corrupted
  - c. The PL/SQL wrapper method still works fine as it has been already executed once
  - d. The PL/SQL wrapper method gives no output
4. Examine the following TNSNAMES.ora and LISTENER.ora entries and choose the correct option:

```
//TNSNAMES.ora
ORACL_R_CONNECTION_DATA =
  (DESCRIPTION =
    (ADDRESS_LIST =
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = IPC) (KEY = EXTPROC1521))
    )
    (CONNECT_DATA =
      (SID = extproc)
      (PRESENTATION = RO)
    )
  )

//LISTENER.ora
SID_LIST_LISTENER =
(SID_LIST =
  (SID_DESC =
    (SID_NAME = CLRExtProc)
    (ORACLE_HOME = C:\ORCL\11.2.0\dbhome_1)
    (PROGRAM = EXTPROC1521)
    (ENVS= "EXTPROC_DLLS=ONLY:C:\ORCL\product\11.2.0\dbhome_1\BIN\
Ext.dll")
  )
)

LISTENER =
  (DESCRIPTION_LIST =
    (DESCRIPTION =
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = IPC) (KEY = EXTPROC1521))
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP) (HOST = localhost) (PORT = 1521))
    )
  )
```

- a. The KEY value under ADDRESS of ORACLR\_CONNECTION\_DATA must be extproc.
  - b. The SID value under CONNECT\_DATA of ORACLR\_CONNECTION\_DATA must be CLRExtProc.
  - c. The KEY value under ADDRESS of LISTENER must be extproc.
  - d. The PROGRAM value of SID\_LIST\_LISTENER must be extproc.
5. Which of the following are true statements about the loadjava utility?
- a. It generates a shared library for Java programs.
  - b. It loads the Java program into the Oracle database.
  - c. The loadjava utility requires a Java compiler to run.
  - d. It loads the Java class file into the Java pool in the database instance.
6. External programs in Java don't require the shared libraries to be executed from PL/SQL.
- a. True
  - b. False
7. An external C program looks like this:

```
#include<stdio.h>
#include<conio.h>
int GetDouble(int num)
{
    return num * 2;
    getch();
}
```

The PL/SQL wrapper method looks like this:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION F_GET_DOUBLE (P_NUM NUMBER)
RETURN NUMBER
AS EXTERNAL LIBRARY NUMLIB
NAME "GETDOUBLE"
LANGUAGE C
PARAMETERS (P_NUM INT);
```

When you call the PL/SQL wrapper, you get the following exception:

```
DECLARE
*
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-06521: PL/SQL: Error mapping function
ORA-06522: Unable to load symbol from DLL
ORA-06512: at "ORADEV.F_GET_DOUBLE", line 1
ORA-06512: at line 4
```

Identify the cause for this exception:

- a. The NUMLIB library has been incorrectly placed.
- b. The C program has syntactical errors.
- c. The C program name in the call specification (PL/SQL wrapper) should be GetDouble instead of GETDOUBLE.
- d. The extproc process is not working properly

# 5

## Implementing VPD with Fine Grained Access Control

Data security has always been a questionable criterion for a solution which promises data repository. "How much is my data secure or vulnerable?" We make a lot of effort on the concepts of data storage, fetch optimization, and its integrity to ensure and evolve a concrete database philosophy. But the last question hovers every time the database design and security paradigms are planned. The Oracle database offers multiple solutions in variety of areas to enforce best security strategies on the data. Some of the focused areas have been securing user accounts, their authentication, their roles and privileges, data encryption, data audit, and data vaulting.

In this chapter, we will discuss one of the data security features which builds up a protocol or mechanism to impose latent dynamic querying criteria on the data selection. The security feature comes up with the name **Fine Grained Access Control** which is also known as **Virtual Private Database**. The processing of the security scheme in the database appears transparent to the logged in user. Moreover, since the security scheme is implemented at the database level, it cannot be skipped too. Thus, the security scheme is becoming a stringent security channel.

The feature was introduced in Oracle9i. Later in Oracle 10g, the security feature was extended to include Fine Grained Access Control features. As a result, data restriction could be imposed upon the selection of columns too.

We will understand the concept and walk through its implementation under the following topics:

- Fine Grained Access Control
  - Overview
  - Virtual Private Database – the alias
  - How FGAC or VPD works

- VPD implementation – outline and components
  - Application context
  - Policy function definition and implementation of Row Level Security
  - Associating a policy using the `DBMS_RLS` package
- VPD implementation – demonstrations
  - Assignment 1: Implement VPD using a simple security policy
  - Assignment 2: Implement VPD using the application context
- VPD policy metadata
- Policy utilities – refresh and drop

## Fine Grained Access Control

In this section, we will discuss about Fine Grained Access Control.

### Overview

The authoritative rules (as referred to above) enable the security at a table row or a column. This feature limits the access to the secured data only for the users who are authorized for it. The feature is known as **Fine Grained Access Control (FGAC)**. The FGAC security feature imposes row-level and column-level security so that only privileged users can see them. The feature creates a private window of a table for the currently logged in user who can view only the data for which he is authorized.

Prior to FGAC, it used to be a cumbersome activity to decide the data authorization barriers and segregate the schema or the data, as required. Maintenance of multiple users and their multiple schemas used to be a DBA's overhead.

In a multiuser database environment, users are required to access the information authorized for them. One way could be that admin holds the schema and all database objects and creates synonyms for the user who intends to use it. But note that it is an object level security not the data security. FGAC provides the solution to such scenarios by creating virtual data groups of a table. By nature of its implementation, FGAC is also known as **Virtual Private Database (VPD)**.

## Virtual Private Database—the alias

Suppose, an organization "ABC" wants its employees to view only those employees' details who are currently working in his/her department. He/she cannot query the employee working in all other departments. One option is to create the employee table (of course, with the same structure) separately for each department. The second option is to always be reminded of appending a `WHERE` clause in the queries and DML statements. The third option is to automate the second option through FGAC. It is through the implementation of FGAC where the `DEPTNO` (department number) column of `employees` table can be secured as a policy. The security on the department number column demonstrates the **Row Level Security (RLS)** and the portion of the data authorized and available for a user in a particular department appears apparently as a virtual database. Thus, the name Virtual Private Database, evolves as an alias for FGAC.

Since the VPD protocol restructures the query and affects the query access path, it is important to learn the performance implications of the policy execution. It is true that the VPD implementation affects the query performance by two factors. The first factor is the processing of the security protocol implemented under VPD. The second factor is the predicate clause resulting from the VPD protocol processing. The predicate clause, along with the index(indexes) on the columns, participates in the query optimization. It affects the net query cost and, hence, the query performance. The predicate also appears in the explain plan of the query. We will see the performance implications resulting from the predicate in the demonstrations discussed later in this chapter.

Now, let us understand the working of Row Level Security in VPD.

## How FGAC or VPD works?

As per our explanation on VPD, the `DEPTNO` column in the `employees` table is secured for RLS. This implies that an employee working in department number 10 can view the employees who are working in department number 10. The users in the respective departments can view only the marked data portions from the following employees' data:

```
SELECT * FROM employees;
```

EMPNO	ENAME	DEPTNO
7782	CLARK	10
7839	KING	10
7934	MILLER	10
7566	JONES	20
7902	FORD	20
7876	ADAMS	20

7369	SMITH	20
7788	SCOTT	20
7521	<b>WARD</b>	30
7844	<b>TURNER</b>	30
7499	<b>ALLEN</b>	30
7900	<b>JAMES</b>	30
7698	<b>BLAKE</b>	30
7654	<b>MARTIN</b>	30

14 rows selected.

FGAC works with policies. A policy can be created for the DEPTNO column in the employees table. This policy would be associated to the employees table and assigned to the users. As soon as the user logs in to the database, the policy gets activated. The activated policy automatically appends a WHERE clause predicate to the SELECT statement on the employees table.

Programmatically, if a VPD protected user from department number 20 fires the following query:

```
SELECT empno, ename, sal
FROM employees;
```

Oracle would implicitly modify this query by appending a WHERE clause to it and it would look like the following:

```
SELECT empno, ename, sal
FROM employees
WHERE deptno = 20
```

The SELECT query, as shown in the previous code snippet, is the one processed by the optimizer. Similar implementation works for the department numbers 10 and 30. This implicit appending of a clause creates a virtual partition of the table for the users. They have access to the restricted data in the tables. This strategy prevents manipulative actions in the data from unauthorized users.



VPD is unsupported for DDL commands such as TRUNCATE or ALTER.

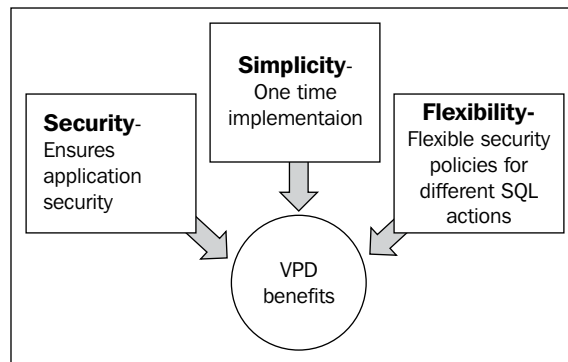


## Salient features of VPD

Some important features of VPD are as follows:

- A VPD security policy is a rule definition which is required to enforce a privacy rule appropriate for the current logged in database user.

- Security policy can be associated to the columns in a table or a view. They can be applied to `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `INDEX`, and `DELETE` statements.
- Multiple security policies can be enforced on a table or view.
- Policy groups can be created to group multiple policies within them. In this way, multiple policies can be associated to a table or a view in a single attempt.
- VPD objectives are limited only up to data access operations (query and DMLs). It does not operate on **data definitions (DDL)**:



## VPD implementation—outline and components

The development steps of VPD implementation is demonstrated in the flowchart as follows:

- **Creation of an application context:** The application context is a collection of variables whose values, once set, remain the same and are available in the same session. The variables are known as attributes. Each session accessing the same application context attributes can have different values.
- **Create the context key and value:** Create the trusted program to set the context using `DBMS_SESSION.SET_CONTEXT`. During the creation of the context, Oracle does not verify the existence of the program being specified. It relies on the trust of the user to create and use a program with the same name to set the context attributes. Therefore, the program is referred to as trusted.

- **Set the context key explicitly or through a Logon trigger:** The context must be set for the whole session or just before each call. System-level Logon triggers are also capable of scheduling the context key assignment as soon as the user logs in. Performance implication could be a considerable factor to choose the appropriate method of context setting. By method of their processing, the Logon trigger method would yield a better performance since the trigger would be executed once at the database logon only. On the other hand, an explicit assignment would be executed once for each query.
- **Create Policy function:** The policy function prepares the predicate using the context key and value.
- **Associate the policy function to a database table or view:** A policy can be associated using the DBMS\_RLS package.

Before moving on to the VPD implementation in the database, let us discuss the crucial components of VPD and their desirable features.

## Application context

Oracle VPD policies use the application context to set the `WHERE` clause predicate for a query. Application contexts are session variables which hold relevant information about a database user and the session. It is recognized as a pair of Name-Value pair under a Namespace (also called label). Namespaces such as `USERENV` are predefined in the Oracle Server which retain session information such as `DB_NAME`, `SESSION_USER`, and so on.

The value of an attribute under an application context can be retrieved through an Oracle built-in function `SYS_CONTEXT`. The `SYS_CONTEXT` function accepts the context name and its attribute as the input parameter. The function does not validate the input context name. The function does not raise any exception if the context or attribute specified as the argument does not exist. However, for the `USERENV` context, the function raises an exception called `ORA-02003: invalid USERENV parameter`, if a non-existing attribute is specified.

User defined application contexts can be created by the DBA or the user who enjoys the `CREATE ANY CONTEXT` privilege, using a trusted application package. An application context can be created as local (session specific) or global.

A local context is accessible only within the session of its creator. The attributes along with their values, are stored in **User Global Area (UGA)**. The attributes of a local context can be queried along with their values under `SESSION_CONTEXT` view.

A global context can be accessed by all the user sessions. The attributes along with their values, are stored in **System Global Area (SGA)**. The attributes of a global context can be queried along with their value in the GLOBAL\_CONTEXT view.

Syntactically, creation of a user defined context looks like the following:

```
CREATE CONTEXT [CONTEXT NAME] USING [TRUSTED PACKAGE] [CONTEXT TYPE]
```

In the above syntax, the context type can be `ACCESSED GLOBALLY` or `ACCESSED LOCALLY`. By default, a context is created as local that is, `ACCESSED LOCALLY`. For demonstrations, we will work with local contexts.

For example, the context `DB_NAME` displays the current database name in use as shown in the following code snippet:

```
SQL> SELECT SYS_CONTEXT('USERENV','DB_NAME') FROM DUAL;
SYS_CONTEXT('USERENV','DB_NAME')
-----
Orcl
```



A user is not allowed to update the USERENV application context attribute values except for a few attributes. The modifiable attributes are CLIENT\_INFO, CLIENT\_IDENTIFIER, CURRENT\_SCHEMA\_INFO, and NLS\_DATE\_FORMAT.

Now, let us examine how to create a user defined context.

A DBA or a user with the `CREATE ANY CONTEXT` privilege creates the context using a trusted package of a trusted user. The trusted package is a database package or a stored procedure which controls the values of context attributes. The value of the attributes in a context can be modified only through this trusted package. At the time of creation of the context, the package is not verified by the server. The context creation is thus, based on the trust that the package exists and is valid.

Creating a context is just creating the namespace. It still does not have any context keys and their values. The trusted package provides the context variables key and its value:

```
/*Connect as DBA*/
SQL> CONN sys/system AS SYSDBA
Connected.

/*Grant CREATE ANY CONTEXT, DROP ANY CONTEXT privileges to ORADEV*/
SQL> GRANT CREATE ANY CONTEXT, DROP ANY CONTEXT TO ORADEV
/
```

```
Grant succeeded.

/*Connect as ORADEV*/
SQL> CONN ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Create the context*/
SQL> CREATE CONTEXT demo_context USING P_SET_CONTEXT
/

Context created.
```

Once the context is created, let us create the trusted package. For demonstration, we will create a parameterized standalone procedure to create a context key and assign a value. Observe the use of DBMS\_SESSION.SET\_CONTEXT to set the values for context attributes:

```
/*Connect as ORADEV*/
SQL> conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Create the stored procedure to set the context attribute*/
SQL> CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE P_SET_CONTEXT (P_VAL VARCHAR2)
IS
BEGIN
/*Set the context using DBMS_SESSION*/
DBMS_SESSION.SET_CONTEXT(NAMESPACE => 'DEMO_CONTEXT',
ATTRIBUTE => 'COUNTRY',
VALUE      => P_VAL);
END;
/

Procedure created.
```

Now, the context and its controlling program have been created. Query the context key COUNTRY using the SYS\_CONTEXT built-in. Ensure that the context and attribute exist in this case:

```
/*Select the value of COUNTRY attribute under DEMO_CONTEXT namespace*/
SQL> SELECT SYS_CONTEXT('DEMO_CONTEXT','COUNTRY') FROM DUAL;
SYS_CONTEXT('DEMO_CONTEXT','COUNTRY')
-----
```

It is a NULL value! It is because the context key COUNTRY is still unassigned. Set the value of the context key COUNTRY by executing the context control program:

```
/*Assign value to the COUNTRY attribute through the context
controlling program*/
SQL> EXEC P_SET_CONTEXT('INDIA');

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

Now, re-query the context key COUNTRY and check its value:

```
/*Select the value of COUNTRY attribute under DEMO_CONTEXT namespace*/
SQL> SELECT SYS_CONTEXT('DEMO_CONTEXT','COUNTRY') FROM DUAL;
SYS_CONTEXT('DEMO_CONTEXT','COUNTRY')
-----
INDIA
```

Verify the context key by modifying its value and querying it again:

```
/*Modify the value of COUNTRY attribute through the context
controlling program*/
SQL> EXEC P_SET_CONTEXT('FINLAND');
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
/*Select the value of COUNTRY attribute under DEMO_CONTEXT namespace*/
SQL> SELECT SYS_CONTEXT('DEMO_CONTEXT','COUNTRY') FROM DUAL;
SYS_CONTEXT('DEMO_CONTEXT','COUNTRY')
-----
FINLAND
```

## Policy function definition and implementation of row-level security

The policy function creates the WHERE clause predicate using the application context. It is an Oracle stored standalone function which must be created by the user to be protected under VPD. The policy function should possess and follow the following features:

- The function should accept the schema name and database object name as input parameters. Though these parameters are not used in the function body, the parameters are supplied by the DBMS\_RLS package while creating the policy. The sequence of parameters must be the schema name followed by the object name.
- The function must return the predicate in a string format that is, the condition to be used in the WHERE clause of a query. For example, [Column name] = [Value]. Note that the condition must be a valid one.
- A policy can be STATIC, DYNAMIC, SHARED\_STATIC, CONTEXT\_SENSITIVE, or SHARED\_CONTEXT\_SENSITIVE. The type of policy determines the frequency of modification of predicate clause. It is set while associating a policy to the table, view, or synonym as policy\_type parameter in DBMS\_RLS.ADD\_POLICY. If nothing is specified for the policy type, its behavior is dynamic.
- A dynamic policy uses context information for predicate clause and is evaluated on every execution of the query.

- The function should not perform selection or transaction on the table to be protected under VPD.

The following table shows the differentiation amongst the policy types:

Policy type	Comments	When to Use
STATIC	Oracle caches the predicate clause output in SGA which is used for all further executions of the query.	A static policy is used when the same predicate information can be applied to every query. It yields better performance since it is executed only once.
DYNAMIC (Default)	It is a default policy type. Policy function is executed for each and every query on the VPD protected table.	Dynamic policies are preferred when the different policy function and, hence, a different predicate is required for the SQL statements. Since a dynamic policy type is executed automatically for each execution, it decreases the query performance.
SHARED_STATIC	It is similar to <code>STATIC</code> but a policy can be shared among multiple schema objects (tables).	A shared static policy is preferred over static policies when multiple tables share the same policy function. It is mostly suited for data warehousing environments.
CONTEXT_SENSITIVE	Policy function is executed during SQL parsing, only if the local context has been changed. If the local context remains unchanged, the policy function is not executed.	A context sensitive policy is chosen when the predicate information for a table varies with the user or group.
SHARED_CONTEXT_SENSITIVE	Oracle caches the predicate in UGA during SQL parsing and a policy can be shared among multiple objects.	A shared context sensitive policy is used where the predicate information which varies by user, can be shared by multiple database objects (tables).

## Associating a policy using the DBMS\_RLS package

The policy operations can be done using the DBMS\_RLS package. The DBMS\_RLS package is used to add, drop, or refresh a security policy, enable or disable a policy, and handle the policy groups. It is owned by the SYS user who must grant the EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS\_RLS package to a user who is intended to implement a VPD policy within it.

The DBMS\_RLS package subprograms are shown in the following table:

Subprogram	Description
ADD_POLICY	Adds a fine-grained access control policy to a table, view, or synonym
DROP_POLICY	Drops a fine-grained access control policy from a table, view, or synonym
REFRESH_POLICY	Causes all the cached statements associated with the policy to be reparsed
ENABLE_POLICY	Enables or disables a Fine Grained Access Control policy
CREATE_POLICY_GROUP	Creates a policy group
ADD_GROUPED_POLICY	Adds a policy associated with a policy group
ADD_POLICY_CONTEXT	Adds the context for the active application
DELETE_POLICY_GROUP	Deletes a policy group
DROP_GROUPED_POLICY	Drops a policy associated with a policy group
DROP_POLICY_CONTEXT	Drops a driving context from the object so that it will have one less driving context
ENABLE_GROUPED_POLICY	Enables or disables a row-level group security policy
DISABLE_GROUPED_POLICY	Disables a row-level group security policy
REFRESH_GROUPED_POLICY	Re-parses the SQL statements associated with a refreshed policy

## VPD implementation—demonstrations

We will demonstrate two ways of VPD implementation. While the first method is simple association of a policy, the second demonstration uses an application context for the same. Before we get into the actual implementation, let us have a look at the employees table. Notice the explain plan for the `SELECT` query:

```
/*Select the EMPLOYEES table data*/
SQL> SELECT *
      FROM employees
    /
```

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	MGR	HIREDATE	SAL	COMM	DEPTNO
7369	SMITH	CLERK	7902	17-DEC-80	9200		20
7499	ALLEN	SALESMAN	7698	20-FEB-81	2000	300	30
7521	WARD	SALESMAN	7698	22-FEB-81	1650	500	30
7566	JONES	MANAGER	7839	02-APR-81	3375		20
7654	MARTIN	SALESMAN	7698	28-SEP-81	1650	1400	30
7698	BLAKE	MANAGER	7839	01-MAY-81	3250		30
7782	CLARK	MANAGER	7839	09-JUN-81	2850		10
7788	SCOTT	ANALYST	7566	19-APR-87	3400		20
7839	KING	PRESIDENT		17-NOV-81	5400		10
7844	TURNER	SALESMAN	7698	08-SEP-81	1900	0	30
7876	ADAMS	CLERK	7788	23-MAY-87	1500		20
EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	MGR	HIREDATE	SAL	COMM	DEPTNO
7900	JAMES	CLERK	7698	03-DEC-81	1350		30
7902	FORD	ANALYST	7566	03-DEC-81	3400		20
7934	MILLER	CLERK	7782	23-JAN-82	1700		10

14 rows selected.

```
/*Generate the explain plan for the above query*/
SQL> EXPLAIN PLAN FOR SELECT * FROM employees;

Explained.

/*Display the explain plan*/
SQL>SELECT * FROM TABLE(dbms_xplan.display);
```

PLAN_TABLE_OUTPUT							
Plan hash value: 1445457117							
Id	Operation	Name	Rows	Bytes	Cost (<CPU>)	Time	
0	SELECT STATEMENT		14	532	3	<0>	00:00:01
1	TABLE ACCESS FULL	EMPLOYEES	14	532	3	<0>	00:00:01

8 rows selected.

We will take up the same scenario of employees where the employee often viewed other department's salaries and argued with their management. As a result, management took a heavy step by limiting the access in its host department only.

## Assignment 1—implementing VPD using simple security policy

In our first assignment, we will see the implementation of a dynamic VPD policy on a user owned database table `employees`. The policy filters out only those employees who are working in department number 20:

1. Creating the policy function:

Note the input parameters for the schema and object in the following policy function definition:

```
/*Connect to the user*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Create the policy function*/
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION f_get_dept_predicate(p_schema
varchar2,p_obj
varchar2)
RETURN VARCHAR2 IS
BEGIN
    /*Specify the predicate clause*/
    RETURN 'deptno = 20';
END;
/

Function created.
```

## 2. Creating the security policy:

The security policy can be created using the `DBMS_RLS.ADD_POLICY` subprogram. Notice that the table owner, the policy function owner, and policy owner is the same that is, `ORADEV`. However, they may be different from each other. This implies that a user A can implement a VPD policy P on a table T owned by a second user B1, using a policy function owned by a user B2. In such a case, the policy metadata is maintained by the user which owns the VPD protected table. Refer to the following code snippet:

```
/*Connect as ORADEV*/
SQL> conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Add a policy*/
BEGIN
  DBMS_RLS.ADD_POLICY
  (
    object_schema => 'ORADEV',
    /*The object (table) owner*/
    object_name => 'EMPLOYEES',
    /*The object name to be protected*/
    policy_name => 'EMP_DEPT_20',
    /*The security policy name*/
    function_schema => 'ORADEV',
    /*The security policy function owner*/
    policy_function => 'F_GET_DEPT_PREDICATE',
    /*The policy function name*/
    statement_types => 'select, insert, update, delete'
    /*The statement types which are to be protected under the VPD
security
  scheme*/
  );
END;
/

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

## 3. Verifying the policy and observing the explain plan:

Query the employees table to verify the effect of the security policy:

```
SELECT * FROM employees;
```

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	MGR	HIREDATE	SAL	COMM	DEPTNO
7369	SMITH	CLERK	7902	17-DEC-80	9200		20
7566	JONES	MANAGER	7839	02-APR-81	3375		20
7788	SCOTT	ANALYST	7566	19-APR-87	3400		20
7876	ADAMS	CLERK	7788	23-MAY-87	1500		20
7902	FORD	ANALYST	7566	03-DEC-81	3400		20

Generate the explain plan for the SELECT query on the VPD protected table and compare it with the one we generated before the implementation:

```
/*Generate the explain plan for the above SELECT query*/
SQL>EXPLAIN PLAN FOR SELECT * FROM employees;
Explained.

/*Display the explain plan*/
SQL>SELECT * FROM TABLE(dbms_xplan.display);
```

Refer to the following screenshot for the output of the previous code snippet:

```

PLAN_TABLE_OUTPUT
-----
Plan hash value: 1218979235

   Id  Operation                   Name                  Rows  Bytes  Cost (%CPU)  Time     Timed_
   --  -
    0   SELECT STATEMENT                  5     190        2   (0)   00:00:01
    1   TABLE ACCESS BY INDEX ROWID EMPLOYEES          5     190        2   (0)   00:00:01
   * 2   INDEX RANGE SCAN                IDX_EMPLOYEE_DEPTNO  5         1        1   (0)   00:00:01

Predicate Information (identified by operation id):
PLAN_TABLE_OUTPUT
-----
      2 - access("DEPTNO"=20)

14 rows selected.

```

In the explain plan generated above, notice the Predicate Information section. It lists the policy function predicate output. It is because `employees` is a VPD protected table and the associated policy returns the predicate to filter the data. In addition, Oracle also uses the index on the predicate during query optimization. Notice the usage of index `IDX_EMPLOYEES_DEPTNO` in the above explain plan.

The Assignment 1 demonstration shows creation of a simple policy function and association with the `employees` table. The drawback of the policy function is its hardcoded predicate. Similar policy functions have to be created for every user from each department. It again sounds like a hectic job!

## Assignment 2—implementing VPD using an application context

For the second demo, the last demonstration can be reset by dropping the security policy enforced upon the `employees` table. A policy can be dropped using `DBMS_RLS.DROP_POLICY`, as shown in the following code snippet:

```
/*Drop the policy EMP_DEPT_20*/
SQL>EXECUTE dbms_rls.drop_policy('ORADEV','EMPLOYEES','EMP_DEPT_20');

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

Let us now move further to create an application context and use it in the VPD policy implementation:

1. Creating an application context:

An application context can be created by the DBA or a DBA can grant the CREATE ANY CONTEXT privilege to the user. We will go by the second one:

```
/*Connect as DBA*/
SQL> conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.

/*Grant the privilege*/
SQL> grant create any context to oradev;

Grant succeeded.

/*Connect as ORADEV*/
SQL> conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Create the context*/
SQL> CREATE CONTEXT EMPLOYEES USING PKG_CONTEXTS;

Context created.
```

2. Creating a trusted application package to set the context key value:

A package can be created to assign the context key value for the newly created contexts:

```
/*Connect as ORADEV*/
SQL> conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Create the package for setting the context*/
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE PKG_CONTEXTS IS
    /*Prototype the procedure to set the context*/
    PROCEDURE P_SET_CONTEXT (P_DEPT NUMBER);
END;

Package created.

/*Create the Package body*/
CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY PKG_CONTEXTS IS

    /*Define the procedure to set the context*/
    PROCEDURE P_SET_CONTEXT (P_DEPT NUMBER)
    IS
    BEGIN
        /*Use DBMS_SESSION to set the content of DEPARTMENT
        namespace*/
```

```

        dbms_session.set_context(namespace => 'EMPLOYEES',
                                attribute => 'DEPARTMENT' ,
                                value      => P_DEPT);
    END;
END;
/

Package body created.

```

### 3. Creating a Logon trigger to set the context for the user and restrict the data access:

A Logon is a system-level trigger which fires as soon as the user logs into the database. It will set the context for the entire user session:

```

/*Connect as SYSDBA*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.

/*Create LOGON trigger to set the context as soon as a user logs
in*/
CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER ON_LOGON

/*Specify the event of trigger firing as AFTER LOGON*/
AFTER LOGON ON DATABASE
BEGIN
    /*Invoke the policy function from the ORADEV user */
    ORADEV.PKG_CONTEXTS.P_SET_CONTEXT(20);
END;
/

Trigger created.

```

The working of the above Logon trigger can be verified. Disconnect and reconnect the session as ORADEV. Select the user defined context using SYS\_CONTEXT built-in function for EMPLOYEES context:

```

/*Connect as ORADEV*/
SQL> conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.
SQL> SELECT SYS_CONTEXT('EMPLOYEES','DEPARTMENT') FROM DUAL;
SYS_CONTEXT('EMPLOYEES','DEPARTMENT')
-----
20

```

4. Creating the policy function to get the predicate:

The policy function can be created using the SYS\_CONTEXT function:

```
/*Connect as ORADEV*/
SQL> conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Create the policy function*/
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION f_get_dept_predicate(p_schema varchar2,
p_obj varchar2)
RETURN VARCHAR2 IS
BEGIN
    /*Return the predicate using SYS_CONTEXT*/
    RETURN 'deptno = SYS_CONTEXT(''EMPLOYEES'', ''DEPARTMENT'')';
END;
/

Function created.
```

5. Creating the security policy:

```
/*Connect as ORADEV*/
SQL> conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

BEGIN
DBMS_RLS.ADD_POLICY
(
    object_schema => 'ORADEV',
    object_name => 'EMPLOYEES',
    policy_name => 'EMP_DEPT_20',
    function_schema => 'ORADEV',
    policy_function => 'F_GET_DEPT_PREDICATE',
    statement_types => 'select, insert, update, delete'
);
END;
/

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

6. Verifying the working of VPD: Query the employees table to verify the working of the policy:

```
SELECT * FROM employees;
```

EMPNO	ENAME	JOB	MGR	HIREDATE	SAL	COMM	DEPTNO
7369	SMITH	CLERK	7902	17-DEC-80	9200		20
7566	JONES	MANAGER	7839	02-APR-81	3375		20
7788	SCOTT	ANALYST	7566	19-APR-87	3400		20
7876	ADAMS	CLERK	7788	23-MAY-87	1500		20
7902	FORD	ANALYST	7566	03-DEC-81	3400		20

## VPD policy metadata

The Oracle Server maintains the association information between the security policies and schema objects in data dictionary views. The data dictionaries available for this information is `USER_DEPENDENCIES`, `ALL_DEPENDENCIES`, and `DBA_DEPENDENCIES`. The structure of the dictionary view is as follows:

```
SQL> DESC USER_POLICIES
```

Name	Null?	Type
OBJECT_NAME	NOT NULL	VARCHAR2 (30)
POLICY_GROUP	NOT NULL	VARCHAR2 (30)
POLICY_NAME	NOT NULL	VARCHAR2 (30)
PF_OWNER	NOT NULL	VARCHAR2 (30)
PACKAGE		VARCHAR2 (30)
FUNCTION	NOT NULL	VARCHAR2 (30)
SEL		VARCHAR2 (3)
INS		VARCHAR2 (3)
UPD		VARCHAR2 (3)
DEL		VARCHAR2 (3)
IDX		VARCHAR2 (3)
CHK_OPTION		VARCHAR2 (3)
ENABLE		VARCHAR2 (3)
STATIC_POLICY		VARCHAR2 (3)
POLICY_TYPE		VARCHAR2 (24)
LONG_PREDICATE		VARCHAR2 (3)

The policy created above can be queried from the dictionary view as follows:

```
SQL> SELECT policy_name,
           Policy_type,
           Static_policy,
           function,
           pf_owner
FROM USER_POLICIES
/
```

POLICY_NAME	POLICY_TYPE	STA	FUNCTION	PF_OWNER
EMP_DEPT_20	DYNAMIC	NO	F_GET_DEPT_PREDICATE	ORADEV

In addition to the policy object information, the user defined contexts are also maintained in the dictionary view [ALL | DBA] \_CONTEXTS. The context EMPLOYEES created above for Assignment 2 can be queried as follows:

```
SQL> SELECT * FROM ALL_CONTEXT;
```

NAMESPACE	SCHEMA	PACKAGE
-----	-----	-----
EMPLOYEES	ORADEV	PKG_CONTEXTS

## Policy utilities—refresh and drop

Policy utility activities such as refreshing or dropping can be done through DBMS\_RLS package subprograms. Refreshing a policy pushes an enabled VPD protocol to inherit the latest changes done to the policy and its dependents. Policy refresh is required when the underlying referenced objects of the policy undergo changes. So as to invalidate its dependent objects operationally during the policy refresh process, all the cached statements associated with the policy are parsed again.

Notice that a disabled VPD policy cannot be refreshed.

The subprogram requires the policy owner, the table or view name, and the policy name as the input parameters:

```
SQL> EXEC DBMS_RLS.REFRESH_POLICY('ORADEV','EMPLOYEES','EMP_DEPT_20');
```

```
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

Dropping a policy lifts the data restriction and full data is visible to all the users. Like REFRESH\_POLICY, the dropping subprogram also requires the policy owner, the table or view name, and the policy name as input arguments:

```
SQL> EXEC DBMS_RLS.DROP_POLICY('ORADEV','EMPLOYEES','EMP_DEPT_20');
```

```
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

## Summary

In the chapter, we learned an efficient security concept called Fine Grained Access Control. We started with the concept understanding and its components. Within the prescribed scope of the chapter, we had a walk-through demonstration on the VPD implementation with and without using the application contexts. Since VPD has been emerging as one of the promising security features, we will recommend further reading from the following links to touch other areas too:

- **Oracle documentation:** [http://docs.oracle.com/cd/B28359\\_01/network.111/b28531/vpd.htm](http://docs.oracle.com/cd/B28359_01/network.111/b28531/vpd.htm)
- **OTN Network:** <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/database/security/index-088277.html>

In the next chapter, we will handle one of the major application storage bottlenecks that is, storage of large objects. We will understand various large objects' data types and their management.

## Practice exercise

1. Identify the correct statements about the working of Fine Grained Access Control:
  - a. A table can have only one security policy.
  - b. Different policies can be used to protect `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` statements on a table but not one.
  - c. The policy function returns the predicate information as `WHERE <Column> = <Value>`.
  - d. Once associated, the FGAC policy cannot be revoked from the table.
2. A security policy can be associated to group of objects by the DBA. State true or false.
  - a. True
  - b. False
3. Chose the correct statement about `DBMS_RLS`:
  - a. `DBMS_RLS` is used only for Row Level Security policies.
  - b. The package is owned by `SYS`.
  - c. It can create/drop/refresh policies and create/drop policy groups.
  - d. Using `DBMS_RLS` to set the policy degrades the application performance.

4. Identify the correct statements about the context of an application:
  - a. A user who holds the `CREATE CONTEXT` privilege can create a context.
  - b. It is owned by the user `SYS`.
  - c. A user can check context metadata in `USER_CONTEXTS`.
  - d. The trusted package associated with the context must exist before the context is created.
5. Arrange the sequence of VPD implementation using application contexts:
  - i. Creating policy function.
  - ii. Creating trusted package.
  - iii. Creating and setting application contexts.
  - iv. Associating a policy using `DBMS_RLS`.
  - a. iii, ii, i, iv
  - b. ii, iii, iv, i
  - c. iii, iv, i, ii
  - d. iv, i, ii, iii
6. All policies on different columns of the same table are collectively known as Policy groups.
  - a. True
  - b. False
7. Identify the correct statements about the Policy types.
  - a. A shared static policy is an extension to the static policies where multiple static policies can be shared among multiple users.
  - b. A shared static policy is an extension to the static policies where a single static policy can be shared among multiple objects.
  - c. `STATIC` is the default policy type.
  - d. `DYNAMIC` is the default policy type.

8. Pick the correct statement about the application contexts:
  - a. Only a DBA can create a custom application context and add attributes under it.
  - b. The DBA can modify all `USERENV` attributes.
  - c. The package used for the context creation may or may not exist in the schema.
  - d. Global contexts can be used by all the users on a server.
9. A policy of `CONTEXT_SENSITIVE` type executes the policy function once, every time the query is reparsed, if the local context has been changed.
  - a. True
  - b. False

10. Identify the cause of the following exception:

```
SQL>SELECT * FROM employees;
select * from employees
          *
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-28110: policy function or package ORADEV.F_JOB_POLICY
has error
```

- a. The policy function `F_JOB_POLICY` does not exist.
- b. The policy function `F_JOB_POLICY` has not been specified in `DBMS_RLS.ADD_POLICY` to add the policy on the `employees` table.
- c. The predicate returned by the policy function is not appropriate for this query.
- d. The VPD policy on the `employees` table is invalid and has errors.



# 6

## Working with Large Objects

The challenge to manage information in a database has never been an iced cake. Besides the fundamental support to data integrity, security, and optimal storage mechanisms, the support to varied natures of data was equally challenging. With the growing demands of application development, the nature of large and unstructured data has been transformed from character based to binary based information.

Prior to the introduction of LOB data types in Oracle 8 Release, the `LONG` and `LONG RAW` data types used to serve as the storage type for large data. Numerous limitations associated with `LONG` data types and the need of a stable storage mechanism for unstructured data led to the evolution of LOB data types and set the stage for SecureFiles. While the character based large files are identified as `CLOB`, the unstructured binary files are treated as `BLOB`. Even the binary files which are OS location dependent can be stored in the database through a locator as `BFILE` data types in the Oracle database.

In this chapter, we shall understand the Oracle's support to large objects. Large objects can be a physical file in the system. It can be any regular file on the operating system such as document, media files, and so on. We will cover the LOB data type handling concept under the following topics:

- Introduction to the LOB data types
- Understanding the LOB data types
- Creating the LOB data types
- Managing the LOB data types
- Working with the `CLOB`, `BLOB`, and `BFILE` data types
- Migrating from `LONG` to LOB
- Temporary LOB data types
- Using temporary LOBs

## Introduction to the LOB data types

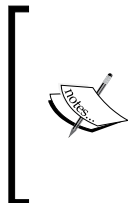
Before the introduction of LOB data types, LONG and LONG RAW data types served as the storage types for large data. But soon the incompetency of the data types added the discomfort to the database developers and created an urgency for a stable data type. Some of the limitations of LONG and LONG RAW are as follows:

- A table can have only one LONG or LONG RAW column. Also, the data would always be stored inline with the record – thus dumping the same segment all the time.
- A LONG or LONG RAW column can store data only up to 2 GB.
- LONG data type can support sequential access of data. Besides, there are multiple restrictions associated with the usage of LONG data type. Limitations such as single column specification in a table and no possibility of indexing add to the compatibility concerns.

With the introduction of LOB data types in Oracle8i, the limitations of LONG and LONG RAW were overruled with multiple features. The LOB data types are CLOB, NCLOB, BLOB, and BFILE. These data types not only provide a stable storage philosophy of unstructured data in the database but also they can be accessed randomly. Let us examine some of the key features of LOB data types in Oracle 11g:

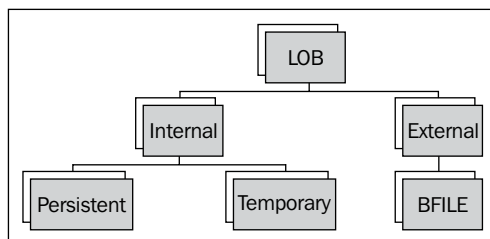
- They are capable to store up to 128 TB of semi structure and unstructured data.
- They can be stored in a separate segment LOBSEGMENT and can be optionally stored in a different tablespace too.
- They support the national character set.
- They have Oracle built-in package DBMS\_LOB to perform LOB operations.

After the release of Oracle 11g, LOB data type has become a significant and proven member of the Oracle family. The earlier data types, LONG and LONG RAW, have been turned obsolete for development purposes. However, the data types still appear in dictionary views such as USER\_VIEWS, USER\_TRIGGERS, and USER\_TAB\_COLS to store free text data. Despite the proven capability of LOB data types, Oracle has retained the LONG and LONG RAW specifications in dictionary views.



Oracle 11g saw a major turnaround by boosting the storage mechanism of LOB in the form of SecureFiles. SecureFile is an advanced format of LOB storage which provides advanced compression, encryption, and de-duplication features. The new feature assures better storage, secure access mechanism, and better performance in comparison to its earlier format.

The LOB data type classification chart is as shown in the following diagram:



Let us understand the LOB classifications briefly.

## Internal LOB

The LOB data which can be accessed from, or stored within the database, is internal to the database. A database column of one of the LOB data types (CLOB, NCLOB, or BLOB) is included in the table and a large object that is LOB value is stored in the database. A PL/SQL variable of the LOB data type can be accessed in a PL/SQL block. CLOB, NCLOB, and BLOB are internal LOB data types in Oracle. An internal LOB data type can be used to specify the data type of a column, or attribute of a user object type. In a PL/SQL block, internal LOB data types can be used as local memory variables.

An internal LOB can be Persistent or Temporary. The classification goes exactly with the name. The LOB data which is stored physically in the database tables is a persistent internal LOB. As it abides by the **ACID (Atomicity, Consistency, Isolation, and Durability)** properties, it can participate in data operations such as selection and transaction.

A temporary internal LOB is the one which is declared and accessed only within a PL/SQL block.

## External LOB

When the large object is a heavy file, we use an external LOB data type to store only its locator's value and not actually the LOB data. The file still resides at the OS location and not physically in the database. External LOBs are supported by the data type BFILE. It is a read-only data type.

Since an external LOB follows only referential semantics to access an external object in the database, they cannot participate in database transactions. BFILE is a read-only data type where the external files can be accessed only in read mode and cannot be modified.

## Understanding the LOB data types

As we came across the four LOB data types in Oracle, LOB structure can be split into its "What" and "Where" components. While LOB value answers to the "What" query, the LOB locator corresponds to the "Where" part. Together, they both make a complete structure of an LOB. Let us understand the LOB components.

### LOB value and LOB locators

The LOB value is the actual large file to be loaded in the database. The LOB locator points to the location of this file on the system. It can be thought of as a pointer which references the system location of a file. A LOB locator is always stored inline with the table row irrespective of where the LOB value is stored. During insertion of the LOB data, the LOB column necessarily has the LOB locator component which points to the actual location of the LOB value in the system. The LOB value is always stored in the LOB segment which can be placed in the same or different tablespace.

For an internal LOB, the LOB segment has both the LOB locator and LOB value. The external LOB has only the LOB locator because the LOB value is not stored in the database but located externally on the OS.

### BLOB or CLOB!

There are three types of internal LOB data types. They are briefly explained as follows:

- BLOB: It is a **Binary Large Object** data type. This data type is used to store binary large files such as PDFs, images, audios or videos, and so on. It is analogous to the `LONG RAW` data type which was used before the induction of LOB data types in Oracle.
- CLOB: This data type represents the **Character Large Object** data type which stores the single byte character data in a database character set format. It is compatible with the fixed length character set of the database. It is the data type complimentary to the `LONG` data type.
- NCLOB: It is similar to the CLOB data type with the compatibility difference that is, it can work for a variable width character set and the NLS settings of the database. Besides, it supports the storage of a multibyte character set data.



Starting from Oracle 10g, Oracle can cast the CLOB data to the VARCHAR2 data implicitly.

## BFILE

A BFILE data type column simply establishes and maintains the reference with the file which is located externally in the system. This implies that the BFILE value is always a NULL component for the BFILE data type column or attribute. Unlike the BFILE value, the BFILE locator always holds the pointer to the large file or the BFILE data. The file can be externally located on the operating system, hard drive, compact disks, or tape.

As the data held by this data type is read-only, it cannot participate in data operations or transactions. Now, a question rises that if I delete the BFILE data, will the external file also get deleted? No, it will not. Only the BFILE locator is dropped and de-referenced from the external file.

A BFILE locator must be secured to avoid unauthorized access. File location must be ensured at the server machine and a timeout must be set while reading a nonexistent BFILE data. Besides, some tasks can be performed at the OS file level. These tasks include access permissions, available space, and OS maximum file size to secure BFILES.

## Temporary LOBs

A PL/SQL variable of the CLOB or BLOB data type in a session act is considered as a temporary LOB. It is used to perform some LOB related operations and is placed in the temporary tablespace. If a temporary LOB is stored in the database as a column value, it becomes an internal LOB.

The temporary LOB must be freed once the related activities are over. Once it is freed, the corresponding LOB locator is marked invalid.

## Creating LOB data types

Similar to other data types, table columns which are meant for the storage of large data must be declared as one of the LOB data types. This section focuses on the elementary step of LOB handling that is, creation of LOB columns.

## Directories

**Directory** is a vital component in Oracle used to access an operating system file. It interfaces the location path as a directory object. The DBA creates it and grants read/write privileges to the concerned user.

A directory is a nonschema object and can be used as a security barrier for the files located on the server or the client. A directory can be created as per the following syntax:

```
CREATE DIRECTORY [DIRECTORY NAME] AS [OS LOCATION PATH]
```

Note that the directory creation does not validate the specified location on the system. This means that a directory can be created for a nonexistent path on the system.

For example, the CREATE DIRECTORY statement, as shown in the following code snippet, creates a directory for the path C:\Labs\:

```
/*Connect as SYSDBA*/
SQL> CONN sys/system AS SYSDBA
Connected.

/*Create directory for Labs folder located at the server machine*/
SQL> CREATE DIRECTORY MY_FIRST_DIR AS 'C:\Labs\';

Directory created.

/*Create directory for Labs folder located at the client machine
(ORCLClient)*/
SQL> CREATE DIRECTORY MY_CLIENT_DIR AS '\\ORCLClient\Labs\';

Directory created.
```

For the files located on the server, the actual path has to be specified in the CREATE DIRECTORY statement.



For the files which are located at the client machine, the CREATE DIRECTORY statement requires a relative access path as [\\Machine Name\File Location]. The directory path appears like a network path of the shared client location. The location must be shared with the server in read/write mode.

The access privileges on the directory can be granted using the GRANT command as follows:

```
SQL> GRANT READ, WRITE ON DIRECTORY MY_FIRST_DIR TO ORADEV;

Grant succeeded.
```

Directory metadata can be found under the DBA\_DIRECTORIES and ALL\_DIRECTORIES data dictionary views.

## Creating LOB data type columns in a table

A table with a LOB data type column can be created, as shown in the following code snippet. The syntax demonstrates the creation of LOB data type columns prior to the release of Oracle 11g.

Note the highlighted LOB storage clause in the following code snippet:

```
CREATE TABLE <table name>
  (Column list)
  [LOB (<lobcol1> [, <lobcol2>...])
  STORE AS
  [<lob_segment_name>]
  (
    [TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>]
    [{ENABLE | DISABLE} STORAGE IN ROW]
    [CHUNK <chunk_size>]
    [PCTVERSION <version_number>]
    [ { CACHE | NO CACHE [{LOGGING | NOLOGGING}] | CACHE READS
    [{LOGGING |
      NOLOGGING}] }]
    [STORAGE {MINEXTENTS | MAXEXTENTS}]
    [INDEX [<lob_index_name>] [physical attributes] [<storage_for_LOB_
index>]
  )]]
```

Introduction of SecureFiles and BasicFiles in Oracle 11g brought slight manipulation in the above syntax. Now, the conventional LOB columns would be known as BasicFiles, while the columns which wish to pursue the latest LOB scheme would be declared as SecureFiles.

Check the new LOB specification clause in the following syntax,

```
[LOB (<lobcol1> [, <lobcol2>...])
STORE AS [BASICFILE | SECUREFILE]
(LOB Storage parameters)
```

Let us highlight some of the facts in the previous syntax:

- **LOB storage clause:** The LOB storage clause is optional for LOB.
- **LOB\_SEGMENT\_NAME:** It can be specified for the LOB data type column in the table. The segment with the given name is created for the LOBSEGMENT segment type.
- **TABLESPACE:** It is used to reside target tablespace for the LOB data type column.

- `ENABLE | DISABLE} STORAGE IN ROW`: It ensures inline and out of the line storage of the LOB data type data in the table.
- `CHUNK`: It chunks size for the LOB data type data.
- `CACHE, LOGGING`: It Enables caching and logging options for the LOB data type data.
- `STORAGE`: It is used to provide extent specification for storage clause.
- `INDEX`: It is used to provide LOB index specification.

The `EMP_LOB_DEMO` table stores an employee ID, a document, and their image. Note the LOB segment specification, index specification, and the clause to specify the inline and out of the line storage in the following code snippet:

```
/*Create the table LOB_DEMO*/
CREATE TABLE EMP_LOB_DEMO
(
    EMPID NUMBER,
    DOC CLOB,
    IMAGE BLOB
)
LOB (DOC) --LOB storage clause for DOC
STORE AS LOBSEGMENT_DOC_CLOB
(
    CHUNK 4096
    CACHE
    STORAGE (MINEXTENTS 2)
    INDEX IDX_DOC_CLOB
)
LOB (IMAGE) --LOB storage clause for IMAGE
STORE AS LOBSEGMENT_IMG_BLOB
(
    ENABLE STORAGE IN ROW
    CHUNK 4096
    CACHE
    STORAGE (MINEXTENTS 2)
    INDEX IDX_IMAGE_BLOB
)
/

Table created.
```

LOB metadata is stored in the `USER_LOBS` dictionary view. Note that the LOB segment has been created for the particular LOB data type column in the table. The segments can even be queried in the `USER_SEGMENTS` dictionary view.

The following query selects the LOBs created in the table script shown in the previous code snippet:

```
/*Select LOB columns along with segment and index name*/
SQL> SELECT TABLE_NAME, COLUMN_NAME, SEGMENT_NAME, INDEX_NAME
FROM USER_LOBS
WHERE TABLE_NAME = 'EMP_LOB_DEMO'
/

TABLE_NAME    COLUMN_NAME    SEGMENT_NAME                                INDEX_NAME
-----
EMP_LOB_DEMO  DOC            LOBSEGMENT_DOC_CLOB                        IDX_DOC_CLOB
EMP_LOB_DEMO  IMAGE          LOBSEGMENT_IMG_BLOB                        IDX_IMAGE_
BLOB

/*Select LOB segments to view the segment characteristics*/
SQL> SELECT segment_name,segment_type,segment_subtype,bytes,blocks
FROM USER_SEGMENTS
where segment_name in ('LOBSEGMENT_DOC_CLOB','LOBSEGMENT_IMG_BLOB');
```

SEGMENT_NAME	SEGMENT_TYPE	SEGMENT_SU	BYTES	BLOCKS
LOBSEGMENT_DOC_CLOB	LOBSEGMENT	ASSM	8388608	1024
LOBSEGMENT_IMG_BLOB	LOBSEGMENT	ASSM	2097152	256

## Managing LOB data types

The LOB data management includes its interaction with the loading interface, data manipulation strategies, and selection of the LOB data. The section makes certain recommendations to manage internal LOBs, BFILEs, and temporary LOBs.

## Managing internal LOBs

An internal LOB data type that is, a CLOB or BLOB data type column can be interacted through supported interfaces such as `DBMS_LOB`, `JDBC`, or `OLE` object structure. In `PL/SQL`, LOB data is majorly managed through the `DBMS_LOB` package which provides a wide variety of subprograms to populate the LOB data, manipulate it, and extract relevant information such as length, size, and so on.

Few of the recommendations to manage the internal LOB are as follows:

- The LOB column can be initialized as `NULL` using `EMPTY_BLOB()` or `EMPTY_CLOB()` functions.
- A CLOB can be populated through `SQL` or a text file loaded from a `PL/SQL` program. A BLOB should always be loaded through a `PL/SQL` block.
- Use of `DBMS_LOB` package is preferable for the LOB operations and activities.
- The LOB data can be modified using the `UPDATE` statement or `DBMS_LOB` subprograms.

## Securing and managing BFILEs

A BFILE column is a LOB data type which has to be secured against malicious activities resulting from unauthorized access. The reason behind this is the external location of the file on the operating system or external hardware. Unauthorized access from `PL/SQL` can be ensured by regulating the access on the directory object. The privilege to write data at the directory location must be restricted only to authorized users, while other users should enjoy the read privilege only. The usage of a directory object prepares the database to take an additional layer of security for BFILEs after performing the varying security techniques from the external hardware. A file on the operating system can be secured against its access, nondesired manipulative activities, and file size restrictions at the operating system level.

Thereafter, once the BFILE data is populated in a fashion similar to internal LOBs, the BFILE operations and interactions are carried out by the `DBMS_LOB` package.

A user can open only a definite number of BFILEs in an active session. The session level static initialization parameter `SESSION_MAX_OPEN_FILES` governs the number of BFILEs to be opened in a session. Its default value is 10 and it resides in the `spfile[DB].ora` parameter specification file. Once this limit is reached, no more files can be opened in the session. The value of the parameter can be altered using the `ALTER SESSION` command.

The following example illustration modifies the parameter `SESSION_MAX_OPEN_FILES` to 25:

```
/*Connect as SYSDBA*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.
/*Alter the session to modify the maximum open files in a session*/
ALTER SESSION SET SESSION_MAX_OPEN_FILES = 25
/
Session altered.
```

Managing BFILEs is similar to that of internal LOBs. While the DBA takes care of the security at the OS level and database level, the developer codes the programs to interact with the file and populate its locator (rather BFILE locator) in the BFILE column of a table. The DBA manages the file system on the operating system or external hardware, creates the database directory object, and decides upon the directory access. A BFILE column can be initialized using the `BFILENAME` function. The `BFILENAME` function establishes a reference to the file at the specified physical directory location. In simple terms, it returns the BFILE locator:

```
FUNCTION BFILENAME(directory IN VARCHAR2, filename IN VARCHAR2)
RETURN BFILE;
```

In the previous syntax, `directory` is a valid database directory name and `filename` is a file located at the directory location. The function returns a BFILE locator which can be simply assigned to a BFILE column in a table using `INSERT/UPDATE` statement. Importantly, these external files are accessed in read-only mode through BFILEs; as a result, files cannot be modified. Instead, the BFILE locator can be modified to change the pointer to point to a different target.

Note that the same `BFILENAME` function is also used while populating an internal LOB column from an external file.

## The DBMS\_LOB package—overview

`DBMS_LOB` is the built-in Oracle package which provides API level interface for LOB operations. The package `DBMS_LOB` provides subprograms to query the LOB, sets the operating status, performs the transactional activities, reads BFILEs, and so on.

### Security model

The package is owned by `SYSDBA`. A DBA must grant an `EXECUTE` privilege to the user which seeks the usage of LOB operations.

## DBMS\_LOB constants

The constants used by the DBMS\_LOB package have been consolidated in the following table:

Constant	Definition
DBMS_LOB constants	
FILE_READONLY	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 0;
LOB_READONLY	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 0;
LOB_READWRITE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 1;
LOBMAXSIZE	CONSTANT INTEGER := 18446744073709551615;
SESSION	CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := 10;
CALL	CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := 12;
DBMS_LOB option types	
OPT_COMPRESS	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 1;
OPT_ENCRYPT	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 2;
OPT_DEDUPLICATE	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 4;
DBMS_LOB option values	
COMPRESS_OFF	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 0;
COMPRESS_ON	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 1;
ENCRYPT_OFF	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 0;
ENCRYPT_ON	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 2;
DEDUPLICATE_OFF	CONSTANT BINARY_INTEGER := 0;
DEDUPLICATE_ON	CONSTANT PLS_INTEGER := 4;

## DBMS\_LOB data types

The list of data types used by the DBMS\_LOB package is as follows:

Data type	Discription
BLOB	Source or destination binary LOB
RAW	Source or destination RAW buffer (used with BLOB)
CLOB	Source or destination character LOB (including NCLOB)
VARCHAR2	Source or destination character buffer (used with CLOB and NCLOB)
INTEGER	Specifies the size of a buffer or LOB, the offset into a LOB, or the amount to access
BFILE	Large, binary object stored outside the database

## DBMS\_LOB subprograms

The DBMS\_LOB subprograms are listed in the following table:

Subprogram	Description
APPEND procedure	Appends the contents of the source LOB to the destination LOB
CLOSE procedure	Closes a previously opened internal or external LOB
COMPARE function	Compares two entire LOBs or parts of two LOBs
CONVERTTOBLOB procedure	Reads character data from a source CLOB or NCLOB instance, converts the character data to the specified character, writes the converted data to a destination BLOB instance in binary format, and returns the new offsets
CONVERTTOCLOB procedure	Takes a source BLOB instance, converts the binary data in the source instance to character data using the specified character, writes the character data to a destination CLOB or NCLOB instance, and returns the new offsets
COPY procedure	Copies all, or part, of the source LOB to the destination LOB
CREATETEMPORARY procedure	Creates a temporary BLOB or CLOB and its corresponding index in the user's default temporary tablespace
ERASE procedure	Erases entire or part of a LOB
FILECLOSE procedure	Closes the file
FILECLOSEALL procedure	Closes all previously opened files
FILEEXISTS function	Checks if the file exists on the server
FILEGETNAME procedure	Gets the directory object name and file name
FILEISOPEN function	Checks if the file was opened using the input BFILE locators
FILEOPEN procedure	Opens a BFILE
FRAGMENT_DELETE procedure	Deletes the data at the given offset for the given length from the LOB
FRAGMENT_INSERT procedure	Inserts the given data (limited to 32 KB) into the LOB at the given offset
FRAGMENT_MOVE procedure	Moves the amount of bytes (BLOB) or characters (CLOB/NCLOB) from the given offset to the new offset specified
FRAGMENT_REPLACE procedure	Replaces the data at the given offset with the given data (not to exceed 32 KB)
FREETEMPORARY procedure	Frees the temporary BLOB or CLOB in the default temporary tablespace

<b>Subprogram</b>	<b>Description</b>
GETCHUNKSIZE function	Returns the amount of space used in the LOB CHUNK to store the LOB value
GETLENGTH function	Gets the length of the LOB value
GETOPTIONS function	Obtains settings corresponding to the <code>option_types</code> field for a particular LOB
GET_STORAGE_LIMIT function	Returns the storage limit for LOBs in your database configuration
INSTR function	Returns the matching position of the nth occurrence of the pattern in the LOB
ISOPEN functions	Checks to see if the LOB was already opened using the input locator
ISTEMPORARY functions	Checks if the locator is pointing to a temporary LOB
LOADBLOBFROMFILE procedure	Loads BFILE data into an internal BLOB
LOADCLOBFROMFILE procedure	Loads BFILE data into an internal CLOB
LOADFROMFILE procedure	Loads BFILE data into an internal LOB
OPEN procedures	Opens a LOB (internal, external, or temporary) in the indicated mode
READ procedures	Reads data from the LOB starting at the specified offset
SETOPTIONS procedures	Enables CSCE features on a per-LOB basis, overriding the default LOB column settings
SUBSTR functions	Returns part of the LOB value starting at the specified offset
TRIM procedures	Trims the LOB value to the specified shorter length
WRITE procedures	Writes data to the LOB from a specified offset
WRITEAPPEND procedures	Writes a buffer at the end of a LOB

## Rules and regulations

Here we shall discuss some of the basic validation rules for internal and external LOBs. These validations provide the usage guidelines while working with LOBs using the `DBMS_LOB` package.

## Internal LOBs

Internal LOBs deal with character and binary data. The important validations for internal LOBs include the offset and LOB length. The usage guidelines are as follows:

- Length and offset value must be positive and definite. For CLOB, the values must be expressed as characters while for BLOB and BFILEs, the values must be expressed as bytes. By default, the offset value is 1.
- Numeric arguments such as `length`, `offset`, `newline`, `nth`, and `amount` must be a positive number not greater than `LOBMAXSIZE` ( $2^{64}$ ).
- Subprograms with `NULL` inputs raise exceptions or return `NULL` output.
- Character function subprograms `SUBSTR`, `INSTR`, and `COMPARE` do not support regular expressions or character pattern matching in parameters.
- The LOB must be locked while querying to avoid simultaneous transactions on the same row.

## BFILEs

External LOBs deal with externally located data. Most importantly, the file must exist physically at the location. The usage notes for external LOBs are as follows:

- BFILE locator is the mandatory component for all BFILE operations.
- The file must physically exist at the directory location pointed by the BFILE locator.
- Be reminded of the maximum open file limit in each session. In case of an abnormal termination of the program, the exception handler must close all the open BFILEs.
- Maximum buffer size is 32767 bytes.

## Working with the CLOB, BLOB, and BFILE data types

By now, we have gathered enough understanding on the LOB data types. We will now see the handling of LOB data in PL/SQL. For illustration purposes, we will use the `EMP_LOB_DEMO` table, which has been created earlier.

## Initializing LOB data type columns

As we learned earlier the LOB column in the table contains only the pointer (LOB locator), while the actual data is stored in the LOB segment. The LOB segment is a different storage area in the same or different tablespace.

For initialization of a LOB data type variable or column, Oracle provides two built-in constructor methods namely, `EMPTY_CLOB()` and `EMPTY_BLOB()`. These functions are supported in SQL as well as PL/SQL. The functions assign a default LOB locator to the CLOB and BLOB data type columns or variables. Let us check it out.

The PL/SQL block, shown in the following code snippet, declares a CLOB and BLOB variable and initializes them in the declarative section. However, the initialization can be made in the executable section also:

```
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE

/*Declare local variables of LOB types and initialize them with
corresponding constructor methods*/
    l_my_clob CLOB := EMPTY_CLOB ();
    l_my_blob BLOB := EMPTY_BLOB ();
BEGIN
    NULL;
END;
/

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

A CLOB or BLOB type column can be created with its default value, as shown in the following code snippet:

```
/*Create the table with default initialization of LOB columns*/
CREATE TABLE dummy_lob
(
    my_clob CLOB DEFAULT EMPTY_CLOB(),
    my_blob BLOB DEFAULT EMPTY_BLOB()
)
/
Table created.
```

A table can be altered to add a column of CLOB or BLOB data type with its default value for the existing data. It is shown in the following code snippet:

```
/*Alter the table to add a column with default initialization*/
ALTER TABLE dummy_lob
ADD your_clob CLOB DEFAULT EMPTY_CLOB()
/
Table altered.
```

## Inserting data into a LOB column

By using SQL, character data can be inserted only into a CLOB column. The BLOB column can only be initialized with a LOB locator using the `EMPTY_BLOB()` function. The reason is that BLOB is meant dedicatedly for a binary (or hexadecimal) data:

```
SQL> INSERT INTO EMP_LOB_DEMO
VALUES
(7900, 'I am the KING', EMPTY_BLOB());
1 row created.
SQL> COMMIT;
Commit complete.
SQL> SELECT * FROM emp_lob_demo;
```

EMPID	DOC	IMAGE
7900	I am the KING	

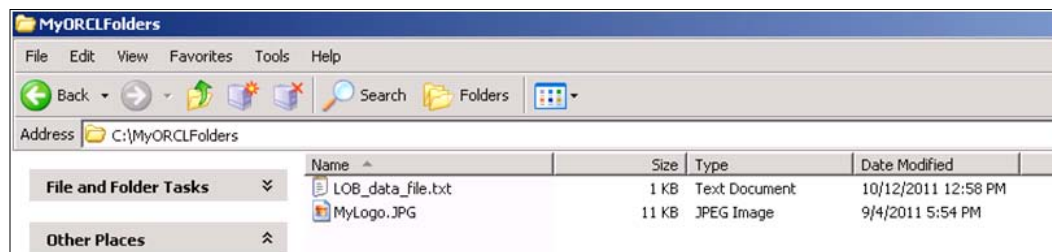
If character data is attempted for the BLOB column, Oracle raises the `ORA-01465: invalid hex number exception`.

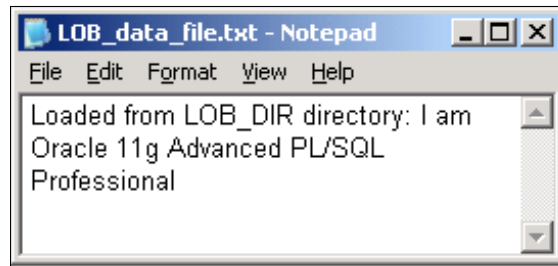
## Populating a LOB data type using an external file

Data from a system's text file can be loaded into CLOB using PL/SQL. Here, we will demonstrate populating of CLOB and BLOB columns from a system's text and image files. Observe the populating steps.

The application database maintains a directory object which points to the defined OS location. The OS location and the text file content is shown in the following screenshot. Note that we have two files:

- **LOB\_data\_file.txt:** The data has to be loaded into the CLOB column.
- **MyLogo.JPG:** The image file has to be loaded into the BLOB column.





We will try to read the text file shown in the previous screenshot and load the character data in the EMP\_LOB\_DEMO table. The demonstration steps are as follows:

1. The DBA creates the directory for the defined OS location:

```
/*Connect as SYSDBA*/
Conn sys/system as SYSDBA
Connected.
/*Create directory LOB_DIR for the specified OS Location*/
SQL> CREATE DIRECTORY LOB_DIR AS 'C:\MyORCLFolders\';
Directory created.
```
2. The DBA grants read/write access on the directory to the ORADEV user:

```
/*Grant read and write privilege on the directory LOB_DIR to user
ORADEV*/
SQL> GRANT READ, WRITE ON DIRECTORY DEMO_DIR TO ORADEV;
Grant succeeded.
```
3. The PL/SQL block loads the two files into the table. Note the following observations from the PL/SQL program:
  - The PL/SQL variables L\_SOURCE\_CLOB and L\_SOURCE\_BLOB are assigned with the LOB locators using the BFILENAME function.
  - The temporary LOB columns are initialized with the EMPTY\_CLOB() and EMPTY\_BLOB() constructor methods.
  - DBMS\_LOB.OPEN is used to open an external LOB in read-only mode.
  - DBMS\_LOB.GETLENGTH is used to find the length of the external LOB.
  - The INSERT statement inserts the data and empty LOB locators returning into the temporary LOB variables.
  - DBMS\_LOB.LODFROMFILE populates the external BFILE data to the temporary LOB variables.
  - The temporary LOB variables are updated in the EMP\_LOB\_DEMO table.
  - DBMS\_LOB.CLOSE is used to close the external LOB.

Refer to the following code snippet:

```

/*Connect as ORADEV*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display the block messages*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE

/*Declaring LOB locator for CLOB and BLOB*/
  L_SOURCE_CLOB BFILE := BFILENAME('LOB_DIR', 'LOB_data_file.
txt');
  L_SOURCE_BLOB BFILE := BFILENAME('LOB_DIR', 'MyLogo.JPG');

/*Declaring offset value for both LOB columns*/
  L_AMT_CLOB  INTEGER := 4000;
  L_AMT_BLOB  INTEGER := 4000;

/*Declaring temporary LOB columns for both LOB columns*/
  L_CLOB CLOB := EMPTY_CLOB();
  L_BLOB BLOB := EMPTY_BLOB();
BEGIN

/*Opening the LOB locator in read only mode*/
  DBMS_LOB.OPEN(L_SOURCE_CLOB, DBMS_LOB.LOB_READONLY);
  DBMS_LOB.OPEN(L_SOURCE_BLOB, DBMS_LOB.LOB_READONLY);

/*Calculating the length of LOB locator*/
  L_AMT_CLOB := DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(L_SOURCE_CLOB);
  L_AMT_BLOB := DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(L_SOURCE_BLOB);

/*Create the record into LOB_DEMO table with empty LOB instance in
both CLOB and BLOB. Fetch the LOB column values into temporary LOB
variables*/
  INSERT INTO emp_lob_demo
  VALUES (7369, EMPTY_CLOB, EMPTY_BLOB())
  RETURNING DOC,IMAGE INTO L_CLOB, L_BLOB;

/*Load the temporary LOBs with the LOB locator and object pointed
by them*/
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Inserting text file into database. . .');
  DBMS_LOB.LOADFROMFILE(L_CLOB, L_SOURCE_CLOB, L_AMT_CLOB);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Populating CLOB data is over');
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Inserting Image file into database. . .');
  DBMS_LOB.LOADFROMFILE(L_BLOB, L_SOURCE_BLOB, L_AMT_BLOB);
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Populating BLOB data is over');

```

```

/*Close the LOB locators*/
  DBMS_LOB.CLOSE(L_SOURCE_CLOB);
  DBMS_LOB.CLOSE(L_SOURCE_BLOB);

/*Update the emp_lob_demo with the temporary LOB variable values*/
  UPDATE emp_lob_demo
  SET doc    = L_CLOB, image = L_BLOB
  WHERE empid = 7369;
END;
/

```

```

Inserting text file into database. . .
Populating CLOB data is over
Inserting Image file into database. . .
Populating BLOB data is over
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

```

4. The PL/SQL executes successfully and the data gets populated from the external files into the database. Let us fire a SELECT query on the table:

```

/*Query the table to verify the loading*/
SQL> SELECT * FROM emp_lob_demo
      WHERE empid = 7369;

```

EMPID	DOC	IMAGE
7369	Loaded from LOB_DIR directory: I am Oracle 11g Advanced PL/SQL Professional	FFD8FFE000104046494600010101006000600000 FFDB0043000806060706050807070709080A0C 140D0C0B0B0C1912130F141D1A1F1E1D1A1C1C20 242E2720222C231C1C2837292C30313434341F27

Note the data from the text file `LOB_data_file.txt` in the DOC (CLOB data type) column. The IMAGE (BLOB data type) column shows the hexadecimal code of the image `MyLogo.JPG`. The `DOC_SIZE` parameter corresponds to the size of the text file and `IMAGE_SIZE` corresponds to the size of the image file.

Let us check the size of the LOB data and compare with the actual counts:

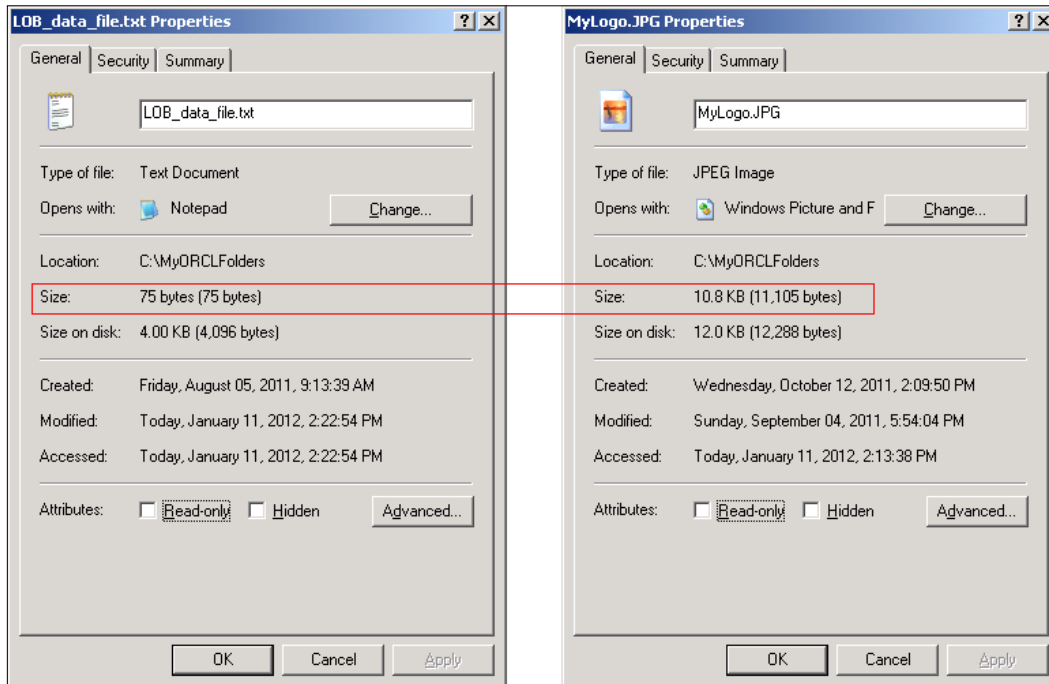
```

/*Select the length of LOB column types*/
SQL> SELECT empid,
      DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(doc) doc_size,

```

```
DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(image) image_size
FROM emp_lob_demo
WHERE empid = 7369;
```

```
EMPID   DOC_SIZE   IMAGE_SIZE
-----
7369    75          11105
```



## Selecting LOB data

In our above illustrations, we have already seen that the `SELECT` statement can read the CLOB data successfully. For the BLOB data, the hexadecimal value for the binary file appears:

```
SELECT empid, doc, image
FROM emp_lob_demo
/
```

EMPID	DOC	IMAGE
7900	I am the KING	
7369	Loaded from LOB_DIR directory: I am Oracle 11g Advanced PL/SQL Professional	FFD8FFE000104A46494600010101006000600000 FFDB004300080606070605080707070907080A0C 148D0C0B0B0C1912130F141D1A1F1E1D1A1C1C2B 242E2720222C231C1C2837292C30313434341F27

Similarly, in a PL/SQL block, the CLOB data can be fetched from the table:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display block messages*/
SET SERVEROUT ON

/*Start the Pl/SQL block*/
DECLARE
l_lob_len NUMBER;

/*Cursor to select the data from emp_lob_demo table*/
CURSOR C IS
SELECT empid, doc, image
FROM emp_lob_demo;
BEGIN

/*Iterate the cursor in the FOR loop*/
FOR I IN C
LOOP

/*Get length of the CLOB column*/
l_lob_len := DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(i.doc);

/*Display the CLOB data*/
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Printing DOC for ' || i.empid || ':
' || DBMS_LOB.SUBSTR(i.doc, l_lob_len));
END LOOP;
END;
/

Printing DOC for 7900: I am the KING
Printing DOC for 7369: Loaded from LOB_DIR directory: I am Oracle 11g
Advanced PL/SQL Professional
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

## Modifying the LOB data

If the CLOB data is small, the CLOB data type column can be updated using the UPDATE statement. For example, we will try to update the DOC value for EMPID 7900 in the EMP\_LOB\_DEMO table:

```
/*Check the current value of CLOB column for EMPID 7900*/
SQL> SELECT doc FROM emp_lob_demo WHERE empid = 7900;
```

```

DOC
-----
I am the KING

/*Update the CLOB column for EMPID 7900*/
SQL> UPDATE emp_lob_demo
      SET doc = 'I am not a KING'
      WHERE empid = 7900;

1 row updated.

/*Verify the updated value of CLOB column for EMPID 7900*/
SQL> SELECT doc FROM emp_lob_demo WHERE empid = 7900;

DOC
-----
I am not a KING

```

The character data populated from an external file can also be updated. The changes will be in the external text file too. `DBMS_LOB.WRITE` and `DBMS_LOB.WRITEAPPEND` achieve the CLOB writing operations.

The PL/SQL block below selects the `DOC` column for `EMPID 7369` in a local CLOB variable. It then appends a text to it and writes back in the text file corresponding to the LOB locator:

```

/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
  L_CLOB CLOB;
  L_WRITE_TXT VARCHAR2(50) := 'Write: Larry Ellison heads Oracle
Corp';
  L_APPEND_TXT VARCHAR2(50) := 'Append: Larry Ellison heads Oracle
Corp';
  L_BUFF_AMT NUMBER ;
  L_OFFSET INTEGER;
BEGIN

/*Selects the CLOB data in a local variable*/
  SELECT doc
  INTO l_clob
  FROM emp_lob_demo
  WHERE empid = 7369
  FOR UPDATE;

```

```
/*Calculate the offset pointer value*/
L_OFFSET := DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(L_CLOB) + 115;

/*Calculate the buffer amount*/
L_BUFF_AMT := LENGTH(L_WRITE_TXT);

/*Write the data into the CLOB locator*/
DBMS_LOB.WRITE (L_CLOB, L_BUFF_AMT, L_OFFSET, L_WRITE_TXT);
L_BUFF_AMT := LENGTH(L_APPEND_TXT);

/*Append the data into CLOB locator*/
DBMS_LOB.WRITEAPPEND (L_CLOB, L_BUFF_AMT, L_APPEND_TXT);
END;
/

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
COMMIT;

Commit complete.
```

## Delete LOB data

A row from a table which contains the LOB data can be deleted to remove the LOB data. If the scalar LOB data has to be removed, it is better to update the LOB column with an empty LOB locator through `EMPTY_CLOB()` or `EMPTY_BLOB()`.

For example, the `IMAGE` column of the `EMP_LOB_DEMO` table for `EMPID 7369` can be updated as follows:

```
UPDATE emp_lob_demo
SET image = EMPTY_BLOB ()
WHERE empid = 7369
/

1 row updated.
```

The same row could have been deleted but it would have also removed the `DOC` data.

## Miscellaneous LOB notes

We will now overview certain LOB working and usage guidelines. We will understand few uncategorized and miscellaneous facts about LOB data types. In the development phases, it is necessary to understand the LOB column states and access,

## LOB column states

A LOB column value in a table can exist in three states namely NULL, Empty, or Populated. The comparison between them is as follows:

LOB state	Locator exist	Value exist	LOB Length
NULL	No	No	Null
Empty	Yes	No	Zero
Populated	Yes	Yes	Definite value

## Locking a row containing LOB

The row containing the LOB data must be selected using FOR UPDATE clause to prevent other users working on the same row. Once the row is locked, the LOB cannot be updated, modified, or replaced.

## Opening and closing LOBs

The LOBs can be opened in read-only or read/write mode. The mode is specified using a DBMS\_LOB subprogram.

In read-only mode, the LOB can only be selected but cannot be updated or modified until the LOB is closed and re-opened in write mode:

```
DBMS_LOB.OPEN(L_SOURCE_CLOB, DBMS_LOB.LOB_READONLY);
```

In read/write mode, a persistent LOB participates in database transactions. It defers the index maintenance on the LOB column until the mode is active.

```
DBMS_LOB.OPEN(L_SOURCE_CLOB, DBMS_LOB.LOB_READWRITE);
```

A LOB once opened in either of the modes, must be closed in the same session.

## Accessing LOBs

Some key points to access LOB columns from the table are as follows:

- The character type LOBs (CLOB and NCLOB) follow the VARCHAR2 semantics for usage in SQL functions and with SQL operators. The semantics are supported and suggested up to 1 MB sized LOBs. The Oracle server performs implicit conversion of the first 4 KB data of CLOB data, when used in SQL; 32 KB of CLOB data, when used in PL/SQL.

- Concatenation, comparison, character functions, conversion functions, and aggregate functions are supported by LOB type columns. The functions such as INSTR, REPLACE, SUBSTR, CONCAT, TRIM, LTRIM, RTRIM, LOWER, UPPER, NLS\_LOWER, NLS\_UPPER, LPAD, and RPAD can be used well with character LOB columns.
- The LENGTH function is supported for all LOB types. The function DECODE works only for CLOB. The value returned by LENGTH function is the same as that returned by DBMS\_LOB.GETLENGTH.
- The IS [NOT] NULL operator can be used with LOB columns in SQL. These operators check the NULL property of only the LOB locator.
- Following operations are not supported in SQL:
  - DISTINCT
  - ORDER BY clause
  - GROUP BY clause
  - SET operators except UNION ALL (UNION, MINUS, INTERSECT)
  - Join queries
  - CREATE INDEX

## LOB restrictions

The LOB data type healed the drawbacks of the manual mechanism of large object storage. But there are a few restrictions as follows:

- LOB columns cannot behave as Primary Key.
- SQL Loader cannot recognize LOB column data as an argument input to the clause.
- In shared-server mode, a BFILE column does not support session migration.

## Migrating from LONG to LOB

Starting from Oracle 10g, a LONG data is convertible to a LOB data in a table. This enhancement has enabled the migration of older data in LONG and LONG RAW columns to equivalent LOB data types in Oracle. The data in the LONG type column is mapped to CLOB or NCLOB data types and the data in the LONG RAW type columns is mapped to the BLOB data type. It can be achieved through the ALTER TABLE statement, where a LONG type column can be modified to the LOB type column:

```
ALTER TABLE [table name]
MODIFY [LONG type column] [LOB type (CLOB | BLOB)];
```

During migration, the Oracle server implicitly takes care of the data conversion and movement from the LONG to LOB data type. A LONG, LONG RAW, or VARCHAR2 type of data can be implicitly converted into CLOB or BLOB. Explicitly, the data can be converted using TO\_CLOB() and TO\_BLOB() converter functions. During migration, the nullity (NULL or NOT NULL) and default value is also carried away to the new columns. Let us follow an illustration which migrates a LONG type column to the CLOB type column:

```
/*Create a table with LONG type columns*/
CREATE TABLE i_am_old
(
    id NUMBER,
    doc LONG
)
/
```

Table created.

```
/*Insert the sample data in the columns*/
```

```
SQL> INSERT INTO i_am_old
VALUES
(10, 'Oracle 8i');
```

1 row created.

```
SQL> INSERT INTO i_am_old
VALUES
(20, 'Oracle 9i');
```

1 row created.

```
SQL> INSERT INTO i_am_old
VALUES
(30, 'Oracle 10G');
```

1 row created.

```
SQL> INSERT INTO i_am_old
VALUES
(40, 'Oracle 11G');
```

1 row created.

```
SQL> commit;
```

Commit complete.

```
/*View the current data in the table*/
```

```
SQL> select * from i_am_old;
```

ID	DOC
10	Oracle 8i
20	Oracle 9i
30	Oracle 10G
40	Oracle 11G

```
/*Migrate the LONG to LOB. Oracle implicitly takes care of the data
conversion from LONG to CLOB*/
SQL> ALTER TABLE i_am_old MODIFY doc CLOB;
```

Table altered.

```
/*Describe the table to verify the migration*/
SQL> DESC I_AM_OLD
```

Name	Null?	Type
-----		
ID		NUMBER
DOC		CLOB

```
/*Re verify the data*/
SQL> select * from i_am_old;
```

ID	DOC
-----	
10	Oracle 8i
20	Oracle 9i
30	Oracle 10G
40	Oracle 11G

## Using temporary LOBs

Temporary LOBs provide a temporary solution to hold a LOB data in a limited scope—maximum up to a `SESSION`. It can be used in a PL/SQL block as a local variable. A temporary LOB created using the `DBMS_LOB` package resides in temporary tablespace. Note that neither the redo logs nor the rollback information is generated for it. For this reason, they yield better performance within a block.

A temporary LOB can be created as any of the internal LOBs, but cannot be initialized using empty LOB locator constructor methods (`EMPTY_CLOB` and `EMPTY_BLOB`). They can be a handy solution when manipulative operations are performed on the LOB type column in a PL/SQL block.

## Temporary LOB operations

A temporary LOB allows most of the LOB operations such as create and update. A temporary LOB, being a temporary component, must be freed-up as soon as its related actions are over. The `DBMS_LOB` package provides the APIs to handle temporary LOB actions.

## Managing temporary LOBs

The `DBMS_LOB` package offers certain subprograms to work with temporary LOBs. `DBMS_LOB.ISTEMPORARY` checks whether the given LOB is temporary or not. Syntactically, the overloaded subprogram is as follows:

```
DBMS_LOB.ISTEMPORARY (lob_loc IN BLOB)
    RETURN INTEGER;
DBMS_LOB.ISTEMPORARY (lob_loc IN CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS)
    RETURN INTEGER;
```

In this syntax, `LOB_LOC` is the LOB locator. The LOB locator can be a CLOB or BLOB type variable.

To create a temporary LOB, `DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY` can be used. It is, again, an overloaded API which is shown in the following code snippet:

```
DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY
(
    lob_loc IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB,
    cache IN BOOLEAN,
    duration IN PLS_INTEGER := DBMS_LOB.SESSION
);
DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY
(
    lob_loc IN OUT NOCOPY CLOB CHARACTER SET ANY_CS,
    cache IN BOOLEAN,
    duration IN PLS_INTEGER := 10
);
```

Based on this syntax, let us understand a few facts:

- `lob_loc`: It is the LOB locator.
- `cache`: It is a Boolean parameter which determines whether the LOB should be in the buffer cache or not.
- `duration`: It specifies the life of the temporary LOB. It can be one of `SESSION`, `TRANSACTION`, or `CALL`. By default, the duration of a temporary LOB is `SESSION`.

`DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY` frees the memory allocated for the temporary LOB. The syntax for this subprogram is as follows:

```
DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY (lob_loc IN OUT NOCOPY BLOB);
DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY (lob_loc IN OUT NOCOPY CLOB CHARACTER SET
ANY_CS);
```

## Validating, creating, and freeing a temporary LOB

Let us walk through a PL/SQL program to illustrate the usage of the temporary LOB subprograms. Observe the creation, validation, and release of the temporary LOB in the program:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUT to display the block output*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
    L_TEMP_LOB CLOB;
    AMT NUMBER;
    OFFSET NUMBER := 5;
    L_WRITE VARCHAR2(100) := 'Oracle 8i introduced LOB types';
    L_APPEND VARCHAR2(100) := 'Oracle 11g introduced SecureFiles';
BEGIN

/*Create the temporary LOB*/
    DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY
    (
        lob_loc => L_TEMP_LOB,
        cache => true,
        dur => dbms_lob.session
    );

/*Verify the creation of temporary LOB*/
    IF (DBMS_LOB.ISTEMPORARY(L_TEMP_LOB) = 1) THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Given LOB is a temporary LOB');
    ELSE
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Given LOB is a persistent LOB');
    END IF;

/*Open the temporary LOB is read write mode*/
    DBMS_LOB.OPEN
    (
        lob_loc => L_TEMP_LOB,
        open_mode => DBMS_LOB.LOB_READWRITE
    );

/*Write the sample data in the temporary LOB*/
    DBMS_LOB.WRITE
    (
        lob_loc => L_TEMP_LOB,
        amount => LENGTH(L_WRITE),
```

```

        offset => OFFSET,
        buffer => L_WRITE );
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE
    (
        'Temporary LOB length after Write ' || DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(L_TEMP_
LOB)
    );

/*Append the sample in the temporary LOB*/
    DBMS_LOB.WRITEAPPEND
    (
        lob_loc => L_TEMP_LOB,
        amount  => LENGTH(L_APPEND),
        buffer  => L_APPEND
    );
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE
    (
        'Temporary LOB length after Append ' || DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(L_TEMP_
LOB)
    );

/*Display the complete content of the temporary LOB*/
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE
    (
        CHR(10) || 'Temporary LOB Content: '
    );
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE
    (
        DBMS_LOB.SUBSTR
        (
            L_TEMP_LOB,DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH
            (L_TEMP_LOB), 1
        )
    );
    DBMS_LOB.CLOSE(lob_loc => L_TEMP_LOB);
    DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY(lob_loc => L_TEMP_LOB);
END;
/

```

Given LOB is a temporary LOB  
 Temporary LOB length after Write 34  
 Temporary LOB length after Append 67  
 Temporary LOB Content:  
 Oracle 8i introduced LOB types Oracle 11g introduced SecureFiles  
 PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

## Summary

In this chapter, we learned the handling of large objects in Oracle. We started with the need for a stable philosophy for large objects and understanding on the LOB data types in Oracle. We learned managing and working with internal and external LOBs with the help of illustrations and demonstrations. We wiped-up the chapter with a brief demonstration on working with temporary LOBs.

In the next chapter, we will see an enhanced version of LOB, SecureFiles, which has been released in Oracle 11g. We will see the archiving of an earlier LOB under BasicFiles and evolution of SecureFiles as a more promising framework to store large objects in the database.

## Practice exercise

1. Internal LOBs can be used as attributes of a user-defined data type.
  - a. True
  - b. False
2. Internal LOBs cannot be passed as parameters to PL/SQL subprograms.
  - a. True
  - b. False
3. Internal LOBs can be stored in a tablespace that is different from the tablespace that stores the table containing the LOB column.
  - a. True
  - b. False

4. You issue the following command to create a table called LOB\_STORE:

```
CREATE TABLE lob_store
(lob_id NUMBER(3),
 photo BLOB DEFAULT EMPTY_CLOB(),
 cv CLOB DEFAULT NULL,
 ext_file BFILE DEFAULT NULL)
/
```

---

Identify the issue in the above script.

- a. The table is created successfully.
  - b. It generates an error because a BLOB column cannot be initialized with `EMPTY_CLOB()`.
  - c. It generates an error because `DEFAULT` cannot be set to `NULL` for a CLOB column during table creation.
  - d. It generates an error because `DEFAULT` cannot be set to `NULL` for a BFILE column during table creation.
5. Identify the correct statements about the initialization of LOBs.
- a. An internal LOB cannot be initialized in the `CREATE TABLE` statement.
  - b. The BFILE column can be initialized with the `EMPTY_BFILE()` constructor.
  - c. The `EMPTY_CLOB()` and `EMPTY_BLOB()` functions can be used to initialize both `NULL` and `NOT NULL` internal LOBs of CLOB and BLOB types.
  - d. Initialization is a mandatory step for LOB type columns.
6. Which two statements are true about the `FILEOPEN` subprogram in the `DBMS_LOB` package?
- a. `FILEOPEN` can be used to open only internal LOBs.
  - b. `FILEOPEN` can be used to open only external LOBs.
  - c. `FILEOPEN` cannot be used to open temporary LOBs.
  - d. `FILEOPEN` can be used to open internal and external LOBs.
7. Temporary LOBs can be shared among the users which are currently connected to the server.
- a. True
  - b. False
8. Identify the correct statements about BFILEs.
- a. A BFILE column in a table must be initialized with a dummy locator.
  - b. BFILEs cannot be used as attributes in an object type.
  - c. The `BFILE` data type is a read-only data type.
  - d. The external file still persists if the BFILE locator is deleted or modified.

9. Pick up the incorrect statements about the Temporary LOBs.
  - a. It resides in the user's temporary tablespace.
  - b. It can be used during LONG to LOB data type migration.
  - c. It can be persistent for SESSION, TRANSACTION, or CALL.
  - d. Temporary LOB of BFILE type can be created.

10. A table `SAMPLE_DATA` has the following structure:

```
Name Null? Type
-----
SD_ID NUMBER
SD_SOURCE BFILE
```

You update a row in the table using `UPDATE` statement as follows:

```
UPDATE sample_data
SET sd_source = BFILENAME('SD_FILE', 'sample.pdf')
WHERE sd_id = 448;
```

But you receive the error—ORA-22286: insufficient privileges—on file or directory to perform `FILEOPEN`.

What could be the probable cause of the error?

- a. The directory `SD_FILE` does not exist.
  - b. The file `sample.pdf` does not exist.
  - c. The user does not have the `READ` privilege on the directory.
  - d. The file `sample.pdf` is a read-only file.
11. Choose the correct statement regarding migration of the `LONG` column to `LOB`:
  - a. Use `DBMS_LOB.MIGRATE` to migrate `LONG` column data to `LOB` column.
  - b. Alter the table to modify `LONG` column type to `LOB` type.
  - c. A `LONG RAW` column can be migrated to `CLOB` column.
  - d. The `ALTER TABLE...MODIFY` statement doesn't allow manipulation of `LOB` storage parameters.
12. Choose the correct statement about the `BFILENAME` function:
  - a. It checks the existence of external file and reads, if exists.
  - b. It returns the `LOB` locator of the file which is located externally at the directory location.

- c. It can be used for operations on external LOBs only.
  - d. The output of the `BFILENAME` function is one of the LOB data types.
13. Choose the correct option(s) for the usage of LOB data types in Oracle 11g:
- a. BasicFiles are advanced LOBs which assure enhanced security and performance.
  - b. SecureFiles are advanced LOBs which assure enhanced security and performance.
  - c. LOB columns created prior to Oracle 11g cannot be migrated to SecureFiles.
  - d. Older LOBs would be retained as BasicFiles in Oracle 11g.

14. You create a table, MYLOB, using the following script:

```
create table MYLOB
(id number,
 doc clob);
```

Choose the correct statements from the following options:

- a. The script runs successfully and the MYLOB table is created with system generated LOB segment and LOB index.
- b. The system generated LOB segment can be queried in the `USER_SEGMENTS` view just after the `CREATE TABLE` statement is run.
- c. The table and the LOB are created in the default tablespace of the user.
- d. The `CREATE TABLE` statement raises an error as the LOB storage clause is missing in the `CREATE TABLE` script.



# 7

## Using SecureFile LOBs

Today, the application development has taken a new turn to catch up with the growing business. The application environments employ some of the best strategies to accommodate the varied nature of data. Surveys have revealed an astonishing estimation that the nonstructured data grows annually by 65 percent in a typical enterprise data-based application. This pace is accredited to the growing content digitization, boost up rich user experience, web based structures, and physical file storage requirements.

In the previous chapter, we learned the traditional storage of large objects in Oracle. Since its release in Oracle 8i, they have worked well and served at par with the systems' requirements until Oracle 10g. The earlier LOB storage philosophy was based on certain assumptions which by now, were transformed into limitations. These assumptions were as follows:

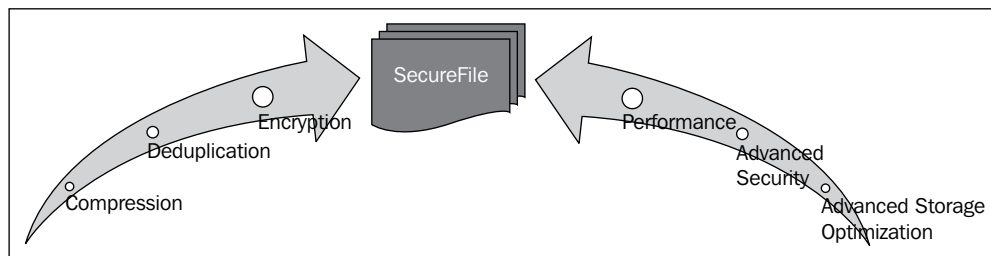
- Size of the large object was expected to be in MBs
- Large objects would be less transactional
- No Encryption support
- The uniform `CHUNK` size resulted in data fragmentation – hence the performance degrades
- No compatibility with Oracle RAC

Oracle 11g Release tried to cope up with the above limitations by evolving out a best in the world feature called SecureFiles. SecureFile is an enhanced implementation of traditional LOBs but with increased capability and secure data management. The chapter discusses about the SecureFile feature in Oracle 11g under the following topics.

- Introduction to SecureFiles
  - SecureFile LOB – understanding
  - SecureFile LOB features
- Working with SecureFiles
  - Enabling advanced features in SecureFiles
  - SecureFile metadata
- Migration from BasicFile to SecureFile
  - Online Redefinition method

## Introduction to SecureFiles

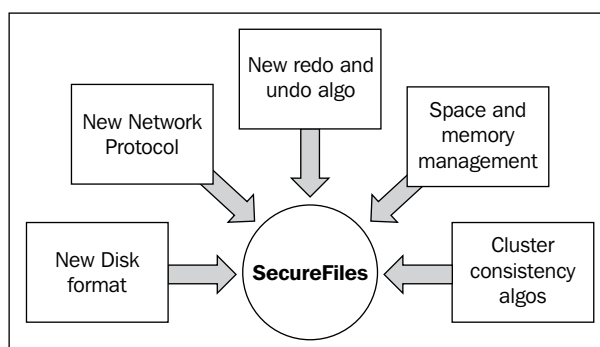
Oracle 11g Release 1 introduced SecureFiles to recoup the limitations of conventional LOBs in Oracle. The special engineered implementation of SecureFiles enables enhanced performance, data security, and better storage optimization. The induction of SecureFiles does not mean the extinction of older LOBs, instead older LOBs still live with the name BasicFiles. The feature SecureFile has arrived as a superset of LOBs in Oracle. Consequently, older LOBs, alias BasicFiles, can be smoothly migrated to SecureFiles. Hereby, we shall refer to older LOBs as BasicFiles only:



The SecureFile feature fuels up the database paradigms with advanced security and advanced storage options. A SecureFile can be independently enabled for transparent encryption, compression, and deduplication which contribute to its security and intelligence. The best part of SecureFiles is that, now no more different modeling strategies have to be adopted for structured data (relational) and nonstructured data (large objects). With SecureFiles, the application can manage relational and large object data under a single data model, single security model, and with uniform data management principles.

## SecureFile LOB—an overview

The term SecureFile barely declares its objective that is, securing files within the database. Though storing files in the database was possible in earlier versions of Oracle too, the enhancement in Oracle 11g directs the focus to the enhanced storage scheme and packed security policy. Oracle 11g aims and works with a high level content management strategy to maintain the enterprise data. The enterprise data can come in a structured or unstructured form. This unification of data management architecture (rather re-architecture) has staged-up the storage platforms for large objects and relational data in the database. In this section, we will discuss certain architectural enhancements which build up SecureFiles for high performance, efficient storage, tight security, and convenient manageability:



## Architectural enhancements in SecureFiles

SecureFiles provide a wide infrastructure in the Oracle database to ensure secure storage of all enterprise content. Notice that it does not resolve any LOB failures but strengthens the storage mechanism of large objects in the Oracle database. This strength of SecureFiles lies in its architectural enhancements. Let us take a brief glance on the architectural components:

- **Write Gather Cache (WGC):** A new cache memory component caches the SecureFile data up to 4 MB before writing the data on the disk. The cached data is flushed-off either during `COMMIT` operations or implicitly by the Oracle server before the cache limit is reached. The WGC component is a part of the buffer cache. The WGC enhancement optimizes the space allocation of the LOB files inside the database (on the disk) and reduces the LOB write time by retaining it in the buffer.



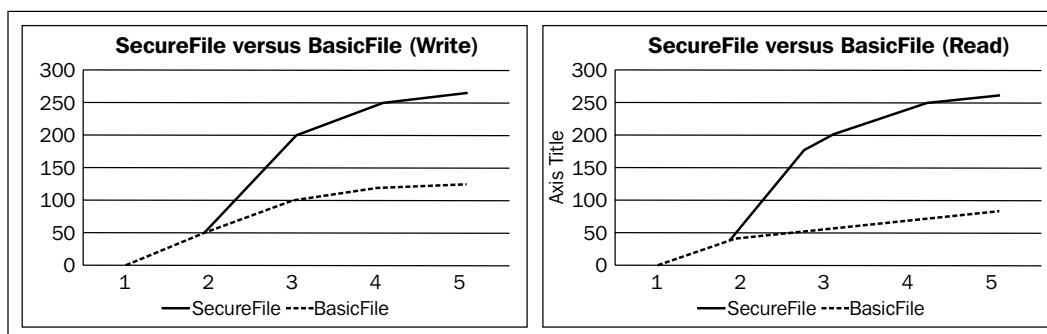
A transaction uses only one WGC for all SecureFiles.

- **Transformation management:** The LOB transformation features are ensured by the advanced compression and security options. The advanced compression option implements deduplication and compression features, while the advanced security option guarantees encryption of the LOB data.
- **Variable `CHUNK` size:** The fixed `CHUNK` size was a major drawback of BasicFiles. The uniform `CHUNK` size used to work well for smaller data but it failed for large sized files. Subject to the frequency of read operations, a large file can be downloaded multiple times and a small fixed `CHUNK` size could fragment the LOB data. SecureFiles uses variable `CHUNK` size (specified by the user) for storage and reading purposes of SecureFiles which internally allocates variable space on the disk depending on the file size.
- **Enhanced Inode and Space management:** SecureFiles could be staged only on **Automatic Segment Space Management (ASSM)** tablespaces. The Inode manager initiates the LOB data storage activity and requests the ondisk space to hold the data. Space management takes care of allocation and de-allocation of disk space. The Dynamic Space Manager intelligently handles the allocation operations. It can block an allocation for write operations or gathering up the space released from delete actions.

- **Prefetching:** The fact looks intelligent that the LOB data would be prefetched before the actual request has been made. This is made possible by maintaining the file access patterns for each file. Based upon the access frequency, the LOB data is fetched before the request. This intellectual upgrade improves performance of the read operation and avoids network congestion during read requests.
- **No LOB index and high water mark contention:** Unlike the participation of the LOB index in BasicFiles, SecureFiles do not have any index association for access navigation and space allocation operations. It might hit the performance in **online transaction processing (OLTP)** environments, but SecureFiles have eliminated such possibilities by cutting off the dependency on the LOB indexes. SecureFiles deploy the data blocks itself for the LOB operations. Similarly, if an LOB data is deleted, the freed space will be claimed by the Oracle server automatically. For this reason, SecureFiles are not impacted from the high water mark contention.

Besides the above architectural considerations, few enhancements were made regarding the transfer of the LOB data over the network channel. A new network protocol would now shoulder the responsibility of reading and writing the LOB data in bulk directly between the client and the server. In addition, the parameter specification list has been reduced by strengthening the internal implementation of the SecureFiles. The setting of `FREELIST`, `FREELIST GROUPS`, `PCTVERSION`, and `FREEPOOLS` is not required to make the SecureFiles an intelligent self-managed feature.

The following graphs compare the performance of the SecureFile against the BasicFile. In these graphs, the file size has been mapped against the Network Transfer Rate.



These graphs conclude that performance of write operations for large files can be improved by three times with SecureFiles. Similarly, the read performance of the LOB data can be raised by four times with SecureFiles.

## SecureFile LOB features

Apart from the logical features, the practical features are as follows:

- SecureFiles are supported in Oracle versions in and above the compatibility 11.1 and offers wide range capabilities such as deduplication, compression, encryption, logging, and version maintenance as expected from a filesystem. Note that deduplication and compression features are the part of the licensed Oracle advanced compression option.
- SecureFiles support **Transparent Data Encryption (TDE)** which was not available with older LOBs. Note that the encryption feature is part of the licensed Oracle advanced security option.
- The SecureFile feature is governed by a system initialization parameter `db_securefile`. The admissible values of the parameter can be `PERMITTED`, `ALWAYS`, `FORCE`, `NEVER`, and `IGNORE`.
- SecureFiles can be created only on the ASSM tablespace. By default, Oracle 11g enables ASSM in all its tablespaces. Check the value of the column `SEGMENT_SPACE_MANAGEMENT` in `DBA_TABLESPACES` view to determine the type `[AUTO | MANUAL]` setting of a tablespace.
- Besides the basic logging options, `LOGGING` and `NOLOGGING`, a new logging level called `FILESYSTEM_LIKE_LOGGING`, has been introduced exclusively for SecureFile LOBs to log only metadata changes. The new logging level allows for the recovery of LOB segments during database failures.



For `FILESYSTEM_LIKE_LOGGING`, SecureFile LOB must be in `NOCACHE` mode.

- Older LOBs, that is BasicFiles, can be migrated to SecureFiles using Online Redefinition or the Partition method. The SecureFile features cannot be imposed upon an existing database column or a partition.
- SecureFiles are easily accessible from client interfaces too (using JDBC/ODBC).
- SecureFiles can be integrated with XML DB, Oracle Spatial, Oracle Multimedia, and Oracle UCM.

## Working with SecureFiles

Before discussing the implementation of advanced features in SecureFiles, we will see the creation of a SecureFile. The LOB clause makes the difference in the CREATE TABLE statement and decides whether the LOB has to behave as a BasicFile or SecureFile.

The interpreting behavior of the Oracle server depends upon a newly introduced parameter called `db_securefile`. It can accept the values as follows:

- **PERMITTED:** This value allows DBA to create SecureFiles in the system of appropriate compatibility that is 11.1 and higher. It is the default value setting for the `db_securefile` parameter.
- **ALWAYS:** Apart from normal SecureFiles, all BasicFiles on ASSM tablespaces are also treated as SecureFiles. But BasicFiles, which are created on a non-ASSM tablespace, are still BasicFiles.
- **FORCE:** All LOB columns (both with SecureFile and BasicFile specifications) are forced to be created as SecureFiles only. It does not allow any LOB column to be created on a non-ASSM tablespace.
- **NEVER:** This value restricts the creation of SecureFiles.
- **IGNORE:** It ignores the creation of SecureFiles. All LOB columns are created as BasicFiles.

The parameter can be set using ALTER [SYSTEM | SESSION] command. For new installations, the parameter must be set as **ALWAYS**, as shown in the following code snippet:

```
CONN sys/system as SYSDBA
Connected.
ALTER SYSTEM SET DB_SECUREFILE=ALWAYS
/
System altered
```

Similarly, in **SESSION**, the SecureFile feature can be enabled, as shown in the following code snippet:

```
ALTER SESSION SET DB_SECUREFILE=PERMITTED
/
```

Once the parameter is set, the Oracle server gets adapted to the appropriate behavior. The LOB clause in the CREATE TABLE statements has undergone the following modification:

```
LOB (COLUMN_NAME)
STORE AS [SECUREFILE | BASICFILE]
{STORAGE PARAMETERS [DUPLICATE | COMPRESS | ENCRYPTION]}
```

From the syntax you can see that there are three new parameters to explicitly define the intelligence level of the Oracle server. The advanced features such as compression, deduplication, and encryption has to be specified in the LOB storage clause. By default, the features are disabled.

The CREATE TABLE statement creates a table called EMP\_LOB\_SECFILE which includes an image and profile of an employee. Note the LOB specification as a SecureFile. By default, the LOB segments are staged at the default tablespace for the current user. However, a different ASSM-enabled tablespace can be specified against the LOB storage clause.

Let us first check the current settings of the db\_securefile parameter at the database server:

```
/*Connect as sysdba*/
CONN sys/system as SYSDBA
Connected.
/*Check the current setting of db_securefile*/
show parameter db_securefile
```

NAME	TYPE	VALUE
db_securefile	string	PERMITTED

Execute the CREATE TABLE script in the ORADEV user:

```
/*Connect as ORADEV user*/
CONN ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.
/*Create the table with SecureFile option*/
CREATE TABLE EMP_LOB_SECFILE
(
    empid NUMBER,
    deptno NUMBER,
    image BLOB,
    profile CLOB
)
```

```

LOB(image) STORE AS SECUREFILE
LOB (profile) STORE AS SECUREFILE
/
Table created.

```

Now, let us see how the Oracle server maintains the SecureFile metadata.

## SecureFile metadata

The SECUREFILE column in DBA\_LOBS determines whether the LOB column is a SecureFile or BasicFile:

```

/*Connect as sysdba*/
CONN sys/system as SYSDBA
Connected.
/*Query the DBA_LOBS for the new table*/
SELECT
    column_name,
    segment_name,
    encrypt,
    compression,
    deduplication,
    securefile
FROM DBA_LOBS
WHERE table_name='EMP_LOB_SECFILE'
/

```

COLUMN_NAME	SEGMENT_NAME	ENCR	COMPRESS	DEDUPLICATION	SEC
IMAGE	SYS_LOB0000080854C00003\$\$	NO	NO	NO	YES
PROFILE	SYS_LOB0000080854C00004\$\$	NO	NO	NO	YES

Now, the above segment can be queried in the DBA\_SEGMENTS dictionary view as follows:

```

/*Connect as sysdba*/
CONN sys/system AS SYSDBA
Connected.
/*Query the segment view for SecureFile LOB segment*/
SELECT
    owner,
    segment_type,
    segment_subtype,

```

```
    tablespace_name
FROM DBA_SEGMENTS
WHERE segment_name='SYS_LOB0000080854C00004$$'
/
```

OWNER	SEGMENT_TYPE	SEGMENT_SU	TABLESPACE_NAME
ORADEV	LOBSEGMENT	SECUREFILE	USERS

Note the value of the `segment_subtype` column in the view. It reflects the purpose behind the creation of a segment for a SecureFile. The `USERS` tablespace is the default ASSM-enabled tablespace of the `ORADEV` user. The violation of this rule raises the following exception:

```
ORA-43853: SECUREFILE lob cannot be used in non-ASSM tablespace
"Tablespace_Name"
```

Besides the above dictionary views, SecureFile metadata for partitions can be queried from `DBA_PART_LOBS` and `DBA_LOB_PARTITIONS`.

The read/write operations on the SecureFile columns are exactly the same as described earlier. It involves creation of a database directory object, LOB locator, and LOB data. It has been already demonstrated in the last chapter.

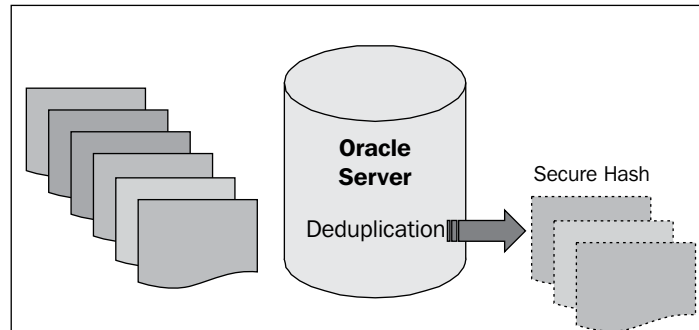
## Enabling advanced features in SecureFiles

As we learned earlier in this chapter, the SecureFiles implementation has been highly focused to raise storage and security levels. The transformation management features – deduplication, compression, and encryption – are exclusively available for SecureFiles. Thus, they get added-up to the database advanced compression and security features. Let us pick up these features individually, demonstrate their working, and learn their impacts.

### Deduplication

With this feature enabled for the SecureFile, the Oracle server prevents the duplication of the LOB data in a table or a partition. The Intelligent LOB Manager in Oracle 11g maintains a unique secure hash for all the files. An incoming LOB data is checked against all the available secure hash codes. If the match is successful, the hash code reference is retained against the table row. Thus, multiple insert attempts of a single file in the database are detected and a single copy is stored in the database. On an unsuccessful match, the LOB data is stored on the disk.

The deduplication feature improves the write operations and demonstrates the optimized disk space management. Imagine that the performance boosts up when one has to make 10 copies of each of the available files in the database and there are no physical write operations on the disk. Refer to the following screenshot:



The feature can be enabled by including the `DEDUPLICATE | KEEP_DUPLICATES` keyword in the LOB storage clause. An existing SecureFile column can be modified to enable or disable the deduplication feature:

```
ALTER TABLE [TABLE NAME]
MODIFY LOB (COLUMN NAME)
(KEEP_DUPLICATES | DEDUPLICATE)
```

The `DEDUPLICATE` keyword enables the feature while `KEEP_DUPLICATES` disables it. Its working is transparent to the users. Let us enable the deduplication feature in the `EMP_LOB_SECFILE` table for the `IMAGE` column:

```
ALTER TABLE emp_lob_secfile
MODIFY LOB(image) (DEDUPLICATE)
/
```

Table altered.

## Compression

The SecureFile compression feature introduces server-side compression of the unstructured data. Once again, like deduplication, the feature is a member of Oracle's advanced compression options. The Oracle server is intelligent enough to perceive the benefits of the SecureFile compression. If the impact can make a big difference in storage management, the LOB data is compressed. Otherwise, compression is disabled for the LOB data and is stored as actual. The compression feature brings in reduced I/O on the disk, minimal overhead of encryption, and redo generation.



Table compression plays no role in the SecureFile compression.

The compression feature can be enabled by specifying the `COMPRESS [degree]` during the SecureFile specification in the `CREATE TABLE` statement. Alternatively, an existing column can be modified using the `ALTER TABLE` statement as follows:

```
ALTER TABLE [TABLE NAME]
MODIFY LOB (COLUMN NAME)
(
    [COMPRESS {HIGH | MEDIUM | LOW} | NOCOMPRESS]
)
```

The `COMPRESS` keyword enables the server-side compression to use industry-standard compression algorithms. The compression degree `[HIGH | MEDIUM]` is responsible for latency in the data. `MEDIUM` is the default compression level. The `NOCOMPRESS` mode disables the feature for the upcoming LOB data.

The `PROFILE` column in `EMP_LOB_SECFILE` can be compressed at the highest degree as follows:

```
ALTER TABLE emp_lob_secfile
MODIFY LOB(profile) (COMPRESS HIGH)
/

Table altered.
```

## Encryption

For the first time, large objects in the database can be encrypted under **transparent data encryption (TDE)** algorithm. The advanced security feature encrypts the data (at the block level), backup, and redo file on the disk. The database maintains the encryption keys which are independent of the applications. The SecureFile supports the following encryption algorithms:

- **3DES168**: Triple data encryption standard with 168 bit key size
- **AES128**: Advanced data encryption standard with 128 bit key size
- **AES192** (default): Advanced data encryption standard with 192 bit key size
- **AES256**: Advanced data encryption standard with 256 bit key size



SYS-owned LOB columns cannot be encrypted using TDE algorithms.

A table can be altered to enable the encryption of a LOB column:

```
ALTER TABLE [TABLE NAME]
MODIFY LOB (COLUMN NAME)
(
    [ENCRYPT USING {ALGORITHM NAME} | DECRYPT]
)
OR
ALTER TABLE [TABLE NAME]
MODIFY
(
    Column_Name [ENCRYPT USING {ALGORITHM NAME} | DECRYPT]
)
```

The `ENCRYPT` keyword enables the encryption while the `DECRYPT` option disables it. A column can be encrypted only once.

The TDE algorithm is an encryption system which encrypts the column's value with a confidential key. An encrypted key can hold multiple encrypted columns of the same table. There exists a second level of security where the column keys are again encrypted with the database's master key. But note that none of the keys are stored in the database. They reside within an Oracle wallet. An encryption wallet has to be set as an external security module before enabling the feature for the LOB column. The steps to encrypt the SecureFiles in a system are as follows:

1. Creating a wallet directory:

Create the wallet directory (`C:\ExternalSecurity\Wallets\`) to store the TDE wallet. The default wallet directory is `$ORACLE_HOME\admin\[global_db_name]\wallet\`. Oracle manages the default wallet location implicitly. However, a new wallet working directory can be created to explicitly manage the wallet operations and encryption activities.

It is the wallet location which is interpreted during the encryption process.

2. Editing the `SQLNET.ora` file:

Add the `ENCRYPTION_WALLET_LOCATION` entry in the `SQLNET.ora` file. The `SQLNET.ora` file can be found at `$ORACLE_HOME\network\admin\` directory. Take a backup and register the net setting, as shown in the following code snippet, for the encryption location. This step is required only if a nondefault wallet directory has been created.

The DIRECTORY parameter value must be set as the wallet directory path created in the step 1:

```
ENCRYPTION_WALLET_LOCATION=
(
  SOURCE= (METHOD=FILE)
  (
    METHOD_DATA= (DIRECTORY= <<Wallet location>>)
  )
)
```

3. Reloading the Listener using the RELOAD command to adopt the SQLNET changes:

```
C:\>LSNRCTL
LSNRCTL for 32-bit Windows: Version 11.2.0.1.0 - Production on 15-
JAN-2012 23:07:21
Copyright (c) 1991, 2010, Oracle. All rights reserved.
Welcome to LSNRCTL, type "help" for information.
LSNRCTL> RELOAD
Connecting to (DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=IPC)
(KEY=EXTPROC1521)))
The command completed successfully
LSNRCTL>
```

4. Logging in as SYSDBA to set the encryption key and its password:

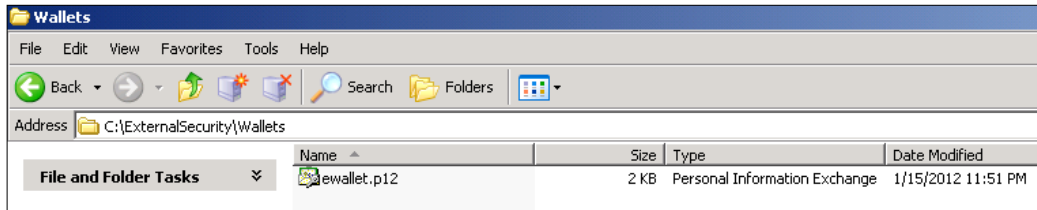
The ALTER SYSTEM command generates a new wallet at the wallet location. This command will also open the wallet by default and make it ready for use:

```
/*Connect as sysdba*/
CONN sys/system as SYSDBA
Connected.

/*Alter the SYSTEM to set the encryption key*/
ALTER system SET ENCRYPTION KEY IDENTIFIED BY "mywallets"
/

System altered.
```

Once the encryption key is set, the **ewallet.p12** file is generated in the **Wallets** directory. It results into generation of a new master key which is now the active master key. It resides within the wallet along with the earlier inactive master keys:



One can explicitly open the wallet using the following command:

```
/*Alter the SYSTEM to open the encryption wallet*/
ALTER system SET ENCRYPTION WALLET OPEN IDENTIFIED BY "mywallets"
/

System altered.
```

The wallet directory location and current status can be queried from `V$ENCRYPTION_WALLET`:

```
/*Connect as sysdba*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.

/*Query the wallet information*/
SQL> SELECT *
      FROM v$encryption_wallet
/
```

WRL_TYPE	WRL_PARAMETER	STATUS
file	C:\ExternalSecurity\Wallets	OPEN

##### 5. Altering the table to encrypt the SecureFile:

```
/*Connect to ORADEV user*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected

/*Alter the table to encrypt the IMAGE column*/
ALTER TABLE emp_lob_secfile
MODIFY
(
  image ENCRYPT USING 'AES192'
)
/

Table altered.
```

The encrypted columns can be verified by querying the Oracle data dictionary view `USER_ENCRYPTED_COLUMNS`:

```
/*Query the table to verify the encrypted column details*/
SQL> SELECT column_name, encryption_alg, salt
FROM USER_ENCRYPTED_COLUMNS
WHERE table_name='EMP_LOB_SECUREFILE';
```

COLUMN_NAME	ENCRYPTION_ALG	SAL
-----	-----	---
IMAGE	AES 192 bits key	YES

The table carrying the encrypted column(column) cannot participate in a conventional export or import process. But the data pump rescues the situation by supporting encrypted exports and imports.

## Migration from BasicFiles to SecureFiles

The older LOBs are archived under the BasicFiles category. Note that they are not extinct or obsolete, but are less effective after the induction of the SecureFiles feature. A new system can adopt the SecureFiles as a new table or a new partition. What about the older data which follows costly implementation and has no security? It must inherit the new philosophy, so as to unify the system in terms of data security and management. For this reason, several migration techniques have been jotted-out to upgrade the BasicFile data to the SecureFile. We will briefly discuss these methods:

- **Online Redefinition method:** It is one of the highly recommended methods to move the BasicFile data. A table or a partition of a table can be redefined to achieve the migration from the BasicFile to the SecureFile. It is a secure and convenient method where the database remains up during the complete process.
- **Partition method:** Usually, this method is preferred in low prioritized environments where older LOB data can be axed for performance. The two migration strategies under this method are as follows:
  - **New SecureFile partition:** A new partition with SecureFile specifications can be added to a partitioned table so as to reap the feature benefits in future. Older partitions can still hold the LOB data as a BasicFile.
  - **Create a new partitioned table:** If the source table is a non partitioned one, a new partitioned table can be created with two partitions. The first partition holds the older LOB data as a BasicFile while the second partition holds the new LOB data as a SecureFile.

Within the scope of this chapter, we will discuss the Online Redefinition method.

## Online Redefinition method

The Online Redefinition method is a highly preferred method for the BasicFile to the SecureFile migration. It employs the Oracle built-in package `DBMS_REDEFINITION` to achieve the purpose. While the redefinition process is alive, the advanced compression and security operations are carried out simultaneously during the process. Let us illustrate a case where we will move the BasicFile LOB data to SecureFiles.

During this process, we will create a new table with the desired configuration and specification (SecureFile and its advanced options). On the completion of this process, we can find our original table which has been redefined in synchronization with the new table. The table properties have been exchanged and the newly created table can now be dropped or retained for the backup options.

Pre-requisites of the Online Redefinition method:

- The Online Redefinition process requires free space on the disk (at least equal to the source table to be migrated).
- The original table (source) must have a primary key.
- The source and target tables must have the same structure.
- The target table should not have any indexes.

For demonstration, we will use a table `READY_FOR_MIGRATION` which stores a CLOB column in the BasicFile orientation. The following code snippet shows the structure and sample data in the table:

```
/*Table structure*/
SQL> DESC ready_for_migration
```

Name	Null?	Type
ID	NOT NULL	NUMBER
DOC		CLOB

```
/*Sample data*/
SQL> SELECT * FROM ready_for_migration;
```

ID	DOC
1	Oracle 9i
2	Oracle 10g
3	Oracle 11g

The steps to migrate the LOB columns of the table READY\_FOR\_MIGRATION to SecureFiles are as follows:

1. Verifying the BasicFile nature of READY\_FOR\_MIGRATION:

```
/*Query the USER_LOBS view to check the status of LOB column*/
SELECT column_name, securefile
FROM user_lobs
WHERE table_name='READY_FOR_MIGRATION'
/
```

COLUMN_NAM	SEC
DOC	NO

2. Creating a table to support the migration activity:

Now, let us migrate its data into our SecureFiles table TARGET\_FOR\_MIGRATION which has the same structure as the READY\_FOR\_MIGRATION table. Verify the SecureFile feature from the dictionary view:

```
/*Table structure*/
CREATE TABLE target_for_migration
(id NUMBER,
 doc CLOB)
LOB(doc) STORE AS SECUREFILE
/
```

Table created.

```
/*Query the USER_LOBS view to check the status of LOB column*/
SQL> SELECT column_name, securefile
      FROM user_lobs
      WHERE table_name='TARGET_FOR_MIGRATION';
```

COLUMN_NAM	SEC
DOC	YES

3. Starting the redefinition process using the DBMS\_REDEFINITION package:

```
/*Login as SYSDBA*/
Conn sys/system as SYSDBA
Connected.
```

```
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
L_ERROR PLS_INTEGER := 0;
BEGIN
```

```

/*Specify source and target tables for redefinition*/
DBMS_REDEFINITION.START_REDEF_TABLE
('ORADEV', 'READY_FOR_MIGRATION', 'TARGET_FOR_MIGRATION',
'id id,
doc doc');

/*Specify source and target tables for copying the dependents*/
DBMS_REDEFINITION.COPY_TABLE_DEPENDENTS
('ORADEV', 'READY_FOR_MIGRATION', 'TARGET_FOR_MIGRATION',1,
true,true,true,false, L_ERROR);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Errors := ' || TO_CHAR(L_ERROR));

/*Finish the redefinition process*/
DBMS_REDEFINITION.FINISH_REDEF_TABLE
('ORADEV', 'READY_FOR_MIGRATION', 'TARGET_FOR_MIGRATION');
END;
/

```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

Use DBMS\_REDEFINITION.ABORT\_REDEF\_TABLE to abort the redefinition process of a table, if you encounter ORA-23539: table "ORADEV"."READY\_FOR\_MIGRATION" currently being redefined exception.

#### 4. Verifying the SECUREFILE property for the READY\_FOR\_MIGRATION table:

```

/*Query the USER_LOBS view to check the status of LOB column*/
SQL> SELECT column_name, securefile
FROM USER_LOBS
WHERE TABLE_NAME='READY_FOR_MIGRATION'
/

COLUMN_NAME          SEC
-----
DOC                  YES

/*Verify the data*/
SQL> SELECT * FROM READY_FOR_MIGRATION;

      ID      DOC
-----
      1      Oracle 9i
      2      Oracle 10g
      3      Oracle 11g

```

Now READY\_FOR\_MIGRATION has been migrated from the BasicFile to the SecureFile storage. The TARGET\_FOR\_MIGRATION table inherits the table properties from the original table during the redefinition. Its LOB columns now follow BasicFile orientation. Now, check the LOB column type in the table:

```
/*Query the USER_LOBS view to check the status of LOB column*/
SQL> SELECT column_name, securefile
FROM USER_LOBS
WHERE TABLE_NAME='TARGET_FOR_MIGRATION'
/
```

COLUMN_NAME	SEC
DOC	NO

The Online Redefinition method is a verified and trusted method to migrate older LOB data to SecureFiles. It does not hamper the work in progress as the redefinition can be achieved while the table and database is online.

## Summary

This chapter explained a new orientation of LOB handling in Oracle. It is introduced in Oracle 11g R1 and known as SecureFile. The chapter explained the concept and its architectural enhancements. We learned the working of SecureFiles and its advanced features. We understood the enabling of the compression, deduplication, and encryption features. Finally, we covered the migration of BasicFile LOBs to SecureFile LOBs to reap the benefits of a sparsing feature.

Since implementation of a filesystem in the database is not limited with the introduction of Oracle SecureFiles, further reading should be continued to realize the strengths and application of SecureFiles. Implications of SecureFiles can be observed in RAC environments, information lifecycle management, **database filesystem (DBFS)**, and content management schemes. Further reading can be continued from the following links:

- <http://www.oracle.com/technology/products/database/oracle11g/pdf/advanced-compression-whitepaper.pdf>
- [http://www.oracle.com/technology/obe/11gr1\\_db/datamgmt/securefile/securefile.htm](http://www.oracle.com/technology/obe/11gr1_db/datamgmt/securefile/securefile.htm)
- <http://www.oracle.com/technology/products/database/securefiles/index.html>

In the next chapter, we will learn the compilation techniques in Oracle and multiple performance tuning tips.

## Practice exercise

1. Which of the following are true statements about the SecureFiles?
  - a. It requires ASSM-enabled tablespace.
  - b. A BFILE type column in a table can be declared as SecureFiles.
  - c. A SecureFile is not affected by the LOB index contention.
  - d. SecureFiles use a new cache component of the buffer cache to hold the LOB data.
2. Identify the incorrect statement about the compression feature in SecureFiles.
  - a. Compression might hit performance during the LOB write operation.
  - b. Compression of SecureFiles is a part of the advanced compression feature in Oracle.
  - c. Possible degrees of compression can be MEDIUM and HIGH.
  - d. Oracle compresses all the LOB data at high priority, if the feature has been enabled for a SecureFile.
3. The compression feature can be enabled only for encrypted SecureFiles.
  - a. True
  - b. False
4. A compressed table having a SecureFile column will automatically enable compression for SecureFiles.
  - a. True
  - b. False
5. Identify the true statements about the deduplication feature of SecureFiles.
  - a. KEEP\_DUPLICATES is the default option.
  - b. DEDUPLICATE retains one copy of the duplicate LOB data.
  - c. The deduplication feature hits the performance in write operations as the server compares the secure hash code with the available hash codes before writing to the disk.
  - d. Deduplication of files is performed on the basis of the filenames.

6. Pick the correct statement for the encryption feature in the SecureFile.
  - a. SecureFile encryption keys are stored within the table.
  - b. SecureFile encryption keys are stored within the database.
  - c. SecureFile encryption keys are stored outside the database.
  - d. Encryption algorithms cannot be modified for an encrypted SecureFile column.
7. Which of the following statements are true for the BasicFile to the SecureFile migration in oracle?
  - a. BasicFile to the SecureFile migration can be done through data pump operation.
  - b. Table redefinition is preferred as it does the migration with all the resources connected online.
  - c. The DBMS\_REDEFINITION package can migrate only one LOB column at a time.
  - d. Unnecessary space consumption makes the redefinition process less preferable over partition method.

# 8

## Compiling and Tuning to Improve Performance

The code compilation philosophy is one of the transparent activities in a programming language which latently influences a program's execution performance. Oracle 11g has introduced the real native compilation to cope with the bitter experiences of native and interpreted compilation techniques. Besides the compiler enhancement, Oracle 11g has introduced a new optimization level which brings terrific improvements in database performance by fueling up the optimizer's intelligence. Furthermore, the intra unit inlining feature applies an optimization level to assure logical gains in PL/SQL code performance by inlining local subprogram invocations in program calls. In this chapter, we will learn the best practices and recommendations to improvise upon the PL/SQL code performance. The topics to be covered in this chapter are as follows:

- Compiler enhancements
  - Native and interpreted compilation – background
  - Real native compilation in PL/SQL
- Tuning PL/SQL code
- Intra unit inlining
- Effect of `PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL`
- `PRAGMA INLINE`

## **Native and interpreted compilation techniques**

In basic terms, a language compiler converts the program code (in high level language) to a machine code (also known as M code or byte code), which can be understood by the machine runtime engine. Once the database is installed and ready for use, code compilation turns out to be a transparent activity to the users.

Until the release of Oracle9i, Oracle relied on an interpretable method of compilation of its database program units. A compiler in interpreted mode converts a PL/SQL program into machine code, stores in the database, and interprets upon its invocation. Oracle9i brought the revolutionary change in the compilation philosophy by introducing native compilation. But a question popped up amongst the DBAs and developers, "Is native compilation really more effective than an interpreted compilation?" An interpreted mode of compilation was not supported by RAC and backups.

It was the time when Oracle identified code compilation technique as a potential area of research and enhancement. Subsequently, Oracle 10g made underlying changes in native compilation with the use of C compiler. Native compilation now uses C compiler to convert the PL/SQL program into a C code, generates sharable library (DLL), and places them in the database catalog. In Oracle 10g, native compilation supports RAC environments. For database backups, the libraries are required to be mounted in a filesystem for the operating system utilities. The filesystem staging was being carried out with the help of the initialization parameters, `PLSQL_NATIVE_LIBRARY_DIR` and `PLSQL_NATIVE_LIBRARY_SUBDIR_COUNT`, which were set by the DBA. It was well-received but could not convincingly respond to the floating question.

Both the compilation processes follow almost similar paths but the major difference between the two is the code scanning. In the interpreted mode, the code scanning process is carried out during runtime, while in native mode it is carried out at the time of the compilation itself. This shifting of the code scanning process credits to the runtime performance of a natively compiled program unit by some extent, depending upon the code size and implementation. One cannot promise the performance of a natively compiled code over interpreted in all cases.

Note that the PL/SQL compilation has employed the services of C compiler to generate C code and link it to a sharable library module. Though the native compilation has been technically accepted, the reliability and reluctance with the C compiler (for which production databases have been reluctant to pay licenses) on production servers has daunted the users. In addition, maintenance of multiple compilation initialization parameters used to be a cumbersome job for DBAs.

Oracle 11g has reformed the native compilation as real native compilation with minimal settings.

## Real native compilation

For the previously mentioned reasons, Oracle introduced real native compilation in Oracle 11g. The real native compilation technique compiles the PL/SQL program code directly into DLLs and stores the native machine code in the `SYSTEM` tablespace. In this way, the step where libraries are to be mounted on a filesystem has been bypassed. Whenever the program is invoked for the first time in a session, the corresponding machine code is placed in the shared memory. Thereafter, it can be readily invoked and used.

Let us examine the accomplishments of real native compilation:

- There is no dependency on C Compiler.
- Native byte code is stored in the `SYSTEM` tablespace.
- No sharable DLL is involved. So, no filesystem is required for DLL.
- Configuration works with a single parameter called `PLSQL_CODE_TYPE` [native/interpreted].
- In the `INTERPRETED` mode, the PL/SQL code is compiled to the equivalent byte code. At runtime, the PL/SQL interpreter engine executes them.
- In `NATIVE` mode, the PL/SQL code is compiled to the machine code. At runtime, the machine code is executed natively by the database server.
- Better runtime performance, two times faster than C native compilation. The interesting fact is that the selection of the compilation scheme depends upon the database development phase.
- Real native is used for PL/SQL codes. A program with an SQL statement might not yield the best performance but not the worst too.
- Real native compilation mode can be set at system level, session level, and object level. A natively compiled program unit can call an interpreted program and vice versa.

## Selecting the appropriate compilation mode

The appropriate selection of the compilation mode is a crucial activity of a DBA. The question, "Native or interpreted?", hovers across the phases of the database development cycle which has to be intelligently handled by the administrator. The reason why this question pops up here is because of the demands at each stage. During the development phase, the program units are frequently debugged, compiled, and tested. Therefore, code compilation is expected to be fast. Program units compile faster in interpreted mode because the partially compiled code is interpreted at runtime. Similarly, during the post development stage, the program units are compiled and tested and it is the time to pay off the efforts in the development stage. Program unit execution is expected to be fast. Natively compiled units execute faster than those compiled in interpreted mode. Thus, native compilation mode is suitable for the post development stage.

Summarizing up this explanation, native mode aims to boost up the program execution time and interpreted mode raises the code compilation performance.

Usually, the setting can be made in the design phase and modified in the development stages. The active development stage of the database and the programmable logic are decisive for the selection of the exact compilation mode. For this reason, the compilation modes share intercompatibility – program units compiled in different compilation modes can exist together in a schema and invoke each other, as required. Since the compilation modes affect the execution time, these calls do not make any impact on the performance.

## When to choose interpreted compilation mode?

The interpreted mode of compilation is preferred in the development stage of the database cycle. It is the stage where the program units are recompiled frequently to test various scenarios. Here, the strengths of a debugger are more desirable than the execution speed of a program. There might be cases to debug the code at optimization level 0 or 1, where native compilation is passive. The interpreted compilation mode is faster than the native mode compilation. Execution performance of a program can be raised through multiple code tuning techniques. In addition, interpreted mode mostly suits the programs which accommodate multiple SQL statements. The reason is accredited to the proportion of SQL to the interpretations. More number of SQL need more time for interpretation. Since native compilation does interpretation during runtime, it can adversely affect the performance.

## When to choose native compilation mode?

The native mode of compilation is preferred when a step is out of the development stage where program compilation is quite rare. It is the stage when the user expects the program execution to be fast. The optimization level and compilation mode are expected to be fixed.

The native compilation mode is mainly for the PL/SQL program units which have computational or transformational logic. A program having plenty of SQL statements might reduce the performance in native mode because of the reason stated in the previous topic. For program units which do not require context switching across the SQL and PL/SQL engines, native compilation could make handy differences in performance.

## Setting the compilation mode

The compilation method can be set using the `PLSQL_CODE_TYPE` parameter. The admissible values for the parameter are `INTERPRETED` and `NATIVE`. It can be set using the `ALTER SYSTEM` or `ALTER SESSION` statement.

At the Database level, the change is applied to the entire database and it is permanent:

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET PLSQL_CODE_TYPE = [NATIVE | INTERPRETED]
```

At the Session level, the change is applied to the database only for the current session:

```
ALTER SESSION SET PLSQL_CODE_TYPE = [NATIVE | INTERPRETED]
```

The DBA sets the compilation method to be followed in the database by setting the `PLSQL_CODE_TYPE` initialization parameter:

```
/*Connect as sysdba*/
Conn sys/system as SYSDBA
Connected.
/*Set the PLSQL_CODE_TYPE*/
ALTER SYSTEM SET PLSQL_CODE_TYPE = NATIVE
/

System altered.
```

Whenever the compilation method for the database or session is altered, the programs retain their compilation state until they are recompiled so as to inherit the latest compilation mode. Once they are recompiled, they adopt the current session compilation method.

## Querying the compilation settings

Compilation settings can be queried from the data dictionary view [USER | DBA | ALL]\_PLSQL\_OBJECT\_SETTINGS. The dictionary view contains the compilation settings by subprogram. The details include the subprogram TYPE, NAME, PLSQL\_CODE\_TYPE, and other object level initialization parameters. These parameters are shown in the following code snippet:

```
/*Connect as ORADEV user*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.
/*Show structure of USER_PLSQL_OBJECT_SETTINGS*/
SQL> desc USER_PLSQL_OBJECT_SETTINGS
```

Name	Null?	Type
NAME	NOT NULL	VARCHAR2 (30)
TYPE		VARCHAR2 (12)
PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL		NUMBER
PLSQL_CODE_TYPE		VARCHAR2 (4000)
PLSQL_DEBUG		VARCHAR2 (4000)
PLSQL_WARNINGS		VARCHAR2 (4000)
NLS_LENGTH_SEMANTICS		VARCHAR2 (4000)
PLSQL_CCFLAGS		VARCHAR2 (4000)
PLSCOPE_SETTINGS		VARCHAR2 (4000)

Let us now query the PLSQL\_CODE\_TYPE and PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL values for the subprograms owned by the ORADEV user:

```
/*Query the compilation settings for ORADEV schema objects*/
SELECT name, type, plsql_code_type, plsql_optimize_level OPTIMIZE
FROM USER_PLSQL_OBJECT_SETTINGS
WHERE type in ('PROCEDURE', 'FUNCTION', 'PACKAGE', 'PACKAGE BODY')
/
```

NAME	TYPE	PLSQL_CODE	OPTIMIZE
P_TO_UPPER	PROCEDURE	NATIVE	2
P_SET_CONTEXT	PROCEDURE	NATIVE	2
P_EMP_LOCATION	PROCEDURE	NATIVE	2
PKG_CONTEXTS	PACKAGE BODY	NATIVE	2
PKG_CONTEXTS	PACKAGE	NATIVE	2
PKG_COMPUTEJAVACLASS	PACKAGE BODY	NATIVE	2
PKG_COMPUTEJAVACLASS	PACKAGE	NATIVE	2
F_LOWER	FUNCTION	NATIVE	2
F_GET_SUM	FUNCTION	NATIVE	2

---

F_GET_DOUBLE	FUNCTION	NATIVE	2
F_GET_DEPT_PREDICATE	FUNCTION	NATIVE	2
F_CONVERT_CASE	FUNCTION	NATIVE	2
F_COMPUTE_SUM	FUNCTION	NATIVE	2
F_CASE_CONVERT	FUNCTION	NATIVE	2
F_ADD	FUNCTION	NATIVE	2
ADD_JOB_HISTORY	PROCEDURE	NATIVE	1

17 rows selected.

## Compiling a program unit for a native or interpreted compilation

In this section, we will illustrate how a program adopts the compilation mode at the object level which is different from the current session compilation mode. The steps are as follows:

1. Querying the current compilation mode of the session:

```
/*Connect as sysdba*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.
/*Display current setting of parameter PLSQL_CODE_TYPE*/
SHOW PARAMETER PLSQL_CODE_TYPE
```

NAME	TYPE	VALUE
-----	-----	-----
plsql_code_type	string	INTERPRETED

2. Creating a sample function:

The function is compiled as per the session's compilation scheme:

```
/*Connect as ORADEV user*/
SQL> CONN ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.
/*Create a function*/
SQL> CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION F_COMP_INT
RETURN NUMBER
IS
BEGIN
RETURN 1;
END;
/
Function created.
```

3. Verifying the compilation mode used for the F\_COMP\_INT function:

Yes, it is found correct as INTERPRETED:

```
/*Query the compilation settings for the function F_COMP_INT*/
SELECT name, type, plsql_code_type, plsql_optimize_level OPTIMIZE
FROM USER_PLSQL_OBJECT_SETTINGS
WHERE name = 'F_COMP_INT'
/
```

NAME	TYPE	PLSQL_CODE_TYPE	OPTIMIZE
-----			
F_COMP_INT	FUNCTION	INTERPRETED	2

4. Recompiling the function and specifying the compilation mode:

```
/*Connect as ORADEV*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.
/*Explicitly compile the function*/
alter function f_comp_int compile plsql_code_type = NATIVE;

Function altered.
```

5. Querying the compilation settings of the F\_COMP\_INT function:

Note that it has been compiled in native mode:

```
/*Query the current compilation settings for the function F_COMP_
INT*/
SELECT name, type, plsql_code_type, plsql_optimize_level OPTIMIZE
FROM USER_PLSQL_OBJECT_SETTINGS
WHERE name = 'F_COMP_INT'
/
```

NAME	TYPE	PLSQL_CODE_TYPE	OPTIMIZE
-----			
F_COMP_INT	FUNCTION	NATIVE	2

Another way of modifying the compilation mode settings can be demonstrated by altering the session settings. Whenever a program unit is compiled, the preferred compilation settings go in the sequence of object, session, and then the database:

```
/*Connect as ORADEV user*/
SQL> conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.
/*Alter the session to set compilation mode as NATIVE*/
SQL> ALTER SESSION SET PLSQL_CODE_TYPE='NATIVE'
/
```

```

Session altered.
/*Compile the procedure so as to inherit the current session
settings*/
SQL> ALTER FUNCTION F_COMP_INT COMPILE
/

Procedure altered.
/*Query the compilation settings for the function F_COMP_INT*/
SELECT name, type, plsql_code_type, plsql_optimize_level OPTIMIZE
FROM USER_PLSQL_OBJECT_SETTINGS
WHERE
name = 'F_COMP_INT'
/

```

NAME	TYPE	PLSQL_CODE_TYPE	OPTIMIZE
F_COMP_INT	FUNCTION	NATIVE	2

## Compiling the database for PL/SQL native compilation (NCOMP)

During database upgrades from lower versions to Oracle 11g, all the program units were required to be recompiled in **native compilation (NCOMP)** mode. Oracle provides a script called `dbmsupgnav.sql` to accomplish the task of compiling all program units in native compilation mode. Note that in case of database version upgrades, the upgraded scripts must be executed prior to `dbmsupgnav.sql`.

Here we will demonstrate the native recompilation of all program units. The steps of this process are as follows:

1. Shutting down the database:

Ensure that all connections to the server are terminated and no new connections are established until the upgrade process is completed:

```

/*Connect as SYSDBA*/
SQL> conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.
/*Shutdown*/
SQL> shutdown immediate
Database closed.
Database dismounted.
ORACLE instance shut down.

```

2. Setting PLSQL\_CODE\_TYPE as NATIVE for subsequent compilations:

```
plsql_code_type=native
```

This step is required to set the compilation scheme for the subsequent program units (after upgrade). It is not part of the database native recompilation process. Since, these days, most of the databases work with `spfile.ora` instead of `init.ora`, the setting of PLSQL\_CODE\_TYPE as NATIVE can also be done after the upgrade process is completed and the database is started normally. It can be done using the ALTER SYSTEM statement:

```
/*Alter the system to set the new compilation mode*/
SQL> ALTER SYSTEM SET PLSQL_CODE_TYPE=NATIVE SCOPE=SPFILE
/
```

System altered.

In addition, ensure that another initialization parameter called PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL is set as 2 or higher. PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL is an initialization parameter which enforces a level of optimization (out of an available four levels) to the PL/SQL optimizer and thus, manoeuvres the working profile of the compiler. This parameter was introduced in Oracle 10g and saw a major enhancement in Oracle 11g. We will discuss it later in this chapter.

3. Starting the database in the UPGRADE mode:

```
/*Startup in upgrade mode*/
SQL> startup upgrade
ORACLE instance started.
Total System Global Area  535662592 bytes
Fixed Size                 1375792 bytes
Variable Size             327156176 bytes
Database Buffers          201326592 bytes
Redo Buffers              5804032 bytes
Database mounted.
Database opened.
```

Alternatively, the database can be started and mounted normally. Then, it can be opened in the UPGRADE mode as follows:

```
/*Open database in upgrade mode*/
ALTER DATABASE OPEN UPGRADE;
```

4. Executing the `dbmsupgnav.sql` script to recompile all the program units in Native mode:

```
/*Execute the recompilation script*/
SQL> @ORACLE_HOME\rdbms\admin\dbmsupgnav.sql
```

The script creates the native compilation package `sys.dbmsncdb` which provides two subprograms to perform interpreted or native compilation, as required. The `SETUP_FOR_NATIVE_COMPILE` suprogram sets the database for native compilation, while `SETUP_FOR_INTERPRETED_COMPILE` sets the database for interpreted compilation.

Furthermore, the script invalidates all PL/SQL procedures, functions, type bodies, triggers, and type body objects in the database and sets their settings to native.

5. Shutting down and restarting the database:

```
/*Shutdown and startup the database normally*/
SQL> shutdown immediate
Database closed.
Database dismounted.
ORACLE instance shut down.
SQL> startup
ORACLE instance started.
Total System Global Area  535662592 bytes
Fixed Size                  1375792 bytes
Variable Size              327156176 bytes
Database Buffers           201326592 bytes
Redo Buffers                5804032 bytes
Database mounted.
Database opened.
```

6. Executing the `utlrv.sql` script to recompile invalid objects:

Before running the `utlrv.sql` script to recompile the invalid program units, make sure that no new connections are established with the servers. Cautionously, the session must be a restricted to single connection:

```
SQL> @ORACLE_HOME\rdbms\admin\utlrv.sql
```

The recompilation of the invalidated program units may take a longer time to complete, depending on the schema size. For large databases, the script execution may leave the system on hang for several hours to natively recompile all the program units. The invalidated objects can be queried from the `USER_OBJECTS` dictionary view. Ideally, the script should recompile all the invalidated program units, but if some objects are left out from the process, the `utlrv.sql` script can be rerun (until all the schema objects get validated).

The native compilation of all the program units can be verified using the `SELECT` query. In an ideal case, the query should show only the `NATIVE` value:

```
/*Select object count for each PLSQL_CODE_TYPE*/
SELECT plsql_code_type, count(*)
FROM user_plsql_object_settings
GROUP BY plsql_code_type
/
```

If the system requires moving back to the interpreted compilation scheme, the same steps must be followed, but the `dbmsupgnv.sql` script has to be replaced with `dbmsupgin.sql`.

## Tuning PL/SQL code

Once the DBA configures the database for optimal performance, the code development plays an essential role in PL/SQL performance. Now, we will discuss certain areas of improvements. These improvements can be made during the development stage so as to avoid the nightmares later.

The tunable areas identified and covered in this section are as follows:

- **Avoiding implicit typecasting:** Identification of appropriate data type
- **Modularizing the programs:** Modular programming and effective code sampling shares the work load
- **Usage of bulk bind collections and the FORALL function :** Usage of the `FORALL` function and bulk bind collections optimize the bulk operations
- **Optimized conditional statements:** Conditional statements can be optimized by logically placing the conditions

Besides the above areas, there are several other areas where tuning can bring comprehensive changes in performance. There is an immense scope for tuning in the code which uses dynamic SQL, SQL queries in PL/SQL blocks, functions callable from SQL statements, and so on. However, from a certification preparation perspective, we will discuss the listed target areas which focus on improved code writing to improvise upon the code performance.

## Comparing SQL and PL/SQL

We are well versed with the facts that SQL is a concrete trivial database interactive language, while PL/SQL is the procedural extension of SQL. Often, we debate on SQL in PL/SQL in terms of performance and embedding strategies. Here, we need to understand the specific strengths of each one of them. SQL is the best recognized language to interact with the database and perform data activities. Its procedural extension gives additional flexibility to deal with most of the real world problems in PL/SQL as a language. The SQL statements use the SQL engine for execution while PL/SQL hits the PL/SQL engine. When a SQL statement is encountered in a PL/SQL program, the context is switched from the PL/SQL engine to SQL engine. The context switching contributes to the performance degradation during the program executions. This implies that a greater number of SQL statements in a PL/SQL program can become hazardous for an application.

But, nevertheless, certain situations cannot be realized without the efficiencies of SQL. In such cases, SQL statements can be included in the PL/SQL program. In this regards, there are certain recommendations which are as follows:

- Avoid embedding of a SQL statement within iterative control structures in PL/SQL such as loops. A single SQL statement might work better in such cases.
- Transactions can be made through an API layer. An API or subroutine can be defined to handle transactions. SQL statements in an executable section can be procedurally enhanced as standalone procedures or a packaged subprogram.

## Avoiding implicit data type conversion

The PL/SQL runtime engine can perform an implicit type conversion of values. For example, a numeric value can be assigned to a string variable but not vice versa. Similarly, a date value can be assigned to a string variable but not vice versa. This conversion depends on the compatibility matrix:

	Number	BINARY_INTEGER	BINARY_FLOAT	BINARY_DOUBLE	PLS_INTEGER	CHAR	NCHAR	VARCHAR2	NVARCHAR2	DATE	CLOB	NCLOB
NUMBER	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
BINARY_INTEGER	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
BINARY_FLOAT	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
BINARY_DOUBLE	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
PLS_INTEGER	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
CHAR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
NCHAR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
VARCHAR2	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
NVARCHAR2	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
DATE	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
CLOB	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
NCLOB	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

In the previous section, we learned that the Oracle server takes care of implicit type casting. The casting process adds up to its work load at the cost of performance. For this reason, a variable must belong to an appropriate data type to correctly accommodate the value which is assigned to it. Oracle also provides type cast built-in functions which can be used to help the optimizer to hint the type casting. Oracle provides `TO_CHAR`, `TO_NUMBER`, and `TO_DATE` to explicitly mark the conversion of a value.

Let us conduct a small illustration to check the effect of implicit type casting on the code's performance. The PL/SQL block, as shown in the following code snippet, declares a string variable and assigns a numeric value to it in a loop. Here, the Oracle server has to implicitly work upon the type conversion of the numeric value assigned to the string variable. The `PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL` has been set to 1 to capture the precise results:

```
/*Set the PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL to 1*/
ALTER SESSION SET PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL = 1
/

Session altered.
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display block results*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
    L_STR VARCHAR2(10);
    L_COUNT NUMBER :=0;
BEGIN
/*Capture the system time before loop*/
    L_COUNT := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME;
    /*Start a loop which assigns fixed numeric value to a local string
variable*/
    FOR I IN 1..1000000
    LOOP
        L_STR := 1;
    END LOOP;
/*Print the time consumed in the operations*/
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Time Consumed: ' || TO_CHAR(DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME
-    L_COUNT));
END;
/

Time Consumed:17
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

Now, we will assign a string value to the string variable. Oracle has no extra activity except to assign the correct value type to the variable:

```

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display block results*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
    L_STR VARCHAR2(10);
    L_COUNT NUMBER :=0;
BEGIN
    /*Capture the system time before loop*/
    L_COUNT := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME;
    /*Start a loop which assigns fixed string value to a local string
    variable*/
    FOR I IN 1..1000000
    LOOP
        L_STR := 'A';
    END LOOP;
    /*Print the time consumed in the operations*/
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Time Consumed:' || TO_CHAR(DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME
    - L_COUNT));
END;
/

Time Consumed:6
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

```

## Understanding the NOT NULL constraint

We often declare the NOT NULL variables in our program units to shield them against the NULL values in the program. Unknowingly, we pressurize the Oracle server to perform the additional NOT NULL test before each assignment of the particular variable. The overhead significantly affects the performance.

For testing a variable for nullity, Oracle follows a peculiar approach. The server assigns the result of an assignment statement to a temporary variable and checks this temporary variable for nullity. If it returns the true value, exception occurs and block terminates, otherwise the program control proceeds further. Therefore, a variable should never be declared with the NOT NULL constraint. Instead, it can be explicitly checked for nullity in the executable section whenever required. Let us check out how it is done.

You write a utility program in your application to add two numbers. You capture the sum of two numbers in a NOT NULL variable. Ensure that PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL is set as 1 to yield clear results:

```
/*Set PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL as 1*/
ALTER SESSION SET PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL=1
/

Session altered.
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display block results*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
    L_NUM NUMBER NOT NULL := 0;
    L_A NUMBER := 10;
    L_COUNT NUMBER;
BEGIN
    /*Capture the start time*/
    L_COUNT := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME;
    /*Start the loop*/
    FOR I IN 1..1000000
    LOOP
        L_NUM := L_A + I;
    END LOOP;
    /*Compute the time difference and display*/
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Time Consumed:' || TO_CHAR(DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME
-
    L_COUNT));
END;
/

Time Consumed:17
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

Alternatively, Oracle recommends the explicit handling of NOT NULL as follows:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display block results*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
    L_NUM NUMBER;
    L_A NUMBER := 10;
    L_COUNT NUMBER;
BEGIN
    /*Capture the start time*/
    L_COUNT := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME;
    /*Start the loop*/
    FOR I IN 1..1000000
```

```

LOOP
    L_NUM := L_A + I;
    IF L_NUM IS NULL THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Result cannot be NULL');
        EXIT;
    END IF;
END LOOP;
/*Compute the time difference and display*/
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Time Consumed:' || TO_CHAR(DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME
-
    L_COUNT));
END;
/

Time Consumed:12
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

```

Note that the time consumed in the second case is 30 percent less than the latter. The difference in the block execution timings illustrates the loss in performance due to the NOT NULL constraint. Similar observations can be made with the NOT NULL subtype of NUMBER that is, NATURALN (NOT NULL NATURAL), POSITIVEN (NOT NULL POSITIVE), and SIMPLE\_INTEGER (NOT NULL PLS\_INTEGER).

## Using the PLS\_INTEGER data type for arithmetic operations

The PLS\_INTEGER data type, which hails from the number family, was introduced in Oracle 7 to speed up the intensive mathematical operations. It is the only data type which uses native machine arithmetic instead of the C arithmetic library. This makes it faster in arithmetic operations in program units. The 32 bit data type can store values in the range of -2147483648 to 2147483647.

Let us now undertake a case study where we will observe the difference in performance of arithmetic operations using NUMBER and PLS\_INTEGER as the data type.

The following PL/SQL block performs addition in iteration:

```

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display block results*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
    L_NUM NUMBER := 0;
    L_ST_TIME NUMBER;
    L_END_TIME NUMBER;
BEGIN

```

```
/*Capture the start time*/
L_ST_TIME := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME();
/*Begin the loop to perform a mathematical calculation*/
FOR I IN 1..100000000
LOOP
/*The mathematical operation increments a variable by one*/
L_NUM := L_NUM+1;
END LOOP;
L_END_TIME := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME();
/*Display the time consumed*/
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Time taken by NUMBER:' || TO_CHAR(L_END_TIME -
L_ST_TIME));
END;
/
Time taken by NUMBER:643
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

The mathematical operation with the NUMBER data type consumes 643 ms. Now let us replace the NUMBER data type with the PLS\_INTEGER data type:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display block results*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
L_PLS PLS_INTEGER := 0;
L_ST_TIME NUMBER;
L_END_TIME NUMBER;
BEGIN
/*Capture the start time*/
L_ST_TIME := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME();
/*Begin the loop to perform a mathematical calculation*/
FOR I IN 1..100000000
LOOP
/*The mathematical operation increments a variable by one*/
L_PLS := L_PLS+1;
END LOOP;
/*Display the time consumed*/
L_END_TIME := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME();
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Time taken by PLS_INTEGER:' || TO_CHAR(L_END_
TIME -
L_ST_TIME));
END;
/

Time taken by PLS_INTEGER:196
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

Note the execution time of the above block. It is almost one third of the execution carried out with the `NUMBER` data type. The demonstration makes it clear that the `PLS_INTEGER` data type rules the mathematical operations in PL/SQL.

## Using a `SIMPLE_INTEGER` data type

Oracle 11g brings in the `SIMPLE_INTEGER` data type—a subtype of `PLS_INTEGER` which is of great use in applications and in the PL/SQL programming. We know it well that the range of the `PLS_INTEGER` data type is -2147483648 to 2147483647. Beyond its range, the `PLS_INTEGER` data type would raise the `ORA-01426: numeric overflow exception`.

The `SIMPLE_INTEGER` data type leaps a step forward to deal with the numeric overflow scenarios of `PLS_INTEGER`. The range is the same as that in `PLS_INTEGER` that is, -2147483648 to 2147483647. It restricts the `NULL` values and avoids overflow semantics.



Since no overflow check is done for the `SIMPLE_INTEGER` data type, it might work faster than the `PLS_INTEGER` data type.

A small case study would justify the use of `SIMPLE_INTEGER` in PL/SQL programs. The following PL/SQL block declares a `PLS_INTEGER` variable and increments it by one. The numeric overflow exception is raised upon the second increment:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display block results*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
/*Declare a variable of PLS_INTEGER type and initialize it with a
value nearing to its range*/
  l_pls PLS_INTEGER:= 2147483646;
BEGIN
/*Increment the variable by 1*/
  l_pls := l_pls +1;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('After 1st increment:'|| l_pls);
/*Re-increment the variable by 1*/
  l_pls := l_pls +1;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('After 2nd increment:'|| l_pls);
EXCEPTION
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Numeric Overflow exception occurred');
END;
/
```

```
After 1st increment:2147483647
Numeric Overflow exception occurred
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

Now, replace the data type in the preceding block with the `SIMPLE_INTEGER` data type and observe the output:

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display block results*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
    l_simple SIMPLE_INTEGER:= 2147483646;
BEGIN
    /*Increment the variable by 1*/
    l_simple:= l_simple +1;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('After 1st increment: ' || l_simple);
    /*Re-Increment the variable by 1*/
    l_simple:= l_simple +1;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('After 2nd increment: ' || l_simple);
EXCEPTION
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Numeric Overflow exception occurred');
END;
/
```

```
After 1st increment:2147483647
After 2nd increment:-2147483648
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```



`SIMPLE_INTEGER` is a NOT NULL data type. A variable of the `SIMPLE_INTEGER` data type must be initialized with a definite value at the time of declaration.

## Modularizing the PL/SQL code

Modular programming is a way of designing and programming the development. It reduces the code redundancy by getting the executable sections cut-short, and promotes module reusability as they can be invoked from other PL/SQL blocks. The module can be a local subprogram in a PL/SQL block or a stored subprogram. It can be a packaged subprogram which can be used as many times as required in a database session.

Check the following example. The PL/SQL block fetches the details of all employees and displays the employees' names along with their working location. For location, a cursor has been declared which would query the DEPARTMENTS table for the input department number:

```

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display block results*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
/*Declare a cursor to select employee name and department*/
CURSOR c_emp IS
    SELECT ename, deptno
    FROM employees;
/*Declare a cursor to get the location of the department*/
CURSOR c_dept(p_dept NUMBER) IS
    SELECT loc
    FROM departments
    WHERE deptno = p_dept;
l_loc VARCHAR2(100);
BEGIN
/*Open cursor FOR loop*/
FOR I IN c_emp
LOOP
    OPEN c_dept(I.deptno);
    FETCH c_dept INTO l_loc;
    CLOSE c_dept;
/*Print the employee name and its location*/
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('Employee ' || I.ename || ' works in ' || l_loc);
END LOOP;
END;
/

```

The above programming involves much of code writing and also the code redundancy of getting through the cursor execution cycle. Let us see how we can modularize it to shorten the executable section of the block:

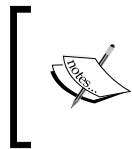
```

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display block results*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
CURSOR c_emp IS
    SELECT ename, deptno
    FROM employees;
/*Local function to get the department*/
FUNCTION F_GET_LOC (P_DEPTNO VARCHAR2)

```

```
RETURN VARCHAR2
IS
l_loc VARCHAR2(100);
BEGIN
    SELECT loc INTO l_loc
    FROM departments
    WHERE deptno = p_deptno;
    RETURN l_loc;
END F_GET_LOC;
BEGIN
/*Open the cursor FOR loop*/
    FOR I IN c_emp
    LOOP
/*Print the employee name and its location*/
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE ('Employee ' || I.ename || ' works in
        ' || F_GET_LOC(I.deptno));
    END LOOP;
END;
/
```

The preceding block creates a local function which returns the location of the given employee.



Definition of the local subprograms must appear at the end in the declarative section. However, they can be prototyped along with other local variables. The concept of prototyping subprograms before their definition is known as **forward declaration**.

## Using bulk binding

The bulk bind, as the name suggests, binds the multirecord data in a bulk. It is one of the most promising and efficient methods to reduce context switching between SQL and PL/SQL runtime engines. But, of course, the profit does not come without any investments. The load on the disk or the CPU usage increases with bulk operations.

Bulk bind can be implemented in two ways — BULK COLLECT and FORALL.

BULK COLLECT is used in the PL/SQL-embedded SELECT INTO statements to pull out a multirecord result set from the database in one single shot. Therefore, no cursors, no FOR loop construct, and no context switching is required except for the first time. It improves the code performance comprehensively by reducing the context switching and implementing data fetch as collections.

The usage goes as per the following syntax:

```
BEGIN
  SELECT <list of column(s)>
  BULK COLLECT INTO <collection variable to hold the data>
  FROM <table name>
  <WHERE conditions>
  <FOR UPDATE [NOWAIT | SKIP LOCKED]>
END;
```

BULK COLLECT can be used in:


- The SELECT INTO clause with the SELECT statement
- The RETURNING INTO clause with the UPDATE statement
- The FETCH INTO clause with an explicit cursor

 Prior to Oracle9i, BULK COLLECT could only be used with the static SQL statements but now it can be used with the dynamic SQL statements too.

FORALL is the bulk loop construct which is used to perform bulk transactions on a table. The most beneficial feature is that the loop would not exit abruptly if any single transaction out of the whole bulk fails. Instead, it stores all the raised exceptions in a bulk exception logger — BULK\_EXCEPTIONS. The bulk exceptions can be taken-up and resolved separately under the EXCEPTION section. The only shortcoming is that only a single DML statement can be processed under the FORALL loop. Syntactically, the FORALL usage is as follows:

```
FORALL index IN
[
  lower_bound ... upper_bound |
  INDICES OF indexing_collection |
  VALUES OF indexing_collection
]
[SAVE EXCEPTIONS]
[DML statement]
```

In the preceding syntax, the DML statement can be INSERT, UPDAE, DELETE, or MERGE.

 Oracle 11g introduced support for MERGE with FORALL.


The following PL/SQL code uses BULK COLLECT to fetch the complete employee details (ID, name, department number, and salary):

```
/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display block results*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Display the EMPLOYEES table structure*/
SQL> DESC EMPLOYEES

      Name                Null?     Type
-----
EMPNO                    NOT NULL   NUMBER(4)
ENAME                    NOT NULL   VARCHAR2(10)
JOB                      VARCHAR2(9)
MGR                      NUMBER(4)
HIREDATE                 DATE
SAL                      NUMBER(7,2)
COMM                     NUMBER(7,2)
DEPTNO                   NUMBER(2)

/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
/*Declare a record to include the required attributes */
  TYPE REC_EMP IS RECORD
  (
    EMPID EMPLOYEES.EMPNO%TYPE,
    ENAME EMPLOYEES.ENAME%TYPE,
    DEPT EMPLOYEES.DEPTNO%TYPE,
    SALARY EMPLOYEES.SAL%TYPE
  );
  TYPE T_EMP IS TABLE OF REC_EMP;
  L_EMP T_EMP;
BEGIN
/*FETCH cycle helps the reduce context switches*/
  SELECT empno, ename, deptno, sal
    BULK COLLECT INTO L_EMP
  FROM employees;
END;
/
```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.



Few facts on BULK COLLECT:

BULK COLLECT does not require the initialization of collection variables.

The BULK COLLECT operation never raises the NO\_DATA\_FOUND exception. If no data is returned by the query, the collection variable contains no elements.

We will demonstrate the usage of `FORALL` in the following program only. We will try to update the salaries of all the employees and display the new salaries. Check it out in the following program:

```

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display block results*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
/*Declare a local record and a table of record to capture the values*/
TYPE REC_EMP IS RECORD
(
    EMPID EMPLOYEES.EMPNO%TYPE,
    ENAME EMPLOYEES.ENAME%TYPE,
    DEPT EMPLOYEES.DEPTNO%TYPE,
    SALARY EMPLOYEES.SAL%TYPE
);
TYPE T_EMP IS TABLE OF REC_EMP;
L_EMP T_EMP := T_EMP();
TYPE REC_EMP_UPD IS RECORD
(
    ENAME EMPLOYEES.ENAME%TYPE,
    SAL EMPLOYEES.SAL%TYPE
);
TYPE T_EMP_UPD IS TABLE OF REC_EMP_UPD;
L_EMP_UPD T_EMP_UPD;
BEGIN
/*Fetch the employee details in a local collection*/
SELECT empno, ename, deptno, sal
  BULK COLLECT INTO L_EMP
FROM employees;
/*Use FORALL to update the salary values. Note the use of RETURNING
INTO*/
FORALL I IN L_EMP.FIRST..L_EMP.LAST
    UPDATE employees
    SET sal = L_EMP(I).SALARY + 1000
    WHERE empno = L_EMP(I).EMPID
    RETURNING ENAME, SAL BULK COLLECT INTO L_EMP_UPD;
/*Display the current data*/
FOR I IN 1..L_EMP_UPD.COUNT
LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('New salary of ' || L_EMP_UPD(I).ENAME || ' is
    ' || L_EMP_UPD(I).SAL);
END LOOP;
END;
/

```

```
New salary of SMITH is 9800
New salary of ALLEN is 2600
New salary of WARD is 2250
New salary of JONES is 3975
New salary of MARTIN is 2250
New salary of BLAKE is 3850
New salary of CLARK is 3450
New salary of SCOTT is 4000
New salary of KING is 6000
New salary of TURNER is 2500
New salary of ADAMS is 2100
New salary of JAMES is 1950
New salary of FORD is 4000
New salary of MILLER is 2300
```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

## Using **SAVE\_EXCEPTIONS**

Suppose you are asked to write a program to read 10,000 records from a legacy system and insert it into the database table. You fetch the records in a cursor, iterate the result set in the `FOR` loops, and insert the records one by one. If a data type mismatch occurs in the 2482nd record, exception occurs, control skips the rest of the loop, and the performed transaction is rolled back.

For such scenarios, Oracle provides the `SAVE_EXCEPTIONS` clause which is used with `FORALL` to restore the exceptions which are raised during the `FORALL` execution. The ongoing transactions are not affected by the exceptions raised. The defected records are skipped and are logged under the `SQL%BULK_EXCEPTIONS` pseudo column. If out of 5000 records, 13 records are defected, 4987 records are still inserted while 13 are logged in the `SQL%BULK_EXCEPTIONS` array structure with the cursor index.

The `%BULK_EXCEPTIONS` attribute maintains two fields—`ERROR_INDEX` and `ERROR_CODE`. `ERROR_INDEX` stores the defect record index where the exception was raised while `ERROR_CODE` records the exception message. `%BULK_EXCEPTIONS.COUNT` stores the count of exceptions raised during execution of the `FORALL` statement. Notice that the standard error code captured by the `ERROR_CODE` attribute is not prefixed with the hyphen (-) sign. Therefore, to fetch its equivalent error message, pass error code prefixed with a hyphen (-) sign to the `SQLERRM` function.

In the EMPLOYEES table, EMPNO is the primary key and NAME cannot be NULL. The following PL/SQL code declares the PL/SQL table which has a mix of fixed and NULL values. We shall try to update employee names with NULL through a program and store the defective records using SAVE\_EXCEPTIONS:

```

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display block results*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
/*A local PL/SQL table holds the list of new names*/
  TYPE T_EMP IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(100) ;
  L_EMP T_EMP := T_EMP('Smith', 'Adams', null, 'King', null, 'George');
  BULK_ERRORS EXCEPTION;
  PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT (BULK_ERRORS, -24381);
BEGIN
/*FORALL to update the employee names*/
FORALL I IN 1..L_EMP.COUNT
SAVE EXCEPTIONS
UPDATE EMPLOYEES
SET ENAME = L_EMP(I);
EXCEPTION
/*BULK_ERRORS exception handler*/
  WHEN BULK_ERRORS THEN
/*Display the errors occurred during BULK DML transaction*/
  FOR J IN 1..SQL%BULK_EXCEPTIONS.COUNT
  LOOP
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(CHR(10));
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Error in UPDATE:
    ' || SQL%BULK_EXCEPTIONS(J).ERROR_INDEX);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Error Code is: ' || sql%BULK_EXCEPTIONS(J).
    ERROR_CODE);
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Error Message is: ' || sqlerrm('-
    ' || SQL%BULK_EXCEPTIONS(J).ERROR_CODE));
  END LOOP;
END;
/

Error in UPDATE: 3
Error Code is: 1407
Error Message is: ORA-01407: cannot update () to NULL
Error in UPDATE: 5
Error Code is: 1407
Error Message is: ORA-01407: cannot update () to NULL
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

```

## **Rephrasing the conditional control statements**

Working on logical expressions for performance – sounds very ignored and rare, but true. Performance of logical expressions can be improved by properly framing the constructs. Though the conditional constructs are rarely attended areas in a PL/SQL code for performance, the evaluation of conditional statements can considerably affect code performance.

The evaluation of conditional statements such as `IF THEN ELSE` expression takes place from left to right. As soon as the result of the evaluating condition is derived, the control moves forward accordingly. Note that the `OR` condition is satisfied if any one of the operand is `TRUE`, while the `AND` condition is rejected if one of the operands is found `FALSE`. It is an important consideration which would help us to place the conditions in the logical condition.

### **Conditions with an OR logical operator**

The `OR` logical operator requires any one of the operands to be true to return `TRUE`.

If one of the operands in the logical condition is more expected to be `TRUE`, it can be placed at the leftmost position. As soon as the condition is evaluated, it is set as `TRUE` and the PL/SQL engine would not move to execute other operands. This helps in performance boost up where large conditions are involved.

### **Conditions with an AND logical operator**

The `AND` logical operator requires all of the operands to be true to return `TRUE`. One of the operands returning `FALSE` would make a complete condition to return `FALSE`.

If any one of the operands in the logical condition is expected to return `FALSE`, it must be placed at the leftmost position. During the condition's evaluation, once `FALSE` is confirmed, Oracle skips the further evaluation of the condition. Such operands placing can help the Oracle server to easily hip-hop through the programs.

If there are more than one mutual conditions possible, the `IF THEN ELSIF` structure can be used. Whichever `IF` (or `ELSIF`) condition is satisfied, the corresponding executable section is executed – the rest of the `IF THEN` braches are not evaluated.

## Enabling intra unit inlining

In conventional programming terminology, the program body of an inline program is stored along with the program unit which references it. In context of Oracle subprograms, the term **inlining a subprogram** refers to the replacing of a subprogram call with the copy of an actual subprogram body itself. At major occasions, this activity cohesively demonstrates better performance and thus, reaps out better benefits along with modularity and call optimization.

Usually, when a program is executed, the PL/SQL engine searches for the program definition in the available objects' lists. It then validates the program, executes the body, and maintains the result in the stack frame. Later it substitutes the results in the calling program unit and proceeds for further execution. When an inline program is called from a program unit, the PL/SQL engine replaces the call statement with the copy of the program body. The copied program body works faster than the program call execution method because the latter step is skipped. Note that the Oracle optimizer is intelligent enough to decide upon a subprogram to be made inline or not. Performance gains are possible only if the inline subprogram body performs a small utility which is frequently used and is substitutable with its call.

Oracle recommends to inline the programs which perform static logic execution, less referential, and very frequently used in the application. An optimized and appropriate implementation of intra unit inlining feature can achieve 30-40 percent of a visible difference in performance of a database application system. The intra unit inlining can be traced from the session level warnings. Session level warnings can be turned on by setting the `PLSQL_WARNINGS` parameter to `ENABLE:ALL`.

The inlining can be enabled to achieve one of the following objectives:

- Strictly inline all the program calls at high priority
- Intelligent and appropriate inlining decided by Oracle optimizer
- Manually measure and analyze the subprograms for inlining

Oracle offers two methods of inlining implementation:

- Oracle initialization parameter, `PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL`, offers transparent optimization
- Newly introduced `PRAGMA INLINE` allows explicit optimization through inlining

## PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL—the Oracle initialization parameter

Oracle 10g introduced the initialization parameter `PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL` to set the working profile of the Oracle optimizer. The optimizer works in accordance with `PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL` and checks for the removal of dead code, subprogram inlining, and construct optimization within the program.

A DBA sets the initialization parameter at the `SYSTEM`, `SESSION`, or `OBJECT` level. The current compilation setting of a program unit can be queried from the `USER_PLSQL_OBJECT_SETTINGS` dictionary view.

Prior to Oracle 11g's release, the parameter could accommodate only three valid values that is, 0, 1, and 2. Oracle 11g introduced an additional optimization level—3. The default value of the parameter is 2. The compiler's effort is directly proportional to the parameter value—the higher the value, the greater the compiler's effort.

It can be set using the `ALTER [SYSTEM | SESSION]` command, as shown in the following block:

```
/*Connect to view the current parameter setting*/
Conn sys/system as SYSDBA
Connected.
/*Display current setting for PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL*/
SQL> show parameter plsql_optimize_level

NAME                                TYPE        VALUE
-----
plsql_optimize_level                integer      2

/*Modify the setting for the current session*/
ALTER SESSION SET PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL = 1
/

Session altered.
```

Let us check the behavior of the Oracle optimizer and its effect on the performance at different optimization levels.

### Case 1—PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL = 0

At this level, the optimizer is in the idle state. The optimizer does not effort in code optimization and it only maintains the evaluation order of the program unit.

Consider the following PL/SQL block which has two assignment statements and one computational statement inside a big loop:

```

/*Connect as ORADEV user*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.
/*Alter the current session settings; set the PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL to
0*/
ALTER SESSION SET PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL = 0
/

Session altered.
/*Enable the serveroutput to display block output*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
    L_START_TIME NUMBER;
    L_END_TIME NUMBER;
    L_DEAD NUMBER;
    L_ASN1 NUMBER;
    L_ASN2 NUMBER;
/*Declare a local function*/
    FUNCTION F_NUM (P_N NUMBER) RETURN NUMBER IS
    BEGIN
        RETURN P_N;
    END;
    BEGIN
/*Capture the start time*/
        L_START_TIME := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME();
        FOR I IN 1..100000000
        LOOP
/*Perform dummy operations within the loop*/
            L_DEAD := 0;
            L_ASN1 := 1;
            L_ASN2 := F_NUM(I) + 1;
        END LOOP;
/*Capture the end time*/
        L_END_TIME := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME();
/*Display the time consumed in the execution*/
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Execution time: ' || TO_CHAR(L_END_TIME -
            L_START_TIME));
    END;
/

Execution time:4089
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

```

## Case 2—PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL = 1

At this level, the Oracle optimizer applies basic optimization techniques to a program unit. It ignores the redundant and irrelevant code from the program unit.

We will modify the parameter value to 1 and execute the last block again.  
Check the performance:

```
/*Connect as ORADEV user*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.
/*Alter the current session settings; set the PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL to
1*/
ALTER SESSION SET PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL = 1
/

Session altered.
/*Enable the serveroutput to display block output*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
    L_START_TIME NUMBER;
    L_END_TIME NUMBER;
    L_DEAD NUMBER;
    L_ASN1 NUMBER;
    L_ASN2 NUMBER;
/*Declare a local function*/
    FUNCTION F_NUM (P_N NUMBER) RETURN NUMBER IS
    BEGIN
        RETURN P_N;
    END;
    BEGIN
/*Capture the start time*/
        L_START_TIME := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME();
        FOR I IN 1..100000000
        LOOP
/*Perform dummy operations within the loop*/
            L_DEAD := 0;
            L_ASN1 := 1;
            L_ASN2 := F_NUM(I) + 1;
        END LOOP;
/*Capture the end time*/
        L_END_TIME := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME();
/*Display the time consumed in the execution*/
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Execution time: ' || TO_CHAR(L_END_TIME -
L_START_TIME));
```

```

END;
/

Execution time:3001
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

```

The execution time has reduced by 30 percent when executed with optimization level 1. The reduction in the execution time is credited to the removal of dead code that is (L\_DEAD := 0), it is not executed for the complete loop.

### Case 3—PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL = 2

This is the intelligent and standard optimization level of an optimizer, where it intelligently manages the code by refactoring it, separating out the dead code, and applying advanced techniques to restructure the code for best performance.

We will modify the parameter value again and check the performance:

```

/*Connect as ORADEV user*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.
/*Alter the current session settings; set the PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL to
2*/
ALTER SESSION SET PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL = 2
/

Session altered.
/*Enable the serveroutput to display block output*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
    L_START_TIME NUMBER;
    L_END_TIME NUMBER;
    L_DEAD NUMBER;
    L_ASN1 NUMBER;
    L_ASN2 NUMBER;
/*Declare a local function*/
    FUNCTION F_NUM (P_N NUMBER) RETURN NUMBER IS
    BEGIN
        RETURN P_N;
    END;
    BEGIN
/*Capture the start time*/
        L_START_TIME := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME();
        FOR I IN 1..100000000

```

```
        LOOP
        /*Perform dummy operations within the loop*/
            L_DEAD := 0;
            L_ASN1 := 1;
            L_ASN2 := F_NUM(I) + 1;
        END LOOP;
        /*Capture the end time*/
        L_END_TIME := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME();
        /*Display the time consumed in the execution*/
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Execution time: ' || TO_CHAR(L_END_TIME -
        L_START_TIME));
    END;
/

Execution time:2508
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

The code performance has been enhanced by 18 percent. The credit goes to the analytic behavior of our optimizer.

## Case 4—PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL = 3

It is a new level which got introduced in Oracle 11g. It performs strict optimization by inlining the local subprograms at high priority and immense code restructuring. It is used for instantaneous results in a session. Forced inlining of intra unit subprograms can be traced by enabling session level warnings:

```
/*Connect as ORADEV user*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.
/*Alter the current session settings; set the PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL to
2*/
ALTER SESSION SET PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL = 3
/

Session altered.
/*Enable the serveroutput to display block output*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
    L_START_TIME NUMBER;
    L_END_TIME NUMBER;
    L_DEAD  NUMBER;
    L_ASN1 NUMBER;
    L_ASN2 NUMBER;
/*Declare a local function*/
    FUNCTION F_NUM (P_N NUMBER) RETURN NUMBER IS
```

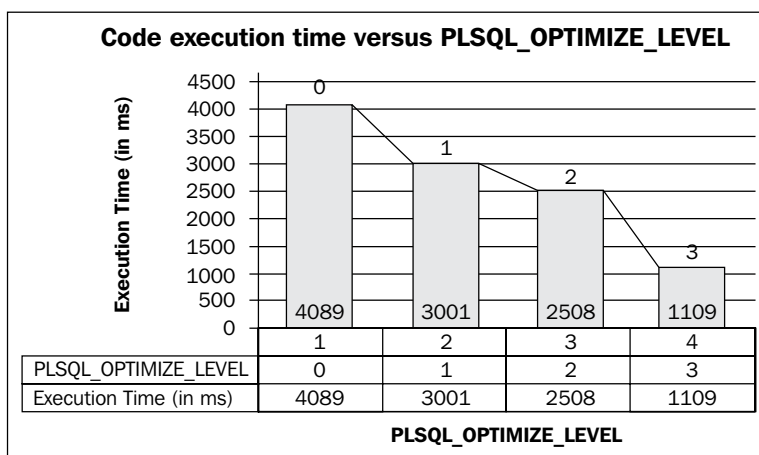
```

BEGIN
    RETURN P_N;
END;
BEGIN
/*Capture the start time*/
    L_START_TIME := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME();
    FOR I IN 1..100000000
    LOOP
/*Perform dummy operations within the loop*/
        L_DEAD := 0;
        L_ASN1 := 1;
        L_ASN2 := F_NUM(I) + 1;
    END LOOP;
/*Capture the end time*/
    L_END_TIME := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME();
/*Display the time consumed in the execution*/
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Execution time: ' || TO_CHAR(L_END_TIME -
        L_START_TIME));
END;
/

Execution time:1109
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

```

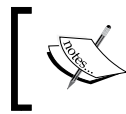
Amazed! It takes just half of the execution time taken in the last optimization setting. It is because it inlines all the calls of the local function `F_NUM`. Besides inlining, it evades the execution of the `L_DEAD` and `L_ASN1` assignment statements. The results are baffling enough to justify the intelligence of the Oracle optimizer and its governance with a single knob that is, `PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL`. The graph plots the preceding observations to show the performance gains with the optimizer level. When the optimization level is changed from 0 to 2, performance can be improved by nearly 40 percent:



The optimization level degree 2 is the best suited for most of the database applications. Besides providing an intelligent optimization scheme, it keeps the scope for the developers to increase the degree of optimization by explicitly inlining the subprograms using `PRAGMA INLINE`. The optimization degree 3 performs the aggressive optimization and forced inlining which might not be required every time. However, it can be set at session level for quick illustrations.

## PRAGMA INLINE

We learned the effect of the optimization level and subprogram inlining on the program performance. Once `PLSQL_OPTIMIZER_LEVEL` is set by the DBA, the optimization strategy is transparent to the end user. For this reason, Oracle introduced a pragma (`PRAGMA INLINE`) to authorize the user to explicitly inline a subprogram of its own choice. In the last section, we saw that `PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL 2` will prioritize the subprograms for inlining as per its own intelligence, while `PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL 3` will forcibly inline all the subprogram calls. While the latter setting might skip our expected subprogram, the latter setting might inline the expected subprogram along with the unnecessary inlining(inlinings).



`PRAGMA INLINE` is the fifth pragma in Oracle after `AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION`, `EXCEPTION_INIT`, `RESTRICT_REFERENCES`, and `SERIALLY_REUSABLE`.

`PRAGMA INLINE` can be used with `PLSQL_OPTIMIZER_LEVEL 2` and `PLSQL_OPTIMIZER_LEVEL 3`. When `PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL` is set to 2, the pragma can be used to explicitly inline a subprogram call or explicitly avoid the inlining of a subprogram. When `PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL` is set to 3, the pragma can only be used to avoid the inlining of a subprogram call.

`PRAGMA INLINE` has to be specified once, just before the subprogram call. The inlining effect would be persistent for all the subsequent calls to the subprogram, unless the effect is withdrawn. Syntactically, `PRAGMA INLINE` can be used as follows:

```
PRAGMA INLINE (subprogram name, [YES | NO]);
```

The effect of inlining can be confirmed through PL/SQL session level warnings. The warnings display the information messages at each stage of the intra unit inlining. The warnings can be enabled at the session level using `PLSQL_WARNINGS`.

Let us examine the effect of `PRAGMA INLINE` with a PL/SQL program. The PL/SQL procedure sums up the following series:

$$(1*2) + (2*2) + (3*2) + \dots + (n*2)$$

The following program will demonstrate the usage of PRAGMA INLINE when the PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL is set as 2:

```
/*Connect as ORADEV USER*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.
ALTER SESSION SET PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL=2
/
```

Session altered.

Note that a local subprogram DUBN calculates the sum of an index and candidate for intra inlining. It is called inside the procedure to sum up the series:

```
/*Enable the PLSQL_WARNINGS to capture the warnings*/
alter session set plsql_warnings = 'enable:all'
/

Session altered.
/*Create a procedure*/
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE P_SUM_SERIES(P_LIMIT NUMBER)
IS
    L_SERIES NUMBER := 0;
    L_ST_TIME NUMBER;
    L_END_TIME NUMBER;
/*Declare a local function which is candidate for inlining*/
    FUNCTION DUBN (P_NUM NUMBER) RETURN NUMBER IS
    BEGIN
        RETURN P_NUM * 2;
    END DUBN;
    BEGIN
/*Capture the start time*/
        L_ST_TIME := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME();
/*Begin the loop for series calculation*/
        FOR J IN 1..P_LIMIT
        LOOP
/*Set inlining for the local subprogram*/
            PRAGMA INLINE (DUBN, 'YES');
            L_SERIES := L_SERIES + DUBN(J);
        END LOOP;
/*Capture end time*/
        L_END_TIME := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME();
/*Display the time consumed with inlining of local function*/
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Execution time with inlining:' || TO_CHAR(L_
END_TIME -
    L_ST_TIME));
```

```
/*Repeat the steps with inlining off*/
L_ST_TIME := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME();
FOR J IN 1..P_LIMIT
LOOP
/*Set off inlining for the local function*/
PRAGMA INLINE (DUBN, 'NO');
L_SERIES := L_SERIES + DUBN(J);
END LOOP;
L_END_TIME := DBMS_UTILITY.GET_TIME();
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Execution time without inlining:'||TO_
CHAR(L_END_TIME
- L_ST_TIME));
END;
/
```

Procedure created.

Warnings for the procedure compiled in the preceding code snippet can be queried from the USER\_ERRORS dictionary view:

```
/*Select the warnings for the procedure P_SUM_SERIES*/
SELECT line, text
FROM user_errors
WHERE name='P_SUM_SERIES'
/
LINE TEXT
-----
-----
1 PLW-05018: unit P_SUM_SERIES omitted optional AUTHID clause;
default value
DEFINER used
22 PLW-06004: inlining of call of procedure 'DUBN' requested
39 PLW-06008: call of procedure 'DUBN' will not be inlined
22 PLW-06005: inlining of call of procedure 'DUBN' was done
```

Warnings confirm the subprogram inlining along with the line number where the request was made through PRAGMA INLINE and where it is actually done.

Now let us execute the P\_SUM\_SERIES procedure for a bigger value to observe the difference of subprogram inlining:

```
/*Executing the procedure with sample limit*/
SQL> EXEC P_SUM_SERIES (1000000);

Execution time with inlining:16
Execution time without inlining:28
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

## Summary

In this chapter, we learned the effect of compilation settings on the application performance. We understood the difference between interpreted/native compilation modes and learned the real native compilation feature introduced in Oracle 11g. We covered the PL/SQL tuning recommendations supported with demonstrations. Towards the end, we saw the effect of the optimization level on code execution through illustrations, intra unit inlining feature, and usage of `PRAGMA INLINE` in programs to explicitly inline subprogram calls.

In the next chapter, we will cover one of the most talked about features of Oracle 11g. The feature is known as result caching which promises tremendous performance gains in database applications.

## Practice exercise

1. Identify the nature of the program which is best suited for the interpreted mode of compilation.
  - a. The program unit contains multiple SQL statements.
  - b. The program unit has been just developed and is in debug stage.
  - c. The program unit uses collections and bulk bind statements.
  - d. The program unit is in production phase.
2. Choose the correct statements about the real native compilation mode in Oracle 11g;
  - a. The compilation method uses C compiler to convert the program into the equivalent C code.
  - b. The compilation method mounts the shared libraries through the `PLSQL_NATIVE_LIBRARY_DIR` and `PLSQL_NATIVE_LIBRARY_SUBDIR_COUNT` parameters.
  - c. The compilation does not use C compiler but converts the program unit directly to the M code.
  - d. The real native compilation is supported for RAC environments and participates in the backup recovery processes.

3. Determine the behavior of the `PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL` optimizer when it has been set to 3.
  - a. The optimizer would inline the programs which are necessary.
  - b. The optimizer would inline all the programs irrespective of the gains.
  - c. The optimizer would inline only those subprograms which have `PRAGMA INLINE`.
  - d. The setting has no effect on inlining of subprograms.
4. Choose the correct statements about the compilation setting in Oracle:
  - a. From Oracle 11g, the default value of `PLSQL_CODE_TYPE` is `NATIVE`.
  - b. An object can be recompiled in a compilation mode different from the current database setting.
  - c. During the database upgrade, `PLSQL_CODE_TYPE` must be modified in the instance pfile.
  - d. In a real native compilation, the libraries generated are stored in a secured file system.
5. Identify the tuning tips in the following PL/SQL block:

```
DECLARE
CURSOR C IS
    SELECT ENAME, SAL, COMM
    FROM EMPLOYEES;
    L_COMM NUMBER;
BEGIN
    FOR I IN C
    LOOP
        L_COMM := I.SAL + ((I.COMM/100) * (I.SAL * 12));
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE (I.ENAME||' earns '||L_COMM||' as
        commission');
    END LOOP;
END;
```

/

- a. Use `BULK COLLECT` to select employee data.
- b. Declare `L_COMM` as `NOT NULL`.
- c. Use `PLS_INTEGER` for `L_COMM`.
- d. No tuning required.

6. Which of the statements are true about inlining in PL/SQL subprograms?
  - a. The optimizer can inline only standalone stored functions.
  - b. The optimizer can inline only locally declared subprograms.
  - c. Inlining is always useful in performance irrespective of the size of the subprogram.
  - d. The optimizer cannot identify any subprogram for inlining when the optimizer level is set at 0.
7. Examine the following code and determine the output:

```

DECLARE
  FUNCTION F_ADD (P_NUM NUMBER)
  RETURN NUMBER
  IS
  BEGIN
    RETURN P_NUM + 10;
  END;
  BEGIN
    FOR I IN 122..382
    LOOP
      PRAGMA INLINE (F_ADD, 'YES');
      L_SUM := L_SUM + F_ADD (I);
    END LOOP;
  END;
/

```

PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL is set as 2.

- a. The local function F\_ADD would not be called inline unless PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL is set as 3.
  - b. The local function F\_ADD may be called inline because PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL is set as 2.
  - c. The local function F\_ADD would be called inline because PRAGMA INLINE marks it for inline.
  - d. Inlining cannot be done for locally declared subprograms.
8. The libraries generated from the real native compilation are stored in the SYSAUX tablespace.
    - a. True
    - b. False

9. Suggest the tuning considerations in the following PL/SQL block:

```
DECLARE
    L_SUM NATURALN := 0;
    L_ID VARCHAR2(10);
BEGIN
    L_ID := 256;
    L_SUM := L_ID * 1.5;
END;
```

- a. The data type of `L_SUM` can be changed to `NATURAL` and nullity can be verified in the executable section.
  - b. `L_SUM` must not be initialized with zero.
  - c. The multiple 1.5 must be assigned to a variable.
  - d. `L_ID` must be of an appropriate data type such as `NUMBER` or `PLS_INTEGER`.
10. Identify the correct statements about `PRAGMA INLINE`.
- a. It is the fifth pragma in Oracle besides `AUTONOMOUS_TRANSACTION`, `EXCEPTION_INIT`, `RESTRICT_REFERENCE`, and `SERIALLY_REUSABLE`.
  - b. It does not work for overloaded functions.
  - c. It does not work for `PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL = 1`.
  - d. `PRAGMA INLINE (<Function name>, ' YES')` is meaningless at `PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL = 3`, because the optimizer inlines all the subprograms.

# 9

## Caching to Improve Performance

Performance optimization is an immortal challenge in Oracle applications which demands sound essentials of a DBA and logical abilities of a developer. Every release of Oracle promises for new features to enhance the performance and scalability of an application.

In the last chapter, we saw the difference made by real native compilation and intra unit inlining. Another innovation was brought to notice in Oracle 11g and it was data caching. Data caching is a common feature to improvise upon the application performance. In the past, the architectural implementation of caching used to cache the data sets in the SGA buffer cache, but not the SQL with results. Oracle 11g presents a concrete effective feature which can restore the results in a dedicated component of SGA. It is not like the traditional features which boost performance but it is an alternate approach to yield better performance.

In simple terms, the result of an operation will be temporarily stored along with the operation specifications. Whenever the same operation would be repeated, instead of working out the whole operation again, system would directly return the previously stored result. We will cover the server result caching feature under the following topics:

- Introduction to result cache
  - SQL result cache
  - PL/SQL function result cache
  - OCI client result cache
- Configuring the database for the server result cache
  - The `DBMS_RESULT_CACHE` package

- Implementing result cache in SQL
  - Manual result cache
  - Automatic result cache
- Implementing result cache in PL/SQL

## Introduction to result cache

The term cache is not new in the Oracle family. Prior to Oracle 11g, we have often heard of caching queries in SGA. Oracle 11g makes major enhancements in this area and evolves two new caching features namely, server result cache and client result cache.

Result cache allows the storage of result sets from a SQL query or PL/SQL function in a specific memory location, known as cache memory, along with the query specifications. Now, whenever the same SQL or the function (with the same specifications) is re-executed, the server picks up the result directly from the cache memory. The approach bypasses the SQL or function execution process – thus, saving a substantial amount of time. The server makes almost no effort in executing the SQL or PL/SQL function by employing cache memory for frequently executing queries and functions.

The specific memory location or cache memory is a new SGA memory component, dedicated for cached results. The query specification includes the SQL and the input values required in the `WHERE` clause predicates. Since the cached results are maintained at the server, they are sharable across the sessions connecting to the same server.

The result cache feature operates in two flavors as follows:

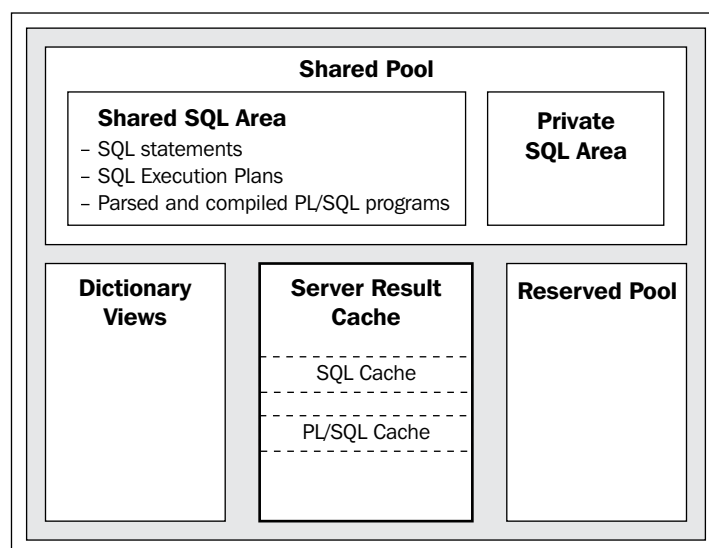
- Server-side result cache
  - SQL result cache
  - PL/SQL function result cache
- Client OCI result cache

## Server-side result cache

The server-side result cache is used only for the SQL queries and PL/SQL functions. The feature can be enabled by setting newly introduced initialization parameters. The parameter description and their usage have been discussed later in this chapter. Once the cache configuration is completed at the server, results from SQL queries and PL/SQL functions can be held at the server. The cache configuration includes the setting of the cache mode, cache memory size, and cache result size. We will overview the configuration portion in the next section.

Oracle 11g segregates a new component of SGA known as **result cache**. It is part of a shared pool and the server allocates a small part of the shared pool to it before its size is explicitly allocated by the user. We will see how the explicit allocation of the cache memory size depends on the overall memory component structure, later in this chapter. Once the cache component is allocated, the **Automatic Memory Management (AMM)** feature internally manages the concurrency among the memory components.

The following diagram gives a rough demonstration of the new memory infrastructure in Oracle 11g:



Let us briefly look over the SQL and PL/SQL result cache.

## SQL query result cache

By the virtue of implementation of the server result cache, results of SQL queries can be cached under the cache component of the Oracle server memory infrastructure.

The results of a frequently used SQL can be cached using a `RESULT_CACHE` hint. When a SQL query with the `RESULT_CACHE` hint is executed on a cache configured server, the server caches the query results along with its signature. The next time when the same query is re-executed, the server finds the result in its cache and instantly produces the result to the user. The query execution process is completely ignored and, hence, the performance bar raises significantly. Data warehousing environments are the top rated beneficiaries from the feature. The server cache helps to distribute the workload of the server in parallel query executions. Oracle recommends caching the results of frequently used queries which are likely to take more time to fetch the results. Intelligent caching is preferable over forced caching.

The cached results get invalidated when the table is altered or the data contained is updated.



The `NO_RESULT_CACHE` hint can be used to direct the server to ignore the caching for a SQL query.

## PL/SQL function result cache

The PL/SQL result cache is the second component of the server-side result cache feature. The PL/SQL function can be marked for caching and it includes a new `RESULT_CACHE` clause in its header. During the first execution of the function, the server caches the results returned by the function along with the input parameters (if any). Next time, when the function is used again with the same parameters, the server picks up the result from the cache, instead of executing it again.


The results returned by the function can be retained in the server cache, until the function body has been recompiled or modified. Once the function definition undergoes logical or structural changes, all its earlier cached results are purged from the cache memory at the server. There is no additional configuration required for the PL/SQL cache, the server-side result cache configuration works for both SQL and PL/SQL.

Similar to the SQL result cache, the result cached for a PL/SQL function is also available across the active sessions of the database.

## OCI client results cache

The caching feature allows OCI clients to fetch the result sets without accessing the database server memory but the result sets which are stored in the process (client's) memory are not. The process memory is enabled and configured at the database level and all OCI-based clients access it. Note that client result caching and database result caching are exclusive and independent methods of caching the data in memory.

Now, since the client results are cached into the client's memory cache component, it becomes easy for the OCI-based client to access their own cache memory instead of hitting the sever cache. If the required result set is found under the client cache, you save the execution time and SQL\*net round trip time of the query.

 Besides the result caching options which work within a database, Oracle provides a database caching option known as **In Memory Database (IMDB)** cache option. The IMDB cache option allows the caching of data from the frequently used database tables which share referential integrity amongst them. The group of cached tables is known as **cache group**, while a collection of cache groups is known as **cache grid**.

## Configuring the database for the server result cache

In this section, we will learn the configuration of the server-side result cache feature. Oracle 11g adds four new initialization parameters to DBA's basket to configure the caching feature on a database server. These parameters can be set at the database level and session level. Since these settings enable caching at the server side, results from both SQL and PL/SQL namespaces can be cached under the server cache.

The parameters are as follows:

- **RESULT\_CACHE\_MODE**: This parameter controls the caching operation by the server. The server operates the caching feature in three modes – **AUTO**, **MANUAL**, and **FORCE**. Check the server behavior in these modes. The result is held in the cache memory until it is flushed off explicitly. The cached results are invalidated when the result data is updated in the table or the table structure is altered.
  - **AUTO**: The server decides on its own whether the result of the SQL query has to be cached or not. The server takes the decision based on the query cost (as calculated by the optimizer) and the frequency of its usage.

- **MANUAL:** The server caches the results of only the queries, which are specifically marked for the result cache using the `RESULT_CACHE` hint. It is the default operation mode of the server at the time of the installation. The mode of operation is sometimes referred as **manual result cache**.
- **FORCE:** The server strictly caches the results of all possible SQL statements irrespective of the `RESULT_CACHE` hint specification in the query. Besides the queries with caching limitations, only the queries with the `NO_RESULT_CACHE` hint are ignored for caching. The caching feature in the **FORCE** mode is known as **automatic result cache**.
- **RESULT\_CACHE\_MAX\_SIZE:** The parameter allocates the cache memory as part of the shared pool. It must have a definite value to enable the caching feature. Certain recommendations from Oracle to set this parameter are as follows:
  - 0.25 percent of the `MEMORY_TARGET` parameter value.
  - 0.5 percent of the `SGA_TARGET` parameter value.
  - 1 percent of the `SHARED_POOL_SIZE` parameter value.
  - In addition to the above recommendations, the cache memory size cannot go beyond 75 percent of the shared pool.
- **RESULT\_CACHE\_MAX\_RESULT:** This parameter allocates the maximum size of a single result set in the cache memory. It is expressed as a percentage value of `RESULT_CACHE_MAX_SIZE`. It must be a positive integral value in the range of 0 to 100. By default, its value is 5 percent.
- **RESULT\_CACHE\_REMOTE\_EXPIRATION:** This parameter defines the retention time of a result cached from a remote object. It is expressed in minutes and its value is zero, by default.

The above parameters can be set for a system or a session using the `ALTER [SYSTEM | SESSION]` command, as shown in the following code syntax:

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET [PARAMETER] = [VALUE]
```

Note that the session level setting enables the session level caching.

Suppose the server has `MEMORY_TARGET` of 812 MB. The DBA tries to set the cache mode as **MANUAL**, cache memory as 200 MB, and cache result size as 20 percent:

```
/*Connect to SYSDBA*/
Conn sys/system as SYSDBA
Connected.

/*Alter system to set cache mode*/
ALTER SYSTEM SET RESULT_CACHE_MODE = MANUAL
/
```

```

Session altered.

/*Alter system to set max cache size*/
ALTER SYSTEM SET RESULT_CACHE_MAX_SIZE = 200M
/

Session altered.

/*Alter system to set max cache results*/
ALTER SYSTEM SET RESULT_CACHE_MAX_RESULT = 20
/

Session altered.

/*Alter system to set cache result retention time*/
ALTER SYSTEM SET RESULT_CACHE_REMOTE_EXPIRATION = 100
/

Session altered.

```

The caching parameter settings can be queried from the V\$PARAMETER dictionary view:

```

SELECT name, value
FROM v$parameter
WHERE name LIKE 'result_cache%'
/

```

NAME	VALUE
result_cache_mode	MANUAL
result_cache_max_size	209715200
result_cache_max_result	100
result_cache_remote_expiration	100

In addition to the initialization parameters shown in the preceding code snippet, Oracle 11g keeps a server process RCBG for Oracle RAC systems. It is used to handle the messages generated by the server processes which are attached to the instances in Oracle RAC architecture:

```

/*Connect as DBA*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.

/*Query the process details from V$BGPROCESS*/
SQL> SELECT NAME, DESCRIPTION
FROM V$BGPROCESS
WHERE NAME = 'RCBG'
/

```

NAME	DESCRIPTION
RCBG	Result Cache: Background

## The DBMS\_RESULT\_CACHE package

To coordinate the result cache activities at the server, Oracle 11g introduced a new built-in package `DBMS_RESULT_CACHE`. The package is owned by the SYS user. The package can be used to perform query result cache maintenance activities such as flushing, invalidating cache results dependent on an object, generating the memory report, and checking the cache status.

The public constants used in the package are as follows:

DBMS_RESULT_CACHE constants (reference: Oracle documentation)	
<code>STATUS_BYPS</code>	<code>CONSTANT VARCHAR(10) := 'BYPASS' ;</code>
<code>STATUS_DISA</code>	<code>CONSTANT VARCHAR(10) := 'DISABLED' ;</code>
<code>STATUS_ENAB</code>	<code>CONSTANT VARCHAR(10) := 'ENABLED' ;</code>
<code>STATUS_SYNC</code>	<code>CONSTANT VARCHAR(10) := 'SYNC' ;</code>

The subprograms used in the package are described in the following table:

DBMS_RESULT_CACHE subprograms (reference: Oracle documentation)	
<code>BYPASS</code> procedure	Sets the bypass mode for the result cache
<code>FLUSH</code> function and procedure	Attempts to remove all the objects from the result cache, and depending on the arguments retains or releases the memory and retains or clears the statistics
<code>INVALIDATE</code> functions and procedures	Invalidates all the result-set objects that are dependent upon the specified dependency object
<code>INVALIDATE_OBJECT</code> functions and procedures	Invalidates the specified result-set object(s)
<code>MEMORY_REPORT</code> procedure	Produces the memory usage report for the result cache
<code>STATUS</code> function	Checks the status of the result cache

For illustration, the cache memory report can be generated using the `MEMORY_REPORT` procedure, as shown in the following code snippet. Note that the cache size specifications are expressed as a percentage of shared pool:

```
/*Connect to sysdba*/
SQL> conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.

/*Enable the serveroutput variable to display the block messages*/
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
```

```

/*Generate the cache memory report*/
SQL> exec dbms_result_cache.memory_report
R e s u l t   C a c h e   M e m o r y   R e p o r t
[Parameters]
Block Size           = 1K bytes
Maximum Cache Size   = 200M bytes (200K blocks)
Maximum Result Size  = 40M bytes (40K blocks)
[Memory]
Total Memory = 9460 bytes [0.004% of the Shared Pool]
... Fixed Memory = 9460 bytes [0.004% of the Shared Pool]
... Dynamic Memory = 0 bytes [0.000% of the Shared Pool]

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

```

Since no results have been cached until now, the report shows 0 bytes for dynamic memory. The cache memory report, shown in the preceding code snippet, also serves as a confirmation for the feature being enabled successfully on the database server. In case the configuration is not proper, the memory report simply displays the following message:

```

SQL> EXEC dbms_result_cache.memory_report
R e s u l t   C a c h e   M e m o r y   R e p o r t
Cache is disabled.

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

```

We can check the current status of cache on the server by using the `STATUS` function as follows:

```

SQL> SELECT dbms_result_cache.status FROM DUAL
/

STATUS
-----
ENABLED

```

## Implementing the result cache in SQL

As we learned earlier, the database must be configured to enable server-side result caching. Let us now go through illustrations of the result cache in SQL.

### Manual result cache

If the result cache operation mode is set as `MANUAL`, the caching feature is known as **manual result cache**. Here, the user has to explicitly specify the `RESULT_CACHE` hint in order to cache the query result. The Oracle server would not automatically cache any result set.

The `RESULT_CACHE_MODE` parameter can be set by the DBA to enable manual result caching:

```
/*Connect as SYSDBA*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.

/*Set the parameter as Manual*/
ALTER SYSTEM SET RESULT_CACHE_MODE=MANUAL
/

System altered.
```

We will flush the cache memory and shared pool to clear all the earlier cached results:

```
/*Flush all the earlier cached results*/
SQL> EXEC DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.FLUSH
/

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

/*Flush the shared pool*/
SQL> alter system flush shared_pool
/

System altered.
```

Once the cache operation mode is set, the SQL query can be executed using the `RESULT_CACHE` optimizer hint. The hint instructs the server to cache the results of the particular query in the cache component of the memory:

```
/*Connect as ORADEV*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Execute the query to get SMITH's salary*/
SQL> SELECT /*+RESULT_CACHE*/ sal
      FROM employees
      WHERE EMPNO = 7369
/

      SAL
-----
      800
```

Generate the explain plan for the SQL query:

```
/*Generate the explain plan for the query*/
SQL> EXPLAIN PLAN FOR
      SELECT /*+RESULT_CACHE*/ sal
      FROM employees
```

```

WHERE empno = 7369
/
Explained.

```

Query the explain plan from PLAN\_TABLE:

```

/*Check the Explain plan*/
SQL> SELECT * FROM TABLE(DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY)
/

```

Refer to the following screenshot for the output of the preceding code block as follows:

PLAN_TABLE_OUTPUT									
Plan hash value: 833960231									
Id	Operation	Name	Rows	Bytes	Cost	(%CPU)	Time		
0	SELECT STATEMENT		1	8	1	<0>	00:00:01		
1	RESULT CACHE	6jwjx7ap21w71g658hxt5vwng3	1	8	1	<0>	00:00:01		
2	TABLE ACCESS BY INDEX ROWID	EMPLOYEES	1	8	1	<0>	00:00:01		
* 3	INDEX UNIQUE SCAN	SYS_C0014587	1		0	<0>	00:00:01		

Note the RESULT\_CACHE operation in the explain plan. It implies that the Oracle server has stored the query results in the cache memory with the cache ID 6jwjx7ap21w71g658hxt5vwng3. The same cache ID would be used for the further re-execution of the same SQL.

In addition, we have a new section under PLAN\_TABLE\_OUTPUT as result cache information (identified by operation ID). This section represents the result cache metadata for this query. The result cache report contains the dependent tables information.

## Automatic result cache

If the result cache operation mode is FORCE, the caching feature becomes automatic and the server strictly caches results of all the queries executed. The RESULT\_CACHE hint is obsolete and ineffective at the time of automatic result caching. For any query (which is rarely executed), a NO\_RESULT\_CACHE hint can be specified to override the server operation mode and ignore the query results for caching.

Let us check out how it works:

```

/*Connect as sysdba*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected

/*Alter the system to set the new cache mode*/
ALTER SYSTEM SET RESULT_CACHE_MODE=FORCE

```

```

/
System altered.

/*Flush all the earlier cached results*/
SQL> EXEC DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.FLUSH
/

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

/*Flush the shared pool*/
SQL> alter system flush shared_pool
/

System altered.

```

Now, execute the same SQL query without the RESULT\_CACHE hint:

```

/*Connect as USER*/
SQL> CONN ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Execute the below SQL to generate the explain plan for the query*/
SQL> EXPLAIN PLAN FOR
      SELECT sal
      FROM employees
      WHERE empno=7369
/

Explained.

/*Query the Explain plan*/
SQL> SELECT * FROM TABLE(DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY)
/

```

Refer to the following screenshot for the output of the preceding code block:

PLAN_TABLE_OUTPUT									
-----									
Plan hash value: 833960231									
-----									
Id	Operation	Name	Rows	Bytes	Cost	(%CPU)	Time		
0	SELECT STATEMENT		1	8	1	<0>	00:00:01		
1	RESULT CACHE	6jwix7ap21w71g658hxt5vung3							
2	TABLE ACCESS BY INDEX ROWID	EMPLOYEES	1	8	1	<0>	00:00:01		
* 3	INDEX UNIQUE SCAN	SYS_C0014587	1		0	<0>	00:00:01		

The explain plan shows the RESULT\_CACHE component and its cache ID in the cache memory. Note that no hint has been given in the SQL query, but Oracle caches the query results by virtue of its operation mode.

## Result cache metadata

Oracle facilitates the monitoring of real-time cache information in the database through result cache dynamic performance views. These views are owned by SYS and content is always in synchronization with the latest database activities.



Actual dynamic performance views are prefixed with v\_\$.  
Their public synonyms are prefixed with v\$.

The following table enlists the result cache dynamic views along with their purpose:

Synonym	Purpose
V\$RESULT_CACHE_STATISTICS	Records the server cache performance stats, including block count and create count values
V\$RESULT_CACHE_MEMORY	Captures the server cache memory stats (in terms of blocks)
V\$RESULT_CACHE_OBJECTS	Captures the cached result sets information including status
V\$RESULT_CACHE_DEPENDENCY	Captures the dependencies of a result cache

Retrieve the cached result information. The dynamic view V\$RESULT\_CACHE\_OBJECTS captures the information of the cached results. Some of the accomplishments of this view are as follows:

- A result in the cache memory stores the query result as the *Result* type and caches its dependent object information as the *Dependency* type.
- The results are cached by the user ID as their creator ID.
- The namespace (SQL or PL/SQL) associated with a cached result differentiates the caching from the two components of the server-side result cache.

The *STATUS* column determines the validity status of a cached result. The status of a cached result can be one of the following:

- **NEW:** An under construction cache result
- **PUBLISHED:** A cache result ready to be used
- **INVALID:** An invalid result due to data update or DDL on the dependent object
- **EXPIRED:** An expired cached result that is, the result which has crossed the expiration time

- **BYPASS:** The cached result has been marked for bypass and in bypass mode, the existing cached results are ignored in the query optimizations and new results are not cached

Out of the preceding status list, only the results with the **PUBLISHED** status are the healthiest ones to be used by other SQL queries:

```
/*Connect as SYSDBA*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.
```

```
/*Query the User id of the ORADE user to query its cached results*/
SQL> SELECT user_id
      FROM dba_users
      WHERE username = 'ORADEV'
/
```

```
      USER_ID
-----
          97
```

```
/*Query the cached results*/
SQL> SELECT id, type, status, cache_id
      FROM V$RESULT_CACHE_OBJECTS
      WHERE CREATOR_UID = 97
/
```

```
      ID      TYPE      STATUS      CACHE_ID
-----
      30      Dependency  Published  ORADEV.EMPLOYEES
      31      Result      Published  6jwjx7ap21w71g658hxt5vwng3
```

```
/*Query the SQL associated with the above cached results*/
SQL> SELECT id, name, namespace
      FROM V$RESULT_CACHE_OBJECTS
      WHERE cache_id = '6jwjx7ap21w71g658hxt5vwng3'
/
```

```

ID  NAME
-----
31  SELECT /*+RESULT CACHE*/ SAL FROM EMPLOYEES WHERE EMPNO=7369 SQL

```

## Query result cache dependencies

The dependent objects of a given cache result can be queried from the dynamic performance `V$RESULT_CACHE_DEPENDENCY`. The `RESULT_ID` column of the view references the `ID` column of the `Result` type cache entries in `V$RESULT_CACHE_OBJECTS`:

```
/*Connect as SYSDBA*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.

/*Query result cache dependencies for cache id 31*/
SQL> SELECT *
      FROM V$RESULT_CACHE_DEPENDENCY WHERE
      RESULT_ID = 31
/
```

RESULT_ID	DEPEND_ID	OBJECT_NO
31	30	80571

```
/*Verify the dependent object in DBA_OBJECTS table*/
SQL> SELECT owner, object_name
      FROM dba_objects
      WHERE object_id = 80571
/
```

OWNER	OBJECT_NAME
ORADEV	EMPLOYEES

## Cache memory statistics

The current cache memory statistics can be queried from the `V$RESULT_CACHE_STATISTICS` dynamic view. It gives the maximum block count and used block count information.

**Create Count Success** denotes the number of results which are successfully cached in the server result cache.

**Find Count Value** denotes the number of cached results which are successfully used in the repeated executions of the cached queries.

Refer to the following code snippet:

```
/*Cache result characteristics*/
SQL> SELECT *
      FROM V$RESULT_CACHE_STATISTICS
/
```

ID	NAME	VALUE
-----		
1	Block Size (Bytes)	1024
2	Block Count Maximum	204800
3	Block Count Current	32
4	Result Size Maximum (Blocks)	40960
5	Create Count Success	1
6	Create Count Failure	0
7	Find Count	0
8	Invalidation Count	0
9	Delete Count Invalid	0
10	Delete Count Valid	0
11	Hash Chain Length	1

11 rows selected.

## Invalidation of SQL result cache

The result cached in the server cache gets invalidated if the dependent object gets invalidated or the data in the dependent tables gets updated. The result is still cached in the server cache but marked with the `INVALID` status.

First, we will generate a sample cache result at the server cache:

```
/*Connect as SYSDBA*/
CONN sys/system AS SYSDBA
Connected.

/*Flush the cache memory to clear the earlier cached results*/
EXEC DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.flush;
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

/*Flush the shared pool*/
SQL> alter system flush shared_pool
/

System altered.

/*Connect as ORADEV*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.
```

```

/*Generate explain plan for a Query with result cache hint*/
Explain plan for select /*+result_cache*/ * from employees
/

Explained.

/*Check the PLAN_TABLE output*/
SELECT * FROM TABLE (DBMS_XPLAN.DISPLAY)
/

```

Refer to the following screenshot for the output of the preceding code block:

PLAN_TABLE_OUTPUT							
Plan hash value: 1445457117							
Id	Operation	Name	Rows	Bytes	Cost (%CPU)	Time	
0	SELECT STATEMENT		14	532	3	<0>	00:00:01
1	RESULT CACHE	7j5z4u9hzff4036czuj67bwqnt					
2	TABLE ACCESS FULL	EMPLOYEES	14	532	3	<0>	00:00:01

Now, the server contains a cached result with the cache ID  
7j5z4u9hzff4036czuj67bwqnt. Verify it in the following code snippet:

```

/*Connect as SYSDBA*/
CONN sys/system AS SYSDBA
Connected.

/*Query the result cached at the server*/
SELECT id, type, status, namespace, cache_id
FROM V$RESULT_CACHE_OBJECTS
WHERE creator_uid = (SELECT user_id
                     FROM DBA_USERS
                     WHERE username='ORADEV')
/

```

ID	TYPE	STATUS	NAMES	CACHE_ID
3	Dependency	Published		ORADEV.EMPLOYEES
4	Result	Published	SQL	7j5z4u9hzff4036czuj67bwqnt

Now, we will update the salary of the employees:

```

/*Connect to ORADEV user*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Update salary of employees in EMPLOYEES table*/
SQL> UPDATE employees
      SET sal = sal+100

```

```
/

14 rows updated.

/*Commit the transaction*/
SQL> commit;
Commit complete.
```

When we query the cached result in V\$RESULT\_CACHE\_OBJECTS, the earlier cached results are found to be invalidated:

```
/*Connect as SYSDBA*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.

/*Query the result cache objects view to check the INVALID status*/
SELECT id, type, status, namespace, cache_id
FROM V$RESULT_CACHE_OBJECTS
WHERE creator_uid = (SELECT user_id
                     FROM DBA_USERS
                     WHERE username='ORADEV')
/
```

ID	TYPE	STATUS	NAMES	CACHE_ID
3	Dependency	Published		ORADEV.EMPLOYEES
4	Result	Invalid	SQL	7j5z4u9hzff4036czuj67bwqnt

## Displaying the result cache memory report

The cache memory report can be generated from the DBMS\_RESULT\_CACHE package using the MEMORY\_REPORT procedure. The report displays the following details:

- A single block size
- Maximum cache memory available
- Maximum size of a cached result
- Used and unused portion of the cache memory
- Count of the cached results, invalidated results, and dependent objects

A sample cache memory report looks as follows:

```
/*Connect as SYSDBA*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.
```

```
/*Enable the serveroutput variable to display the block messages*/
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
```

```
/*Generate the cache memory report*/
SQL> EXEC DBMS_RESULT_CACHE.MEMORY_REPORT
R e s u l t   C a c h e   M e m o r y   R e p o r t
[Parameters]
Block Size = 1K bytes
Maximum Cache Size = 200M bytes (200K blocks)
Maximum Result Size = 40M bytes (40K blocks)
[Memory]
Total Memory = 134992 bytes [0.062% of the Shared Pool]
Fixed Memory = 9460 bytes [0.004% of the Shared Pool]
Dynamic Memory = 125532 bytes [0.058% of the Shared Pool]
Overhead = 92764 bytes
Cache Memory = 32K bytes (32 blocks)
Unused Memory = 30 blocks
Used Memory = 2 blocks
Dependencies = 1 blocks (1 count)
Results = 1 blocks
SQL = 1 blocks (1 count)
```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

## Read consistency of the SQL result cache

While the server searches the cached result of a query, the query must ensure read consistency. The clauses given in the following list must hold true for the database to use the cache:

- In a session, if the table (whose earlier query results are cached) is under an uncommitted transaction, the database would not cache its results. The queries using the table fetch the result from the server cache until the transaction is committed and the cached result gets invalidated.
- For the query result to be reusable, the query must make use of flashback to specify the timeframe.

## Limitation of SQL result cache

The result of a SQL query will not be cached if the SQL includes dictionary views, temporary tables, SYS-owned tables, sequences, pseudo columns (such as CURRVAL, NEXTVAL, SYSDATE, LEVEL, ROWNUM and so on), or non-deterministic PL/SQL functions.

## Implementing result cache in PL/SQL

Result caching in PL/SQL is second component of server-side caching in Oracle 11g. As we discussed briefly in the first section, results of frequently used PL/SQL functions can be retained at the server cache. The PL/SQL result cache feature uses the same infrastructure as the server result cache. When a function marked for result cache is executed, its result is cached at the server cache along with the parameters. The server picks up the result from the cache memory, if the same function is executed with the same parameters. In this way, the server saves a handful of time by bypassing the execution of the function body every time it is invoked, resulting into enhanced performance. The function can be a standalone, packaged, or locally declared (in a subprogram, not in anonymous PL/SQL block) one.

However, the cached result gets invalidated when the function or its referencing tables undergo a structural change followed by recompilation. The cached result also sets to the invalid state when the data in any of the referencing tables is updated.

As a common property of the server-side result cache, the cached result remains available for all connected active sessions of the same database.

## The RESULT\_CACHE clause

The PL/SQL cache implementation and execution is similar to the RESULT\_CACHE hint in SQL. The same hint appears as a keyword in the PL/SQL function definition. A function whose results are to be cached must include the RESULT\_CACHE clause in its header. The clause asks the database to cache the results of the function with its actual arguments. Syntax of the new function header looks as follows:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION [FUNCTION NAME]
RETURN [Return data type]
  RESULT_CACHE
  RELIES ON [TABLE NAME] (optional)
AS
BEGIN
...
...
END;
```

The `RELIES_ON` clause was introduced in Oracle 11g Release 1. The clause was used to specify the dependent table or view names, whose state would affect the status of the cached result. The cached result would be invalidated if the data in these tables or views undergo DML transaction. But later, the concept was found redundant when databases were updated to take care of managing dependencies. Therefore, the enhancement was withdrawn by Oracle in its subsequent 11g R2 release. The removal of the `RELIES_ON` clause increased authenticity and capability of the server cache by wiping out chances of error due to dependency.

Once the server has been configured for caching, PL/SQL function results can be readily cached. Check the following illustration:

```

/*Connect as SYSDBA*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.

/*Flush the cache memory to clear the earlier cached results*/
SQL> EXEC dbms_result_cache.flush;

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

/*Flush the shared pool*/
SQL> alter system flush shared_pool
/

System altered.
/*connect as ORADEV*/
Conn ORADEV /ORADEV
Connected.

/*Set the SERVEROUTPUT parameter on to display the results*/
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Create a function F_GET_SAL*/
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION f_get_sal (P_EMPNO NUMBER)
RETURN NUMBER
RESULT_CACHE
IS
    l_sal NUMBER;
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(' Function Body execution');
    SELECT sal
    INTO l_sal
    FROM employees
    WHERE empno=P_EMPNO;
    RETURN l_sal;
END;
/

Function created.

/*Declare a local variable and execute the function*/
SQL> VARIABLE m_sal NUMBER;

```

```
SQL> EXEC :m_sal := f_get_sal (7900);
Function Body execution
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
SQL> PRINT m_sal
      M_SAL
-----
      1050
```

As soon as the function is executed for an input argument, the server caches the function result for this parameter. Let us now investigate the server cache memory for the function result:

```
/*Connect as sysdba*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.

/*Query the cached results*/
SELECT id,status,name, type, namespace
FROM v$result_cache_objects
WHERE creator_uid = (SELECT user_id
                     FROM dba_users
                     WHERE username='ORADEV')
/
```

Refer to the following screenshot for the output of the preceding code block:

ID	STATUS	NAME	TYPE	NAMES
2	Published	ORADEV.EMPLOYEES	Dependency	
0	Published	ORADEV.F_GET_SAL	Dependency	
1	Published	"ORADEV"."F_GET_SAL"::8."F_GET_SAL"#fac892c7867b54c6 #1	Result	PLSQL

The function result has been cached, along with the referenced object that is, the EMPLOYEES table. Next time, if the function is invoked with the same parameter 7900, the F\_GET\_SAL function would not be executed. In the following repeated execution of F\_GET\_SAL, note that the display message function body execution has not been printed. It is because the function result has been picked up from the server cache:

```
/*connect as ORADEV*/
Conn ORADEV /ORADEV

/*Enable the serveroutput variable to display the block messages*/
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Declare a bind variable to capture the function execution results*/
SQL> VARIABLE m_sal NUMBER;
SQL> EXEC :m_sal := f_get_sal (7900);
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
SQL> PRINT m_sal
      M_SAL
-----
      1050
```

For the parameter values different from the 7900, server executes the F\_GET\_SAL function, returns and caches the result at the server. In the following function call for the argument 7844, note that the display message from dbms\_output has been printed. This implies that the function body has been executed once:

```

/*Enable the serveroutput variable to display the block messages*/
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Declare a bind variable to capture the function execution results*/
SQL> variable m_other_sal number;
SQL> EXEC :m_other_sal := f_get_sal (7844);
Function Body execution

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

/*Print the results*/
SQL> PRINT m_other_sal;

M_OTHER_SAL
-----
          1600

```

The result from the above function execution for employee, if 7844 is cached and its information can be queried in the V\$RESULT\_CACHE\_OBJECTS view, is as follows:

```

/*Connect to SYSDBA*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.

/*Check the cached results*/
SELECT id, status, type, cache_id
FROM v$result_cache_objects
ORDER BY id
/

```

ID	STATUS	TYPE	CACHE_ID
0	Published	Dependency	ORADEV.F_GET_SAL
1	Published	Result	97wusxcnc35b3053yrt02j5qc7
2	Published	Dependency	ORADEV.EMPLOYEES
3	Published	Result	97wusxcnc35b3053yrt02j5qc7

The PL/SQL caching metadata is stored in the same way as it is done in the SQL result caching. The same type (Result and Dependency) and status (New, Published, Invalid, Expired, or Bypass) appear when querying the cached result information in V\$RESULT\_CACHE\_OBJECTS. The dependent object information can be queried from V\$RESULT\_CACHE\_DEPENDENCY. Once the function result is cached at the server, the counts in V\$RESULT\_CACHE\_STATISTICS would get updated automatically.

Now, let us generate the cache memory report to verify the PL/SQL cache result entries. In the report, note the PL/SQL result's counts, which are cached under used memory:

```
/*Connect to SYSDBA*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.

/*Enable the serveroutput variable to display the block messages*/
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
SQL> exec dbms_result_cache.memory_report
R e s u l t   C a c h e   M e m o r y   R e p o r t
[Parameters]
Block Size           = 1K bytes
Maximum Cache Size   = 200M bytes (200K blocks)
Maximum Result Size  = 100M bytes (100K blocks)
[Memory]
Total Memory = 140616 bytes [0.064% of the Shared Pool]
Fixed Memory = 9460 bytes [0.004% of the Shared Pool]
Dynamic Memory = 131156 bytes [0.060% of the Shared Pool]
Overhead = 98388 bytes
Cache Memory = 32K bytes (32 blocks)
Unused Memory = 28 blocks
Used Memory = 4 blocks
Dependencies = 2 blocks (2 count)
Results = 2 blocks
PLSQL      = 2 blocks (2 count)

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

## Cross-session availability of cached results

Once again, by virtue of common features of the server-side cache, the function results cached in one session would be accessible in all the sessions. The reason for this is the function result which is cached in the SGA and SGA is available for all the sessions.

To be noted, PL/SQL function result caching works only if the formal parameters are passed by reference. This is one of the limitation of the result cache feature in PL/SQL.

## Invalidation of PL/SQL result cache

The function result cache gets invalidated if the function or its referencing table undergo a DDL change (alter, modify, or recompilation). In addition, even if the data contained in any of the referencing table gets updated, the server purges the cached result.

Currently, we have two published cache results from the last demonstration:

```

/*Connect to DBA*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.

/*Query the cached results*/
SELECT id, status, type, cache_id
FROM v$result_cache_objects
ORDER BY id
/

```

ID	STATUS	TYPE	CACHE_ID
0	Published	Dependency	ORADEV.F_GET_SAL
1	Published	Result	97wusxcnc35b3053yrt02j5qc7
2	Published	Dependency	ORADEV.EMPLOYEES
3	Published	Result	97wusxcnc35b3053yrt02j5qc7

This time, without flushing the results, we will recompile the function to observe the effect on the cached results:

```

/*Connect to the ORADEV user*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Compile the function*/
ALTER FUNCTION F_GET_SAL COMPILE
/

Function altered.

```

Now, when we check the cache object information in V\$RESULT\_CACHE\_OBJECTS, the Published results will be invalidated:

```

/*Connect to SYSDBA*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.

/*Query the cached results*/
SELECT id, status, type, cache_id
FROM v$result_cache_objects
ORDER BY id
/

```

ID	STATUS	TYPE	CACHE_ID
0	Published	Dependency	ORADEV.F_GET_SAL
1	Invalid	Result	97wusxcnc35b3053yrt02j5qc7
2	Published	Dependency	ORADEV.EMPLOYEES
3	Invalid	Result	97wusxcnc35b3053yrt02j5qc7

The observation deduces that the cached result is highly sensitive to the changes occurring on the objects with which it shares direct and indirect dependencies.

## Limitations of PL/SQL function result cache

The efficiencies and accomplishments of the server result cache are beyond doubts. However, in some exceptional cases the caching feature is automatically ignored by the database server. We will discuss certain limitations of the result caching feature in Oracle.

### Argument and return type restrictions

The argument and return type limitations are as follows:

- Functions with pass by value parameters (OUT or IN OUT)
- Functions with CLOB, NCLOB, or BLOB arguments
- Functions with arguments of a user-defined object or collection type
- Function return type is LOB

### Function structural restrictions

The function structural limitations are as follows:

- Functions which are created with its invoker's rights.
- The function declared locally in an anonymous PL/SQL block. Oracle raises the following PLS-00999 exception:

```
PLS-00999: implementation restriction (may be temporary) RESULT_
CACHE is disallowed on subprograms in anonymous blocks
```

It appears as a temporary restriction and might be seen in the forthcoming releases. However, a function declared locally in a subprogram (procedure or function) can still be stored in the server cache.

- Pipelined table functions

## Summary

In this chapter, we learned how server result caching can dramatically improve performance in SQL and PL/SQL applications. We understood the database configuration required to enable the caching feature at the server. We learned the SQL result caching and PL/SQL function result caching through demonstrations.

In the next chapter, we will learn the PL/SQL analysis steps and techniques.

## Practice exercise

1. The initialization parameter settings for your database are as follows:

```
MEMORY_TARGET = 500M
RESULT_CACHE_MODE = MANUAL
RESULT_CACHE_MAX_SIZE = 0
```

You execute a query by using the `RESULT_CACHE` hint. Which statement is true in this scenario?

- a. The query results are not stored in the cache because no memory is allocated for the result cache.
  - b. The query results are stored in the cache because Oracle implicitly manages the cache memory.
  - c. The query results are not stored in the cache because `RESULT_CACHE_MODE` is `MANUAL`.
  - d. The query results are stored in the cache automatically when `RESULT_CACHE_MODE` is `MANUAL`.
2. You set the following initialization parameter settings for your database:

```
MEMORY_TARGET = 500M
RESULT_CACHE_MODE = FORCE
RESULT_CACHE_MAX_SIZE = 200M
```

You execute the following query:

```
SELECT /*+RESULT_CACHE*/ ENAME, DEPTNO
FROM EMPLOYEES
WHERE EMPNO = 7844
/
```

Which of the following statements are true?

- a. The query results are cached because the SQL uses the `RESULT_CACHE` hint.
  - b. The query results are cached because the result cache mode is `FORCE`.
  - c. The query results are not cached because the SQL uses the `RESULT_CACHE` hint.
  - d. The `RESULT_CACHE` hint is ignored when result cache mode is `FORCE`.
3. The cached query result becomes invalid when the data accessed by the query gets modified.
- a. True
  - b. False
4. The SQL query result cache is persistent only for the current session.
- a. True
  - b. False
5. Which of the following PL/SQL objects' results cannot be cached?
- a. Standalone function
  - b. Procedure
  - c. A function local to a procedure
  - d. Packaged function
6. The `RELIES_ON` clause in the PL/SQL function result cache can be used to specify the dependent tables or views whose state would affect the cached result.
- a. True
  - b. False
7. Server settings are as follows:
- ```
MEMORY_TARGET = 500M
RESULT_CACHE_MODE = FORCE
RESULT_CACHE_MAX_SIZE = 200M
```

Identify the SQL queries whose results cannot be cached by the server.

- a. `SELECT ename, sal FROM employees WHERE empno = 7900;`
- b. `SELECT seq_empid.nextval FROM DUAL;`
- c. `SELECT ename, sysdate, hiredate FROM employees;`
- d. `SELECT dname, loc FROM departments WHERE deptno = 10;`

8. Identify the correct statements about the PL/SQL function result cache.
  - a. PL/SQL function result cache requires additional server configuration.
  - b. PL/SQL function result cache cannot be operated on procedures.
  - c. PL/SQL function result cache works with all categories of functions.
  - d. PL/SQL function cache features can work with the function which take collection type arguments.
9. Identify the admissible value of the STATUS column in V\$RESULT\_CACHE\_OBJECTS.
  - a. PUBLISHED
  - b. INVALID
  - c. USED
  - d. UNUSED
10. Choose the correct statement about the following sample cache memory statistics report:

| ID | NAME                         | VALUE  |
|----|------------------------------|--------|
| 1  | Block Size (Bytes)           | 1024   |
| 2  | Block Count Maximum          | 204800 |
| 3  | Block Count Current          | 32     |
| 4  | Result Size Maximum (Blocks) | 40960  |
| 5  | Create Count Success         | 1      |
| 6  | Create Count Failure         | 0      |
| 7  | Find Count                   | 0      |
| 8  | Invalidation Count           | 0      |
| 9  | Delete Count Invalid         | 0      |
| 10 | Delete Count Valid           | 0      |
| 11 | Hash Chain Length            | 1      |

- a. Create Count Success is the count of successfully cached results.
- b. Find Count is the count of the successfully cached results found and used in the queries.
- c. Invalidation Count is the count of the invalidated cached results.
- d. Block Count Maximum is the static value of total blocks available in the cache memory.



# 10

## Analyzing PL/SQL Code

Code writing and tuning is the first stage of application life cycle development. As this life cycle matures and grows, the maintenance of code base becomes mandatory for code analysis and forecasts. The code management strategy aims at code testing, tracing, profiling, and reporting the coding information. This chapter covers some recommended techniques to analyze PL/SQL code through Oracle-supplied resources such as data dictionary views, initialization parameters, and built-in packages. Within the scope of the chapter, we will cover the following topics:

- Tracing and generating reports on PL/SQL source code
- Reporting usage of identifiers in PL/SQL source code
- Extracting schema object definitions using `DBMS_METADATA`

### Track coding information

Once the development stage of the code base is over, it might be required to track through the code for search operation or to extract some crucial information for analysis or maintenance purposes. Such scenarios do not require thorough line-by-line digging as might seem to be the case. The line-by-line or code-by-code approach not only eats up a lot of time and resource but also ends up in a huge effort with tiny result. For this reason, Oracle supplies a set of dictionary views which make the life of analysts easy. The Oracle-supplied dictionary views are proven metadata sources of Oracle to provide accurate and detailed end results. The dictionary views used for tracking PL/SQL code information are `ALL_ARGUMENTS`, `ALL_OBJECTS`, `ALL_SOURCE`, `ALL_PROCEDURES`, and `ALL_DEPENDENCIES`.

The following diagram lists the dictionary views along with a brief description. Note that only `ALL_*` views are listed in the chart but, nevertheless, the same purpose is achieved by the other `[USER | DBA]` flavors too:

|                  |                                                                                         |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ALL_ARGUMENTS    | ■ Stores information about member subprograms and its arguments for a PL/SQL subprogram |
| ALL_OBJECTS      | ■ Stores the objects created in the database                                            |
| ALL_SOURCE       | ■ Stores the source code of the compilation and stores program units in a schema        |
| ALL_PROCEDURES   | ■ Stores the package, procedure, and function information                               |
| ALL_DEPENDENCIES | ■ Stores the dependencies of an object                                                  |

When a schema object is compiled and created in the database, SYS-owned tables capture the relevant information about the PL/SQL object. Dictionary views are built on top of the SYS-owned tables to present the information in a meaningful way. These views exist in the following three flavors:

- `USER`: Contains metadata of the objects whose owner is the current user
- `ALL`: Contains metadata of the objects accessible by the current user
- `DBA`: Contains metadata of all objects

Dictionary views are accessed by prefixing their scope with the name. It is not mandatory that a view must exist in all three flavors. For example, the `DBA_GLOBAL_CONTEXT` view exists, but the `USER_GLOBAL_CONTEXT` and `ALL_GLOBAL_CONTEXT` views do not exist.



All dictionary views along with their description can be queried from an Oracle-supplied view `DICTIONARY`.

Let us create a small procedure and a function to understand how the preceding dictionary views present meaningful metadata information. The `P_PRINT_NAME` procedure accepts a parameter and prints it in uppercase. A similar result is achieved by the `F_GET_NAME` function too:

```

/*Connect to ORADEV user*/
SQL> conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Enable the serveroutput to display the error messages*/
SQL> SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Create the procedure*/
SQL> CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE p_print_name (p_name VARCHAR2)
IS
    l_name VARCHAR2(255);
BEGIN

/*Convert the input string case to upper*/
    l_name := UPPER(p_name);

/*Print the input string in upper case*/
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(l_name);
END;
/

Procedure created.

/*Create the function*/
SQL> create or replace function f_print_name (p_name varchar2)
return VARCHAR2
IS
begin

/*Return the string in upper case*/
    return UPPER(p_name);
END;
/

Function created.

```

## [DBA | ALL | USER]\_ARGUMENTS

Now, let us query each of the dictionary views to check the information collected by them. We will start with the `USER_ARGUMENTS` view. The view contains object properties such as the object ID, its name, its parent package name (if any), and argument information such as arguments of the subprogram, its sequence, data type, and parameter passing mode.

The structure of the view is as follows:

```
/*Print the structure of USER_ARGUMENTS*/
SQL> DESC USER_ARGUMENTS
```

| Name               | Null?    | Type           |
|--------------------|----------|----------------|
| -----              |          |                |
| OBJECT_NAME        |          | VARCHAR2 (30)  |
| PACKAGE_NAME       |          | VARCHAR2 (30)  |
| OBJECT_ID          | NOT NULL | NUMBER         |
| OVERLOAD           |          | VARCHAR2 (40)  |
| SUBPROGRAM_ID      |          | NUMBER         |
| ARGUMENT_NAME      |          | VARCHAR2 (30)  |
| POSITION           | NOT NULL | NUMBER         |
| SEQUENCE           | NOT NULL | NUMBER         |
| DATA_LEVEL         | NOT NULL | NUMBER         |
| DATA_TYPE          |          | VARCHAR2 (30)  |
| DEFAULTED          |          | VARCHAR2 (1)   |
| DEFAULT_VALUE      |          | LONG           |
| DEFAULT_LENGTH     |          | NUMBER         |
| IN_OUT             |          | VARCHAR2 (9)   |
| DATA_LENGTH        |          | NUMBER         |
| DATA_PRECISION     |          | NUMBER         |
| DATA_SCALE         |          | NUMBER         |
| RADIX              |          | NUMBER         |
| CHARACTER_SET_NAME |          | VARCHAR2 (44)  |
| TYPE_OWNER         |          | VARCHAR2 (30)  |
| TYPE_NAME          |          | VARCHAR2 (30)  |
| TYPE_SUBNAME       |          | VARCHAR2 (30)  |
| TYPE_LINK          |          | VARCHAR2 (128) |
| PLS_TYPE           |          | VARCHAR2 (30)  |
| CHAR_LENGTH        |          | NUMBER         |
| CHAR_USED          |          | VARCHAR2 (1)   |

The view columns can be described with comments using the DICT\_COLUMNS dictionary view:

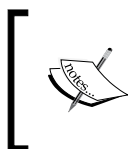
```
/*Query the view columns*/
SELECT column_name, comments
FROM dict_columns
WHERE table_name='USER_ARGUMENTS'
/
```

Refer to the following screenshot for the output:

| COLUMN_NAME        | COMMENTS                                                              |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| OBJECT_NAME        | Procedure or function name                                            |
| PACKAGE_NAME       | Package name                                                          |
| OBJECT_ID          | Object number of the object                                           |
| OVERLOAD           | Overload unique identifier                                            |
| SUBPROGRAM_ID      | Unique sub-program Identifier                                         |
| ARGUMENT_NAME      | Argument name                                                         |
| POSITION           | Position in argument list, or null for function return value          |
| SEQUENCE           | Argument sequence, including all nesting levels                       |
| DATA_LEVEL         | Nesting depth of argument for composite types                         |
| DATA_TYPE          | Datatype of the argument                                              |
| DEFAULTED          | Is the argument defaulted?                                            |
| DEFAULT_VALUE      | Default value for the argument                                        |
| DEFAULT_LENGTH     | Length of default value for the argument                              |
| IN_OUT             | Argument direction (IN, OUT, or IN/OUT)                               |
| DATA_LENGTH        | Length of the column in bytes                                         |
| DATA_PRECISION     | Length: decimal digits (NUMBER) or binary digits (FLOAT)              |
| DATA_SCALE         | Digits to right of decimal point in a number                          |
| RADIX              | Argument radix for a number                                           |
| CHARACTER_SET_NAME | Character set name for the argument                                   |
| TYPE_OWNER         | Owner name for the argument type in case of object types              |
| TYPE_NAME          | Object name for the argument type in case of object types             |
| TYPE_SUBNAME       | Subordinate object name for the argument type in case of object types |
| TYPE_LINK          | Database link name for the argument type in case of object types      |
| PLS_TYPE           | PL/SQL type name for numeric arguments                                |
| CHAR_LENGTH        | Character limit for string datatypes                                  |
| CHAR_USED          | Is the byte limit (B) or char limit (C) official for this string?     |

26 rows selected.

The ARGUMENT\_NAME view column denotes the actual argument name as given in the program header (DATA\_LEVEL = 0). If it is NULL, it signifies the return type of the function to be in OUT mode (DATA\_LEVEL = 0). For DATA\_LEVEL > 0, the argument is of object type or composite data type.



The USER\_ARGUMENTS view contains only the argument name, type, passing mode, and default value. However, the view does not maintain any information about the NOCOPY hint, if used with the OUT or IN OUT arguments.

The argument contained in the P\_PRINT\_NAME procedure and the F\_PRINT\_NAME function can be queried from the view as shown in the following code snippet. Observe the record entry with the NULL argument name which denotes the return type of the function:

```
/*Query the arugment for the procedure P_PRINT_NAME*/
SELECT object_name, subprogram_id, argument_name, data_type, in_out
FROM user_arguments
WHERE object_name IN ('P_PRINT_NAME', 'F_PRINT_NAME')
/
```

---

| OBJECT_NAME  | SUBPROGRAM_ID | ARGUMENT | DATA_TYPE | IN_OUT |
|--------------|---------------|----------|-----------|--------|
| -----        |               |          |           |        |
| F_PRINT_NAME | 1             | P_NAME   | VARCHAR2  | IN     |
| F_PRINT_NAME | 1             |          | VARCHAR2  | OUT    |
| P_PRINT_NAME | 1             | P_NAME   | VARCHAR2  | IN     |

## [DBA | ALL | USER]\_OBJECTS

The USER\_OBJECTS view simply stores the metadata information of the schema objects. Apart from storing basic information such as the object ID, name, or creation timestamp, it collects the information about the object type, status, and namespace details.

The structure of the dictionary view looks as shown in the following code snippet:

```
/*Display the structure of USER_OBJECTS*/
SQL> DESC USER_OBJECTS
```

| Name           | Null? | Type           |
|----------------|-------|----------------|
| -----          |       |                |
| OBJECT_NAME    |       | VARCHAR2 (128) |
| SUBOBJECT_NAME |       | VARCHAR2 (30)  |
| OBJECT_ID      |       | NUMBER         |
| DATA_OBJECT_ID |       | NUMBER         |
| OBJECT_TYPE    |       | VARCHAR2 (19)  |
| CREATED        |       | DATE           |
| LAST_DDL_TIME  |       | DATE           |
| TIMESTAMP      |       | VARCHAR2 (19)  |
| STATUS         |       | VARCHAR2 (7)   |
| TEMPORARY      |       | VARCHAR2 (1)   |
| GENERATED      |       | VARCHAR2 (1)   |
| SECONDARY      |       | VARCHAR2 (1)   |
| NAMESPACE      |       | NUMBER         |
| EDITION_NAME   |       | VARCHAR2 (30)  |

The view columns with comments can be queried from the DICT\_COLUMNS view:

```
/*Query the view columns*/
SELECT column_name, comments
FROM dict_columns
WHERE table_name='USER_OBJECTS'
/
```

Refer to the following screenshot for the output:

| COLUMN_NAME    | COMMENTS                                                                     |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| OBJECT_NAME    | Name of the object                                                           |
| SUBOBJECT_NAME | Name of the sub-object (for example, partition)                              |
| OBJECT_ID      | Object number of the object                                                  |
| DATA_OBJECT_ID | Object number of the segment which contains the object                       |
| OBJECT_TYPE    | Type of the object                                                           |
| CREATED        | Timestamp for the creation of the object                                     |
| LAST_DDL_TIME  | Timestamp for the last DDL change (including GRANT and REVOKE) to the object |
| TIMESTAMP      | Timestamp for the specification of the object                                |
| STATUS         | Status of the object                                                         |
| TEMPORARY      | Can the current session only see data that it place in this object itself?   |
| GENERATED      | Was the name of this object system generated?                                |
| SECONDARY      | Is this a secondary object created as part of icreate for domain indexes?    |
| NAMESPACE      | Namespace for the object                                                     |
| EDITION_NAME   | Name of the edition in which the object is actual                            |

14 rows selected.

In the preceding USER\_OBJECTS view structure, it is important to understand the behavior of the date type columns—CREATED, LAST\_DDL\_TIME and TIMESTAMP. The CREATED column stores the fixed value as the date when the object was created for the first time. The LAST\_DDL\_TIME column stores the date when the object was recompiled last time. The TIMESTAMP column stores the date when the source code of the object was modified. If the object is recompiled, only the LAST\_DDL\_TIME column gets updated. But if the source code of the object undergoes a modification, both TIMESTAMP and LAST\_DDL\_TIME get updated.

The EDITION\_NAME column stores the actual edition name of the object. Editions are non-schema objects which are used to maintain versions of schema objects. A new edition inherits all objects from the latest edition. Oracle 11g R2 brings in a mandatory default edition ORA\$BASE for all databases. Further reading can be continued at Oracle documentation ([http://docs.oracle.com/cd/E11882\\_01/appdev.112/e10471/adfns\\_editions.htm](http://docs.oracle.com/cd/E11882_01/appdev.112/e10471/adfns_editions.htm)).

The object properties of the P\_PRINT\_NAME procedure, as schema objects, can be retrieved as follows:

```
/Query the object properties of P_PRINT_NAME*/
SELECT object_id, object_type, status, namespace
FROM user_objects
WHERE object_name='P_PRINT_NAME'
/
```

| OBJECT_ID | OBJECT_TYPE | STATUS | NAMESPACE |
|-----------|-------------|--------|-----------|
| 81410     | PROCEDURE   | VALID  | 1         |

## [DBA | ALL | USER]\_SOURCE

The USER\_SOURCE dictionary view should give you the complete source code for the object which you request. Here is the structure of the view:

```
/*Display the structure of USER_SOURCE*/
SQL> DESC USER_SOURCE
```

| Name | Null? | Type            |
|------|-------|-----------------|
| NAME |       | VARCHAR2 (30)   |
| TYPE |       | VARCHAR2 (12)   |
| LINE |       | NUMBER          |
| TEXT |       | VARCHAR2 (4000) |

The columns of the USER\_SOURCE view, along with their comments, can be queried from the DICT\_COLUMNS view:

```
/*Query the view columns*/
SELECT column_name, comments
FROM dict_columns
WHERE table_name='USER_SOURCE'
/
```

| COLUMN_NAME | COMMENTS                                                                                                                |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| NAME        | Name of the object                                                                                                      |
| TYPE        | Type of the object: "TYPE", "TYPE BODY", "PROCEDURE", "FUNCTION", "PACKAGE", "PACKAGE BODY", "LIBRARY" or "JAVA SOURCE" |
| LINE        | Line number of this line of source                                                                                      |
| TEXT        | Source text                                                                                                             |

The source code of the P\_PRINT\_NAME program unit can be queried as follows:

```
/*Query the source code of P_PRINT_NAME*/
SELECT *
FROM user_SOURCE
WHERE name='P_PRINT_NAME'
/
```

| NAME         | TYPE      | LINE | TEXT                                       |
|--------------|-----------|------|--------------------------------------------|
| P_PRINT_NAME | PROCEDURE | 1    | PROCEDURE p_print_name (p_name VARCHAR2)   |
| P_PRINT_NAME | PROCEDURE | 2    | IS                                         |
| P_PRINT_NAME | PROCEDURE | 3    | l_name VARCHAR2(255);                      |
| P_PRINT_NAME | PROCEDURE | 4    | BEGIN                                      |
| P_PRINT_NAME | PROCEDURE | 5    | /*Convert the input string case to upper*/ |
| P_PRINT_NAME | PROCEDURE | 6    | l_name := UPPER(p_name);                   |
| P_PRINT_NAME | PROCEDURE | 7    | /*Print the input string in upper case*/   |
| P_PRINT_NAME | PROCEDURE | 8    | DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(l_name);              |
| P_PRINT_NAME | PROCEDURE | 9    | END;                                       |

9 rows selected.

## [DBA | ALL | USER]\_PROCEDURES

The `USER_PROCEEDURES` dictionary view stores the subprogram properties of an object. Unlike its name, it stores the details for a procedure, function, or packages contained in the database schema. The structure of the dictionary view looks as follows:

```
/*Display the structure of USER_PROCEEDURES*/
SQL> DESC USER_PROCEEDURES
```

| Name           | Null? | Type           |
|----------------|-------|----------------|
| -----          | ----- | -----          |
| OBJECT_NAME    |       | VARCHAR2 (128) |
| PROCEDURE_NAME |       | VARCHAR2 (30)  |
| OBJECT_ID      |       | NUMBER         |
| SUBPROGRAM_ID  |       | NUMBER         |
| OVERLOAD       |       | VARCHAR2 (40)  |
| OBJECT_TYPE    |       | VARCHAR2 (19)  |
| AGGREGATE      |       | VARCHAR2 (3)   |
| PIPELINED      |       | VARCHAR2 (3)   |
| IMPLTYPEOWNER  |       | VARCHAR2 (30)  |
| IMPLTYPENAME   |       | VARCHAR2 (30)  |
| PARALLEL       |       | VARCHAR2 (3)   |
| INTERFACE      |       | VARCHAR2 (3)   |
| DETERMINISTIC  |       | VARCHAR2 (3)   |
| AUTHID         |       | VARCHAR2 (12)  |

The columns of the `USER_PROCEEDURES` view can be queried from the `DICTIONARY_COLUMNS` view:

```
/*Query the view columns*/
SELECT column_name, comments
FROM dictionary_columns
WHERE table_name='USER_PROCEEDURES'
/
```

| COLUMN_NAME    | COMMENTS                                                                      |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -----          | -----                                                                         |
| OBJECT_NAME    | Name of the object: top level<br>function/procedure/package/type/trigger name |
| PROCEDURE_NAME | Name of the package or type subprogram                                        |
| OBJECT_ID      | Object number of the object                                                   |
| SUBPROGRAM_ID  | Unique sub-program identifier                                                 |
| OVERLOAD       | Overload unique identifier                                                    |
| OBJECT_TYPE    | The typename of the object                                                    |

|               |                                                       |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| AGGREGATE     | Is it an aggregate function ?                         |
| PIPELINED     | Is it a pipelined table function ?                    |
| IMPLTYPEOWNER | Name of the owner of the implementation type (if any) |
| IMPLTYPENAME  | Name of the implementation type (if any)              |
| PARALLEL      | Is the procedure parallel enabled ?                   |
| INTERFACE     |                                                       |
| DETERMINISTIC |                                                       |
| AUTHID        |                                                       |

14 rows selected.

From the above column description, it is important to understand a few columns such as IMPLTYPEOWNER, IMPLTYPENAME, and AUTHID. Implementation type and owner values interpret any object type association of the program. The AUTHID column shows the authorization holder during invocation – possible values can be DEFINER, if the program has to be invoked by its owner's rights, and CURRENT\_USER, if the program has to be invoked by its invoker.

The procedural properties of the P\_PRINT\_NAME subprogram can be queried from the view as follows:

```
/*Query the subprogram properties of P_PRINT_NAME*/
select object_id,object_type, overload, authid
FROM user_procedures
WHERE object_name='P_PRINT_NAME'
/
```

| OBJECT_ID | OBJECT_TYPE | OVERLOAD | AUTHID  |
|-----------|-------------|----------|---------|
| 81410     | PROCEDURE   |          | DEFINER |

## [DBA | ALL | USER]\_DEPENDENCIES

The USER\_DEPENDENCIES dictionary view reveals very important information about the dependencies shared by the object. In many cases, the dependency shared by an object is decisive over its validity status. The view contains the details of the objects which are referenced within the definition of a particular object:

```
/*Display the structure of USER_DEPENDENCIES*/
SQL> DESC USER_DEPENDENCIES
```

| Name | Null?    | Type          |
|------|----------|---------------|
| NAME | NOT NULL | VARCHAR2 (30) |
| TYPE |          | VARCHAR2 (18) |

|                      |                |
|----------------------|----------------|
| REFERENCED_OWNER     | VARCHAR2 (30)  |
| REFERENCED_NAME      | VARCHAR2 (64)  |
| REFERENCED_TYPE      | VARCHAR2 (18)  |
| REFERENCED_LINK_NAME | VARCHAR2 (128) |
| SCHEMAID             | NUMBER         |
| DEPENDENCY_TYPE      | VARCHAR2 (4)   |

The columns of the preceding view structure can be explained from the DICT\_COLUMNS view:

```
/*The view columns with comments*/
SELECT column_name, comments
FROM dict_columns
WHERE table_name='USER_DEPENDENCIES'
/
```

Refer to the following screenshot for the output:

| COLUMN_NAME          | COMMENTS                                                   |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| NAME                 | Name of the object                                         |
| TYPE                 | Type of the object                                         |
| REFERENCED_OWNER     | Owner of referenced object (remote owner if remote object) |
| REFERENCED_NAME      | Name of referenced object                                  |
| REFERENCED_TYPE      | Type of referenced object                                  |
| REFERENCED_LINK_NAME | Name of dblink if this is a remote object                  |
| SCHEMAID             |                                                            |
| DEPENDENCY_TYPE      |                                                            |

8 rows selected.

The dependency shared by the P\_PRINT\_NAME procedure can be queried as per the following query:

```
/*Query the dependent objects of P_PRINT_NAME*/
select type, referenced_owner, referenced_name, referenced_type
FROM user_dependencies
WHERE name='P_PRINT_NAME'
/
```

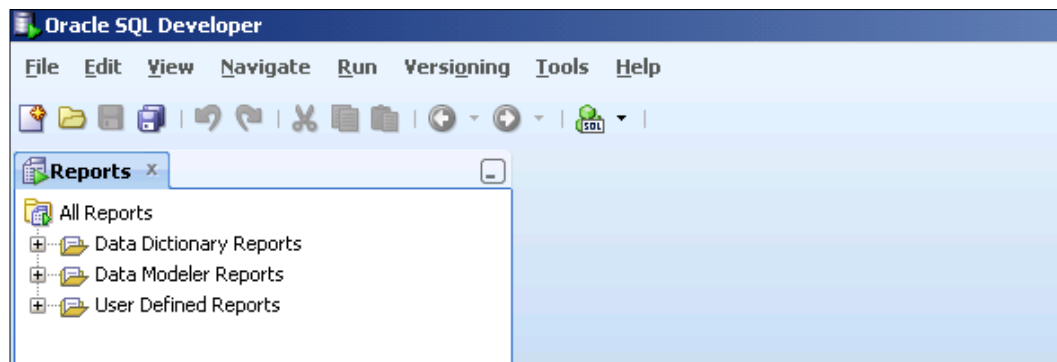
| TYPE      | REFERENCED_OWNER | REFERENCED_NAME              | REFERENCED_TYPE |
|-----------|------------------|------------------------------|-----------------|
| PROCEDURE | SYS              | STANDARD                     | PACKAGE         |
| PROCEDURE | SYS              | DBMS_OUTPUT                  | PACKAGE         |
| PROCEDURE | SYS              | SYS_STUB_FOR_PURITY_ANALYSIS | PACKAGE         |

## Using SQL Developer to find coding information

The object metadata information retrieved from the dictionary views is a conventional way to track code information. But these days, the IDE have been made self-sufficient to generate some vital predefined reports. The metadata information demonstrated in the last section using dictionary views can also be generated from SQL Developer. **SQL Developer** is a free UI based interactive IDE tool which boards multiple database utilities.

Here, we will demonstrate the tracking of code through SQL Developer:

1. Go to **View | Reports**:

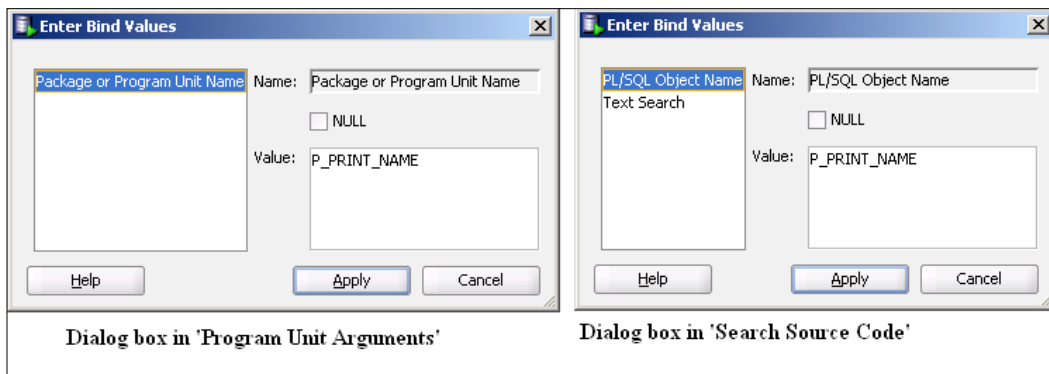


2. Go to **All Reports | Data Dictionary Reports | PLSQL**:
  - Under **PLSQL**, you find three options. These options are analogous to the dictionary views which we queried in the preceding section.
  - The **Program Unit Arguments** option queries the `USER_ARGUMENTS` dictionary view. The **Search Source Code** and **Unit Line Counts** options query the `USER_SOURCE` view.

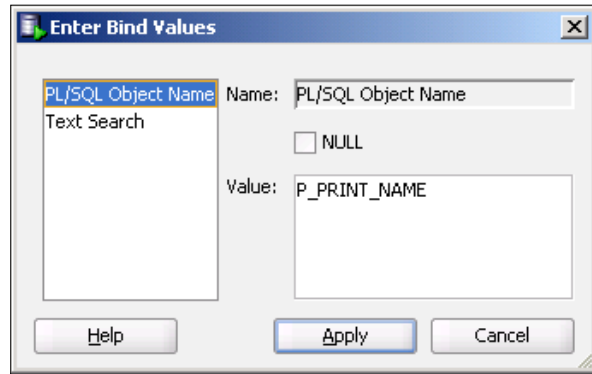
- When you click on any of the options for the first time, the following dialog box pops up. There you can select the connection, if you have multiple connections in your connect list:



3. Once the connection is selected from the drop-down list, another dialog box appears and prompts for user inputs:
  - For **Program Unit Arguments**, the dialog asks for **Package** or **Program Unit Name**.
  - For **Search Source Code**, the dialog box asks for **PL/SQL Object Name** or **Text Search**.
  - For **Unit Line Counts**, there is no dialog box, as it generates the line count report for all the schema objects:



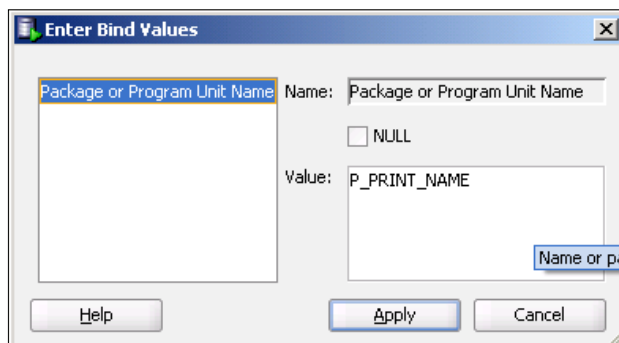
4. We can demonstrate **Search Source Code** by providing P\_PRINT\_NAME as input:



5. Click on **Apply** to generate the source code report:

| Search Source Code |                    |           |      |                                          |  |
|--------------------|--------------------|-----------|------|------------------------------------------|--|
| Refresh: 0         |                    |           |      |                                          |  |
| Owner              | PL/SQL Object Name | Type      | Line | Text                                     |  |
| ORADEV             | P_PRINT_NAME       | PROCEDURE | 1    | PROCEDURE p_print_name (p_name VARCHAR2) |  |
| ORADEV             | P_PRINT_NAME       | PROCEDURE | 2    | IS                                       |  |
| ORADEV             | P_PRINT_NAME       | PROCEDURE | 3    | l_name VARCHAR2(255);                    |  |
| ORADEV             | P_PRINT_NAME       | PROCEDURE | 4    | BEGIN                                    |  |
| ORADEV             | P_PRINT_NAME       | PROCEDURE | 5    | l_name := UPPER(p_name);                 |  |
| ORADEV             | P_PRINT_NAME       | PROCEDURE | 6    | DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(l_name);            |  |
| ORADEV             | P_PRINT_NAME       | PROCEDURE | 7    | END;                                     |  |

6. Demonstrate the generation of argument report from **Program Unit Arguments**:



- Click on the **Apply** button to generate the argument report for the given program unit:

| Owner  | Package | Program_Unit | Position | Argument | In_Out |
|--------|---------|--------------|----------|----------|--------|
| ORADEV | (null)  | P_PRINT_NAME | 1        | P_NAME   | In     |

## The DBMS\_DESCRIBE package

The DBMS\_DESCRIBE package is an Oracle built-in package which is used to gather information about the Oracle PL/SQL object—making it an essential Oracle data access component. It is owned by the SYS user, and all other users hitting the server, access its public synonym.

It contains only one subprogram that, is DESCRIBE\_PROCEDURE.

The structure of the DESCRIBE\_PROCEDURE subprogram is as follows:

```
DBMS_DESCRIBE.DESCRIBE_PROCEDURE (
    object_name          IN  VARCHAR2,
    reserved1            IN  VARCHAR2,
    reserved2            IN  VARCHAR2,
    overload             OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
    position             OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
    level               OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
    argument_name        OUT VARCHAR2_TABLE,
    datatype             OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
    default_value        OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
    in_out              OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
    length              OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
    precision            OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
    scale               OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
    radix               OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
    spare               OUT NUMBER_TABLE,
    include_string_constraints OUT BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE);
```

The DBMS\_DESCRIBE procedure can extract the following information for a given procedure:

| DBMS_DESCRIBE    |                                         |                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Overload feature | Level<br>(For composite datatypes only) | Arguments<br>-Name<br>-Position<br>-DataType and precision<br>-Default Value (Default '0')<br>-Parameter mode<br>(IN=0, OUT=1, IN OUT=2) |

Note that the procedure accepts three IN mode parameters, one OUT parameter, and 12 OUT parameters of associative array type.

Two reserved parameters are the Reserved parameters and must be kept NULL. The remaining parameters are the OUT parameters of the Associative array type whose definition is as follows:

```
TYPE VARCHAR2_TABLE IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(30)
INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
TYPE NUMBER_TABLE IS TABLE OF NUMBER
INDEX BY BINARY_INTEGER;
```

For the P\_PRINT\_NAME procedure, the DBMS\_DESCRIBE package works as follows:

```
/*Connect to ORADEV user*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Enable the serveroutput to display the error messages*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
DECLARE

/*Declare the local variable of DBMS_DESCRIBE associative array type*/
v_overload DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
v_position DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
v_level DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
v_arg_name DBMS_DESCRIBE.VARCHAR2_TABLE;
```

---

```

v_datatype DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
v_def_value DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
v_in_out DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
v_length DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
v_precision DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
v_scale DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
v_radix DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
v_spare DBMS_DESCRIBE.NUMBER_TABLE;
BEGIN
/*Call the procedure DESCRIBE_PROCEDURE for P_PRINT_NAME*/
DBMS_DESCRIBE.DESCRIBE_PROCEDURE
(
    'P_PRINT_NAME',
    null, null,
    v_overload,
    v_position,
    v_level,
    v_arg_name,
    v_datatype,
    v_def_value,
    v_in_out,
    v_length,
    v_precision,
    v_scale,
    v_radix,
    v_spare,
    null
);

/*Iterate the argument array V_ARG_NAME to list the argument details
of the object*/
FOR i IN v_arg_name.FIRST .. v_arg_name.LAST
LOOP

/*Check if the position if zero or not*/
IF v_position(i) = 0 THEN

/*Zero position is reserved for RETURN types*/
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT('This is the RETURN data for the function: ');
DBMS_OUTPUT.NEW_LINE;
ELSE

/*Print the argument name*/
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT ('The argument name is: '||v_arg_name(i));
DBMS_OUTPUT.NEW_LINE;
END IF;

/*Display the position, type and mode of parameters*/

```

```
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The argument position is:'||v_
position(i));
        DBMS_OUTPUT.NEW_LINE;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The argument datatype is:'||v_
datatype(i));
        DBMS_OUTPUT.NEW_LINE;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('The argument mode is:'||v_in_out(i));
        DBMS_OUTPUT.NEW_LINE;
    END LOOP;
END;
/
```

```
The argument name is: P_NAME
The argument position is:1
The argument datatype is:1
The argument mode is:0
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

## DBMS\_UTILITY.FORMAT\_CALL\_STACK

We often encounter scenarios where subprogram calls have been extensively branched and nested among themselves. A subprogram can be called from multiple program units and it might be required to trace the complete invocation path.

The `FORMAT_CALL_STACK` function of the `DBMS_UTILITY` package is used to extract the current call stack as a formatted text string. The call stack contains the information about the sequential calls made from a program to another program. Every call, in the stack, is stored by the line number of the subprogram invocation.

Suppose a procedure P3 calls another procedure P2. P2 makes a call to another stored subprogram P1. Now, in P1, a call trace report can be embedded to see the call path:

```
/*Create the procedure P1*/
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE P1
IS
BEGIN
    dbms_output.put_line(substr(dbms_utility.format_call_stack, 1,
255));
END;
/
```

```
Procedure created.
```

```
/*Create the procedure P2*/
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE P2
```

```

IS
BEGIN
/*Call procedure P1*/
  P1;
END;
/

Procedure created.

/*Create the procedure P3*/
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE P3
IS
BEGIN
/*Call procedure P2*/
  P2;
END;
/

Procedure created.

/*Enable the serveroutput to display the error messages*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Start a PL/SQL block to invoke P3*/
BEGIN
/*Call P3*/
  P3;
END;
/

----- PL/SQL Call Stack -----
   object      line  object
   handle      number name
23D06844         4 procedure ORADEV.P1
23CEAD38         4 procedure ORADEV.P2
23EDCB38         4 procedure ORADEV.P3
23CF00CC         2 anonymous block
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

```

In the above output, the call stack shows the calls traversing from the anonymous block to procedure P1. Starting from the last, an anonymous block calls P3, which calls P2, and reaches P1. The call stack would appear different for different paths used to reach P1. If another procedure P4 calls P2, and hence P1, the call stack would show P4 in place of P3.

## Tracking propagating exceptions in PL/SQL code

We are well versed in and aware of the propagation behavior of exceptions in PL/SQL. But locating the exact position from where the exception got raised has always been a cumbersome job for developers. After the failure of `SQLERRM` to truncate the error messages after 512 characters, `FORMAT_ERROR_STACK` is used to serve this purpose to some extent by presenting complete error messages up to 2000 characters, without truncation.

Oracle 10g Release 1 provides an error handling function under the `DBMS_UTILITY` package known as `FORMAT_ERROR_BACKTRACE`, to handle scenarios of exception propagation. The function produces a formatted string containing the stack of program unit information with line numbers. It helps developers to locate the exact program unit which has raised the exception.

Let us conduct a small case study where we will explicitly raise the exception in one program and try to access the same from another PL/SQL block.

The `P_TRACE` procedure declares a local exception and rises from the executable section:

```
/*Connect to ORADEV user*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Create procedure P_TRACE*/
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE p_trace
IS

/*Declare a local user defined exception*/
  xlocal EXCEPTION;
BEGIN

/*Raise the local exception*/
  RAISE xlocal;
END;
/

Procedure created.
```

First, we will present the situation prior to the introduction of `FORMAT_ERROR_BACKTRACE` in Oracle 10g:

```
/*Call P_TRACE in a PL/SQL anonymous block*/
BEGIN
  P_TRACE;
EXCEPTION
WHEN OTHERS then
```

```

/*Display the error message using SQLERRM*/
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(sqlerrm);
END;
/

User-Defined Exception
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

```

Note that the block output does not clearly specify the defaulter program unit which caused the exception propagation. It is because `SQLERRM` logs only the last exception to occur.

Now, we will modify the same anonymous PL/SQL block and include `FORMAT_ERROR_BACKTRACE` to log the program unit which raises the exception:

```

/*Create the PL/SQL anonymous block*/
SQL> BEGIN
  P_TRACE;
  EXCEPTION
    WHEN OTHERS then

/*Print the error stack using FORMAT_ERROR_BACKTRACE*/
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE( DBMS_UTILITY.FORMAT_ERROR_BACKTRACE );
  END;
/

ORA-06512: at "ORADEV.P_TRACE", line 5
ORA-06512: at line 2

```

The output given by `FORMAT_ERROR_BACKTRACE` shows the name of the `P_TRACE` program unit along with the line number (5, in this case) which raises the exception. This error stack information expands as the nesting of calls increases. It helps to trace, debug, and log the correct information of the ongoing database activities and take appropriate action.

## Determining identifier types and usages

All the local declarations of a program unit are categorized as **identifiers**. An identifier's declaration locates a memory on the server and keeps it busy until the program unit is executed or terminated. Redundant identifiers must be recognized within a program so as to restrict them from holding a chunk of memory for no operation.

Oracle provides a tool known as PL/Scope to monitor the activities of identifiers in a program. It is one of the new features in Oracle 11g.

## The PL/Scope tool

The PL/Scope tool compiles and captures the information of the identifiers declared and used in a program. Once the feature is enabled, the language compiler filters out the identifier's information and stores it in a dictionary view called `USER_IDENTIFIERS`. An identifier is recognized by its name, type, and usage.

Let us examine some of the key features of the PL/Scope tool:

- Only unwrapped program units can use the PL/Scope tool.
- The feature can be enabled by setting a new initialization parameter called `PLSCOPE_SETTINGS`.
- The compiler stages the identifiers' information only in the `SYSAUX` tablespace. The feature remains deactivated if the `SYSAUX` tablespace is unavailable.
- The identifier information can be viewed in `[DBA | ALL | USER]_IDENTIFIERS`.
- The feature can be enabled for the whole database, for a session, or only for an object. It implies that a program can be compiled with different compilation parameters from the current session or database settings. The object level specification overrides the session or system level setting of the parameter.

PL/Scope brings great benefit to any large-size database application where developers frequently check the existence of an identifier so as to avoid redundancy. In addition, it can work as a PL/SQL IDE to build up a repository of all identifiers under multiple categories based on their type and usage.

## The PL/Scope identifier collection

The PL/Scope feature can be enabled by setting a system parameter called `PLSCOPE_SETTINGS`. By default, the feature is disabled as the parameter value is `IDENTIFIERS:NONE`. The valid values for the parameters are `NONE` for disabled and `ALL` for enabled parameters.

A DBA can modify the value of the `PLSCOPE_SETTINGS` compilation parameter as `IDENTIFIERS:ALL` to enable the feature to collect the identifier information. Once the feature is activated at the required level, Oracle captures identifier information of all program units which are compiled henceforth.

Setting PLScope\_SETTINGS at system or session level:

```
ALTER [SYSTEM | SESSION]
SET PLScope_SETTINGS = ['IDENTIFIERS:ALL' | 'IDENTIFIERS:NONE']
```

Setting PLScope\_SETTINGS at object level:

```
ALTER [PROGRAM NAME] COMPILE
PLScope_SETTINGS = ['IDENTIFIERS:ALL' | 'IDENTIFIERS:NONE']
```

For illustration and demonstration purpose, we will keep the setting as IDENTIFIERS:ALL. A DBA performs it as shown in the following code snippet:

```
/*Connect as sysdba*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.

/*Modify the PLScope_SETTINGS*/
ALTER SYSTEM SET PLScope_SETTINGS = 'IDENTIFIERS:ALL';
Session altered.

/*View the current setting of PLScope_SETTINGS parameter*/
SELECT value
FROM v$parameter
WHERE name='plscope_settings'
/

VALUE
-----
IDENTIFIERS:ALL
```

Another important aspect of PL/Scope is that it is stored only in the SYSAUX tablespace. If the SYSAUX tablespace is unavailable, the feature remains in passive state. Though the server does not raise any error message while logging, a warning is raised:

```
/*Verify the PL/Scope occupancy in SYSAUX tablespace*/
SELECT occupant_desc, schema_name, space_usage_kbytes
FROM v$sysaux_occupants
WHERE occupant_name='PL/SCOPE'
/
```

| OCCUPANT_DESC                | SCHEMA_NAME | SPACE_USAGE_KBYTES |
|------------------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| PL/SQL Identifier Collection | SYS         | 2496               |

## The PL/Scope report

The PL/Scope report can be generated from the [DBA | ALL | USER]\_IDENTIFIERS dictionary view. [DBA | ALL | USER] provides different flavors to the view as per the invoker's role:

```
/*Display the USER_IDENTIFIERS structure*/
SQL> desc USER_IDENTIFIERS
```

| Name             | Null?    | Type          |
|------------------|----------|---------------|
| -----            |          |               |
| NAME             |          | VARCHAR2 (30) |
| SIGNATURE        |          | VARCHAR2 (32) |
| TYPE             |          | VARCHAR2 (18) |
| OBJECT_NAME      | NOT NULL | VARCHAR2 (30) |
| OBJECT_TYPE      |          | VARCHAR2 (13) |
| USAGE            |          | VARCHAR2 (11) |
| USAGE_ID         |          | NUMBER        |
| LINE             |          | NUMBER        |
| COL              |          | NUMBER        |
| USAGE_CONTEXT_ID |          | NUMBER        |

Note the information captured for an identifier in the preceding USER\_IDENTIFIERS description:

- SIGNATURE: The unique hash code of the identifier
- TYPE: The user defined type of the identifier (Variable, Cursor, Formal, and so on)
- OBJECT\_NAME: The object name within which they are declared, assigned, or used
- OBJECT\_TYPE: The type of the object using the identifier
- USAGE: The identifier action as CALL, ASSIGNMENT, DEFINITION, DECLARATION, or REFERENCE
- USAGE\_ID: The unique key of the identifier usage
- LINE, COL: Exact location of the identifier in the program

## Illustration

Let us now demonstrate the PL/Scope tool to capture identifier information of a program unit. The program unit is a function which declares a cursor and local variables to get the location of an input employee.

The current setting of `PLSCOPE_SETTINGS` is `IDENTIFIERS:ALL`:

```

/*Connect as ORADEV*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Create the function*/
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION F_GET_LOC (P_EMPNO NUMBER)
RETURN NUMBER
IS
/*Cursor select location for the given employee*/
CURSOR C_DEPT IS
    SELECT d.loc
    FROM employees e, departments d
    WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
    AND e.empno = P_EMPNO;
    l_loc NUMBER;
BEGIN
/*Cursor is open and fetched into a local variable*/
    OPEN C_DEPT;
    FETCH C_DEPT INTO l_loc;
    CLOSE C_DEPT;

/*Location returned*/
    RETURN l_loc;
END;
/

Function created.

```

Generate the PL/Scope identifier report from the `USER_IDENTIFIERS` dictionary view:

```

/*Query the identifier information from the view*/
SELECT name, type, object_name, usage
FROM user_identifiers
WHERE object_name='F_GET_LOC'
/

```

| NAME   | TYPE            | OBJECT_NAME | USAGE       |
|--------|-----------------|-------------|-------------|
| L_LOC  | VARIABLE        | F_GET_LOC   | REFERENCE   |
| C_DEPT | CURSOR          | F_GET_LOC   | CALL        |
| L_LOC  | VARIABLE        | F_GET_LOC   | ASSIGNMENT  |
| C_DEPT | CURSOR          | F_GET_LOC   | CALL        |
| C_DEPT | CURSOR          | F_GET_LOC   | CALL        |
| NUMBER | NUMBER DATATYPE | F_GET_LOC   | REFERENCE   |
| L_LOC  | VARIABLE        | F_GET_LOC   | DECLARATION |

|           |                 |           |             |
|-----------|-----------------|-----------|-------------|
| P_EMPNO   | FORMAL IN       | F_GET_LOC | REFERENCE   |
| C_DEPT    | CURSOR          | F_GET_LOC | DECLARATION |
| NUMBER    | NUMBER DATATYPE | F_GET_LOC | REFERENCE   |
| NUMBER    | NUMBER DATATYPE | F_GET_LOC | REFERENCE   |
| P_EMPNO   | FORMAL IN       | F_GET_LOC | DECLARATION |
| F_GET_LOC | FUNCTION        | F_GET_LOC | DEFINITION  |
| F_GET_LOC | FUNCTION        | F_GET_LOC | DECLARATION |

14 rows selected.

Assume that the database setting does not allow the capturing of identifiers' information—only this feature can be enabled for the selective program units. A program unit can be compiled as follows:

```
/*Alter the function with PLScope_SETTINGS at object level*/
SQL> ALTER FUNCTION F_GET_LOC COMPILE PLScope_
SETTINGS='IDENTIFIERS:ALL';
```

Function altered.

For better presentation purpose, you can generate the above output in report format:

```
/*Generate interactive report for identifiers*/
WITH v AS
(
  SELECT Line,
  Col,
  INITCAP(NAME) Name,
  LOWER(TYPE) Type,
  LOWER(USAGE) Usage,
  USAGE_ID, USAGE_CONTEXT_ID
  FROM USER_IDENTIFIERS
  WHERE Object_Name = 'F_GET_LOC'
  AND Object_Type = 'FUNCTION'
)
SELECT LINE, RPAD(LPAD(' ', 2*(Level-1)) || Name, 20, '.') || ' ' ||
RPAD(Type, 20) || RPAD(Usage, 20)
IDENTIFIER_USAGE_CONTEXTS
FROM v
  START WITH USAGE_CONTEXT_ID = 0
  CONNECT BY PRIOR USAGE_ID = USAGE_CONTEXT_ID
  ORDER SIBLINGS BY Line, Col
/
```

Refer to the following screenshot for the output:

| LINE | IDENTIFIER_USAGE_CONTEXTS |                    |             |
|------|---------------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| 1    | F_Get_Loc.....            | function           | declaration |
| 1    | F_Get_Loc.....            | function           | definition  |
| 1    | P_Empno.....              | formal in          | declaration |
| 1    | Number.....               | number datatype    | reference   |
| 2    | Uvarchar2.....            | character datatype | reference   |
| 5    | C_Dept.....               | cursor             | declaration |
| 9    | P_Empno.....              | formal in          | reference   |
| 10   | L_Loc.....                | variable           | declaration |
| 10   | Uvarchar2.....            | character datatype | reference   |
| 13   | C_Dept.....               | cursor             | call        |
| 14   | C_Dept.....               | cursor             | call        |
| 14   | L_Loc.....                | variable           | assignment  |
| 15   | C_Dept.....               | cursor             | call        |
| 17   | L_Loc.....                | variable           | reference   |

14 rows selected.

## Applications of the PL/Scope report

The PL/Scope identifier report can achieve the following objectives:

- It searches all the identifiers declared in a schema (USAGE = 'DECLARATION'). The SELECT query lists all identifiers declared in the schema as shown in the following screenshot:

```
/*List the identifiers declared in the current schema*/
SELECT NAME, SIGNATURE, TYPE
FROM USER_IDENTIFIERS
WHERE USAGE='DECLARATION'
ORDER BY OBJECT_TYPE, USAGE_ID
/
```

- It searches all identifiers of a specific type (BLOB, CURSOR, CONSTANT, and so on) used in a schema. The following SQL query lists all the cursors declared in the schema:

```
/*List the identifiers declared as CURSOR in the current schema*/
SELECT NAME, SIGNATURE, OBJECT_NAME, TYPE
FROM USER_IDENTIFIERS
WHERE USAGE='DECLARATION'
AND TYPE = 'CURSOR'
ORDER BY OBJECT_TYPE, USAGE_ID
/
```

- It searches all redundant identifiers within a program unit which are not referenced inside the executable section of the program:

```
/*List the redundant identifiers declared in the current schema*/
SELECT NAME, OBJECT_NAME, TYPE, SIGNATURE
FROM USER_IDENTIFIERS T
WHERE USAGE='DECLARATION'
AND NOT EXISTS (SELECT 1
                 FROM USER_IDENTIFIERS
                 WHERE SIGNATURE=T.SIGNATURE
                 AND USAGE<>'DECLARATION')
/
```

- It determines the actions performed on an identifier in a program:

```
/*List the actions on a specific identifier in the schema*/
SELECT name, object_name, type, usage, line
FROM USER_IDENTIFIERS T
WHERE signature='C6DC4D2D5770696415F7EC524AFADAE4'
/
```

## The DBMS\_METADATA package

The DBMS\_METADATA package was introduced in Oracle9i. It is a metadata API which is used to extract the definitions (DDL) of schema objects. The package was introduced to get rid of DDL exports, which used to produce poorly formatted DDL scripts. It is a powerful package which can generate DDL and retrieve relevant information associated with an object in XML (by default), or textual format. The package is owned by SYS while all other users work with its public synonym.

The package provides utilities to set the required formatting for the DDL, transforms, and parse items. Once the formatting settings start over, using transform handlers, the definition of an object can be retrieved as XML or text. It also provides the flexibility to execute DDL. Let us see some of the major features of DBMS\_METADATA:

- Generate DDL through GET\_DDL (GET\_XML is its XML equivalent).
- Generate DDL for object dependencies through GET\_DEPENDENT\_DDL (GET\_DEPENDENT\_XML is its XML equivalent).
- Generate DDL for system grants on an object through GET\_GRANTED\_DDL (GET\_GRANTED\_XML is its XML equivalent).
- Manage and modify object definitions such as add column, drop column, rename table, manage partitions, indexes, and so on.

- Callable from the SELECT statements.
- DBMS\_METADATA uses public synonyms of SYS-owned object and table types.
- Additional options have been added in the Oracle 10g release.
- Data pump (Oracle 10g) uses DBMS\_METADATA to retrieve schema object DDLs.

## DBMS\_METADATA data types and subprograms

As referred to earlier, the DBMS\_METADATA package uses the public synonyms of SYS-owned data structures. The following list shows SYS-owned object types:

- SYS.KU\$\_PARSED\_ITEM: It is the object to capture the attributes of object metadata of a single object. The object structure looks as follows:

```
CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_parsed_item AS OBJECT
(
    item VARCHAR2(30),
    value VARCHAR2(4000),
    object_row NUMBER
)
```

ITEM, VALUE form the attribute name value pair for OBJECT\_ROW.

- SYS.KU\$\_PARSED\_ITEMS: It is a nested table of SYS.KU\$\_PARSED\_ITEM to hold the object metadata attributes for multiple objects.
- SYS.KU\$\_DDL: It is an object type to capture the DDL of an object along with its parsed item information. The object type structure looks as follows:

```
CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_ddl AS OBJECT
(
    ddlText CLOB,
    parsedItem sys.ku$_parsed_items
)
```

The parsed object information is stored in PARSEDITEM.

- SYS.KU\$\_DDL: It is a nested table of SYS.KU\$\_DDL returned by the FETCH\_DDL subprogram to hold the metadata of an object transformed into multiple DDL statements.
- SYS.KU\$\_MULTI\_DDL: It is an object type to hold the DDL for an object in multiple transforms.
- SYS.KU\$\_MULTI\_DDLS: It is a nested table of SYS.KU\$\_MULTI\_DDL returned by the CONVERT subprogram.

- **SYS.KU\$\_ERRORLINE:** It is an object type to capture the error information. The object type structure is as follows:  

```
CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_ErrorLine IS OBJECT
(
    errorNumber NUMBER,
    errorText VARCHAR2(2000)
)
/
```
- **SYS.KU\$\_ERRORLINES:** It is the nested table of the SYS.KU\$\_ERRORLINE object type to hold the bulk error information during extraction of each DDL statement.
- **SYS.KU\$\_SUBMITRESULT:** It is an object type to capture the complete error information incurred in a DDL statement. The object type structure is as follows:  

```
CREATE TYPE sys.ku$_SubmitResult AS OBJECT
(
    ddl sys.ku$_ddl,
    errorLines sys.ku$_ErrorLines
)
/
```
- **SYS.KU\$\_SUBMITRESULTS:** It is a nested table of the SYS.KU\$\_SUBMITRESULT object type to hold multiple DDL statements and corresponding error information.

In the preceding list, KU\$\_PARSED\_ITEM and KU\$\_DDL are the most frequently used object types of the package.

The following table lists the DBMS\_METADATA subprograms (reference: Oracle documentation)

| Subprogram                       | Remarks                                                                                                        |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ADD_TRANSFORM function           | Specifies a transform that FETCH_[XML   DDL   CLOB] applies to the XML representation of the retrieved objects |
| CLOSE procedure                  | Invalidates the handle returned by OPEN and cleans up the associated state                                     |
| CONVERT functions and procedures | Convert an XML document to DDL                                                                                 |

| Subprogram                                         | Remarks                                                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| FETCH_[XML   DDL   CLOB] functions and procedures  | Return metadata for objects meeting the criteria established by OPEN, SET_FILTER, SET_COUNT, ADD_TRANSFORM, and so on |
| GET_[XML   DDL   CLOB] functions                   | Fetch the metadata for a specified object as XML or DDL, using only a single call                                     |
| GET_QUERY function                                 | Returns the text of the queries that are used by FETCH_[XML   DDL   CLOB]                                             |
| OPEN function                                      | Specifies the type of object to be retrieved, the version of its metadata, and the object model                       |
| OPENW function                                     | Opens a write context                                                                                                 |
| PUT function                                       | Submits an XML document to the database                                                                               |
| SET_COUNT procedure                                | Specifies the maximum number of objects to be retrieved in a single FETCH_[XML   DDL   CLOB] call                     |
| SET_FILTER procedure                               | Specifies restrictions on the objects to be retrieved, for example, the object name or schema                         |
| SET_PARSE_ITEM procedure                           | Enables output parsing by specifying an object attribute to be parsed and returned                                    |
| SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM and SET_REMAP_PARAM procedures | Specify parameters to the XSLT style sheets identified by transform_handle                                            |

Out of the preceding list, the subprograms can be segregated based on their work function and utilization:

| Subprograms used to retrieve multiple objects from the database | Subprograms used to submit XML metadata to the database |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| ADD_TRANSFORM function                                          | ADD_TRANSFORM function                                  |
| CLOSE procedure 2                                               | CLOSE procedure 2                                       |
| FETCH_[XML   DDL   CLOB] functions and procedures               | CONVERT functions and procedures                        |
| GET_QUERY function                                              | OPENW function                                          |
| GET_[XML   DDL   CLOB] functions                                | PUT function                                            |
| OPEN function                                                   | SET_PARSE_ITEM procedure                                |
| SET_COUNT procedure                                             | SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM and SET_REMAP_PARAM procedures      |

| Subprograms used to retrieve multiple objects from the database | Subprograms used to submit XML metadata to the database |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| SET_FILTER procedure                                            |                                                         |
| SET_PARSE_ITEM procedure                                        |                                                         |
| SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM and SET_REMAP_PARAM procedures              |                                                         |

## Parameter requirements

The parameter requirements for the DBMS\_METADATA subprograms are as follows:

- Parameters are case sensitive
- Parameters cannot be passed by named notation, but by position only

## The DBMS\_METADATA transformation parameters and filters

As listed in the preceding API list, the SET\_TRANSFORM\_PARAM subprogram is used to format and control the DDL output. It is used for both retrieval and submission of metadata from or to the database. It is an overloaded procedure with the following syntax:

```
DBMS_METADATA.SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM
(
    transform_handle IN NUMBER,
    name IN VARCHAR2,
    value IN VARCHAR2,
    object_type IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL
);
DBMS_METADATA.SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM
(
    transform_handle IN NUMBER,
    name IN VARCHAR2,
    value IN BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
    object_type IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL
);
DBMS_METADATA.SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM
(
    transform_handle IN NUMBER,
    name IN VARCHAR2,
    value IN NUMBER,
    object_type IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL
);
```

From the preceding syntax:

- **TRANSFORM\_HANDLE:** It is the handler, either from `ADD_TRANSFORM`, or a generic handler constant `SESSION_TRANSFORM`, to affect the whole session.
- **NAME:** It is the name of the parameter to be modified.
- **VALUE:** It is the transformed value.

Now, we will see some of the common sets of parameters applicable to all objects in a schema:

| Parameter     | Value                                 | Meaning                                                 |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| PRETTY        | TRUE   FALSE (default value is TRUE)  | If TRUE, produces properly indented output              |
| SQLTERMINATOR | TRUE   FALSE (default value is FALSE) | If TRUE, appends SQL terminator (; or /) after each DDL |
| DEFAULT       | TRUE   FALSE                          | If TRUE, resets all parameters to their default state   |
| INHERIT       | TRUE   FALSE                          | If TRUE, inherits session level settings                |

For tables and views, the valid transform handlers are as follows:

| Parameter            | Value                                 | Meaning                                                                  |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SEGMENT_ATTRIBUTES   | TRUE   FALSE (default value is TRUE)  | If TRUE, includes segment, tablespace, logging and physical attributes   |
| STORAGE              | TRUE   FALSE (default value is FALSE) | If TRUE, includes storage clause                                         |
| TABLESPACE           | TRUE   FALSE                          | If TRUE, includes tablespace specification                               |
| CONSTRAINTS          | TRUE   FALSE                          | If TRUE, includes table constraints                                      |
| REF_CONSTRAINTS      | TRUE   FALSE                          | If TRUE, includes referential constraints                                |
| CONSTRAINTS_AS_ALTER | TRUE   FALSE                          | If TRUE, includes constraints in the ALTER TABLE statements              |
| OID                  | TRUE   FALSE                          | If TRUE, includes the object table OID                                   |
| SIZE_BYTE_KEYWORD    | TRUE   FALSE                          | If TRUE, includes the BYTE keywords in string type column specifications |
| FORCE                | TRUE   FALSE                          | If TRUE, creates view with the FORCE option                              |

Filters can be imposed on the working schema objects by using the `DBMS_METADATA.SET_FILTER` procedure. It takes the metadata handle, filter name, and its value as input. It can be used to set include and exclude filters:

```
PROCEDURE set_filter(  
  handle      IN NUMBER,  
  name        IN VARCHAR2,  
  value       IN VARCHAR2|BOOLEAN|NUMBER,  
  object_type_path VARCHAR2  
) ;
```

Some of the frequently used filters are schema, user, object dependencies, table data, tables, indexes, constraints, and so on. There are more than 70 filters available until Oracle 11g. It can be set as follows:

```
DBMS_METADATA.SET_FILTER(handle, 'SCHEMA', 'ORADEV') ;  
DBMS_METADATA.SET_FILTER(handle, 'NAME', 'DEPARTMENTS') ;
```

## Working with DBMS\_METADATA—illustrations

We will illustrate the usage of browsing APIs of `DBMS_METADATA`.

### Case 1—retrieve the metadata of a single object

`DBMS_METADATA.GET_DDL` can be called from the `SELECT` query:

```
/*Connect as ORADEV*/  
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV  
Connected.  
  
/*Execute the DBMS_METADATA.GET_DDL to get the DDL for EMPLOYEES  
table*/  
SELECT dbms_metadata.get_ddl('TABLE', 'EMPLOYEES', 'ORADEV')  
FROM DUAL  
/  
EMPLOYEE_DDL  
CREATE TABLE "ORADEV"."EMPLOYEES"  
(  
  "EMPNO" NUMBER(4,0),  
  "ENAME" VARCHAR2(10) NOT NULL ENABLE,  
  "JOB" VARCHAR2(9),  
  "MGR" NUMBER(4,0),  
  "HIREDATE" DATE,  
  "SAL" NUMBER(7,2),  
  "COMM" NUMBER(7,2),  
  "DEPTNO" NUMBER(2,0),
```

```

PRIMARY KEY ("EMPNO")
USING INDEX PCTFREE 10 INITRANS 2 MAXTRANS 255 COMPUTE STATISTICS
(
  INITIAL 65536 NEXT 1048576 MINEXTENTS 1 MAXEXTENTS 2147483645
  PCTINCREASE 0 FREELISTS 1 FREELIST GROUPS 1 BUFFER_POOL DEFAULT
  FLASH_CACHE DEFAULT CELL_FLASH_CACHE DEFAULT
)
TABLESPACE "USERS" ENABLE
)
SEGMENT CREATION IMMEDIATE
PCTFREE 10 PCTUSED 40 INITRANS 1 MAXTRANS 255 NOCOMPRESS LOGGING
STORAGE(INITIAL 65536 NEXT 1048576 MINEXTENTS 1 MAXEXTENTS
2147483645
0 FREELISTS 1 FREELIST GROUPS 1 BUFFER_POOL DEFAULT FLASH_CACHE
DEFAULT
CELL_FLASH_CACHE DEFAULT)
TABLESPACE "USERS"

```

The same DDL generation can also be achieved through a generic function. The function `F_DDL_TABLE` takes a table name as input and fetches its DDL script. It returns the DDL script as CLOB. Since the transform handler opens only for the `TABLE` of `ORADEV` schema, DDL scripts can only be used for tables:

```

/*Create function to get DDL of a given table*/
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION get_ddl_table (p_table_name varchar2)
RETURN CLOB IS
  l_hdl NUMBER;
  l_th NUMBER;
  l_doc CLOB;
BEGIN
  /*specify the OBJECT TYPE*/
  l_hdl := DBMS_METADATA.OPEN('TABLE');

  /*use FILTERS to specify the objects desired*/
  DBMS_METADATA.SET_FILTER(l_hdl , 'SCHEMA', 'ORADEV');
  DBMS_METADATA.SET_FILTER(l_hdl , 'NAME', p_table_name);

  /*request to be TRANSFORMED into creation DDL*/
  l_th := DBMS_METADATA.ADD_TRANSFORM(l_hdl, 'DDL');

  /*FETCH the object*/
  l_doc := DBMS_METADATA.FETCH_CLOB(l_hdl);

  /*release resources*/
  DBMS_METADATA.CLOSE(l_hdl);

  RETURN l_doc;
END;
/

Function created.

```

The above DDL scripts generated from the query and function comprise the storage clause, tablespace, and segment information, thus making them bulky and large. These clauses can be skipped by setting the transform handlers for the session. Before extracting the DDL, we will set the STORAGE, SEGMENT\_ATTRIBUTES, PRETTY, SQLTERMINATOR, and REF\_CONSTRAINTS handlers for the session transform handler.

```
/*Connect to ORADEV*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Set transform handler for STORAGE*/
EXEC DBMS_METADATA.SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM (DBMS_METADATA.SESSION_
TRANSFORM, 'STORAGE', false);

/*Set transform handler for SEGMENT_ATTRIBUTES*/
EXEC DBMS_METADATA.SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM (DBMS_METADATA.SESSION_
TRANSFORM, 'SEGMENT_ATTRIBUTES', false);

/*Set transform handler for PRETTY*/
EXEC DBMS_METADATA.SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM
(DBMS_METADATA.SESSION_TRANSFORM, 'PRETTY', true);

/*Set transform handler for SQLTERMINATOR*/
EXEC DBMS_METADATA.SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM( DBMS_METADATA.SESSION_TRANSFOR
M, 'SQLTERMINATOR', true);

/*Set transform handler for REF_CONSTRAINTS*/
EXEC DBMS_METADATA.SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM(
DBMS_METADATA.SESSION_TRANSFORM, 'REF_CONSTRAINTS', false);

/*Set transform handler for TABLESPACE*/
EXEC DBMS_METADATA.SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM( DBMS_METADATA.SESSION_
TRANSFORM, 'TABLESPACE', false);

/*Set transform handler for SIZE_BYTE_KEYWORD*/
EXEC DBMS_METADATA.SET_TRANSFORM_PARAM(
DBMS_METADATA.SESSION_TRANSFORM, 'SIZE_BYTE_KEYWORD', false);
```

Now, extracting the DDL script in a SELECT statement:

```
/*Generate the DDL for EMPLOYEES table*/
SELECT dbms_metadata.get_ddl('TABLE', 'EMPLOYEES', 'ORADEV') EMPLOYEE_
DDL
FROM dual;

EMPLOYEE_DDL
-----
CREATE TABLE "ORADEV"."EMPLOYEES"
(
  "EMPNO" NUMBER(4,0),
  "ENAME" VARCHAR2(10) NOT NULL ENABLE,
  "JOB" VARCHAR2(9),
```

```

    "MGR" NUMBER(4,0),
    "HIREDATE" DATE,
    "SAL" NUMBER(7,2),
    "COMM" NUMBER(7,2),
    "DEPTNO" NUMBER(2,0),
    PRIMARY KEY ("EMPNO") ENABLE
) ;

```

## Case 2—retrieve the object dependencies on the F\_GET\_LOC function

Refer to the following code snippet:

```

/*Retrieve object dependency for F_GET_LOC function*/
SELECT dbms_metadata.get_dependent_ddl
      ('OBJECT_GRANT', 'F_GET_LOC', 'ORADEV') OBJ_GRANTS
FROM DUAL;

OBJ_GRANTS
-----
GRANT EXECUTE ON "ORADEV"."F_GET_LOC" TO "NANCY";

```

The output of the SELECT query shows that the ORADEV user has granted the EXECUTE privilege on the function F\_GET\_LOC to the NANCY user.

## Case 3—retrieve system grants on the ORADEV schema

Refer to the following code snippet:

```

/*Retrieve system grants for the ORADEV user*/
SELECT dbms_metadata.get_granted_ddl
      ('SYSTEM_GRANT', 'ORADEV') SYS_GRANTS
FROM dual;

SYS_GRANTS
-----
GRANT DEBUG ANY PROCEDURE TO "ORADEV";
GRANT DEBUG CONNECT SESSION TO "ORADEV";
GRANT CREATE ANY CONTEXT TO "ORADEV";
GRANT CREATE LIBRARY TO "ORADEV";
GRANT UNLIMITED TABLESPACE TO "ORADEV";
GRANT CREATE SESSION TO "ORADEV";

```

## Case 4—retrieve objects of function type in the ORADEV schema

It follows the same approach from Case 1 for tables owned by the ORADEV user. Here, we will create a generic function to retrieve the DDL of a given function:

```
/*Create the function to generate DDL of a given function*/
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION F_GET_FUN_DDL (P_NAME VARCHAR2)
RETURN CLOB IS
    l_hdl  NUMBER;
    l_th   NUMBER;
    l_doc  CLOB;
BEGIN
    /*Open the transform handler*/
    l_hdl := DBMS_METADATA.OPEN('FUNCTION');

    /*Set filter for the schema and the function name*/
    DBMS_METADATA.SET_FILTER(l_hdl, 'SCHEMA', 'ORADEV');
    DBMS_METADATA.SET_FILTER(l_hdl, 'NAME', P_NAME);

    /*Generate the DDL and fetch in a local CLOB variable*/
    l_th := DBMS_METADATA.ADD_TRANSFORM(l_hdl, 'DDL');
    l_doc := DBMS_METADATA.FETCH_CLOB(l_hdl);
    DBMS_METADATA.CLOSE(l_hdl);

    /*Return the DDL*/
    RETURN l_doc;
END;
/

Function created
```

Testing the above function for the function F\_GET\_LOC:

```
/*Declare an environment variable*/
VARIABLE M_FUN_DDL clob;

/*Execute the function*/
EXEC :M_FUN_DDL := F_GET_FUN_DDL ('F_GET_LOC');

/*Print the variable*/
PRINT M_FUN_DDL

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION "ORADEV"."F_GET_LOC" (P_EMPNO NUMBER)
RETURN NUMBER
IS
CURSOR C_DEPT IS
    SELECT d.loc
    FROM employees e, departments d
    WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
    AND e.empno = P_EMPNO;
    l_loc NUMBER;
    l_red number;
```

```

    L_BLUE NUMBER;
BEGIN
    OPEN C_DEPT;
    FETCH C_DEPT INTO l_loc;
    CLOSE C_DEPT;
    RETURN l_loc;
END;
```

Similarly, DDL scripts of all functions in a schema can be retrieved by holding all the functions in a cursor and iterating it to call the `F_GET_FUN_DDL` function.

## Summary

In this chapter, we understood the usage of Oracle supplied packages and dictionary views to find the coding information. We got introduced to a new feature in Oracle 11g, the PL/Scope tool, and learned how to determine the usage of an identifier in the PL/SQL program. At the end of the chapter, we covered the `DBMS_METADATA` package and demonstrated the extraction of a schema object definition as XML or DDL using the package.

In the next chapter, we will overview the strategies of tracing and profiling in PL/SQL.

## Practice exercise

- Which of the following dictionary views is used to get information about the subprogram arguments?
  - `ALL_OBJECTS`
  - `ALL_ARGUMENTS`
  - `ALL_DEPENDENCIES`
  - `ALL_PROGRAMS`
- The tablespace information on a database server:

```

SELECT tablespace_name
FROM DBA_TABLESPACES
/

TABLESPACE_NAME
-----
SYSTEM
UNDOTBS1
TEMP
USERS
EXAMPLE
```

You execute the following command in the session:

```
SQL> ALTER SESSION SET PLSCOPE_SETTINGS = 'IDENTIFIERS:ALL';  
Session altered.
```

Identify the correct statements:

- a. The identifier information would be captured by PL/Scope for the program created or compiled in the session.
  - b. The identifier information would not be captured by PL/Scope as IDENTIFIERS:ALL can be enabled only at the SYSTEM level.
  - c. The identifier information would be captured by PL/Scope only for the programs which are created in the session.
  - d. The identifier information would not be captured by PL/Scope since the SYSAUX tablespace is not available.
3. The parameters specified in DBMS\_METADATA are case sensitive:
    - a. True
    - b. False
  4. DBMS\_UTILITY.FORMAT\_CALL\_STACK accomplishes which of the following objectives?
    - a. Captures exceptions in a PL/SQL block.
    - b. Prepares the stack of sequential calls.
    - c. Prepares the stack of execution actions.
    - d. Prepares the stack of block profiler.
  5. Choose the accomplishments of the DBMS\_METADATA package.
    - a. Generates a report of invalidated objects in a schema.
    - b. Generates DDL for a given or all object(s) in a schema.
    - c. Generates an object to table dependency report in a schema
    - d. Generates a report of object statistics in a schema
  6. The PL/Scope tool can store the identifier data only in the USERS tablespace.
    - a. True
    - b. False
  7. Which of the following are valid parameter values of SET\_TRANSFORM\_PARAM for tables?
    - a. STORAGE
    - b. FORCE
    - c. PRETTY
    - d. INHERIT

# 11

## Profiling and Tracing PL/SQL Code

Now that we have stepped out of the code development stage, we are discussing best practices of code management and maintenance. In the last chapter, we walked through the strategies of code tracking, error tracking, and the PL/Scope tool for identifier tracking. We noticed that the PL/Scope tool does static code analysis. In this chapter, we are going to learn two important techniques for measuring code performance. The techniques are known as **tracing** and **profiling**. The primary goal of the code tracing and profiling techniques is to identify performance bottlenecks in the PL/SQL code and gather performance statistics at each execution step. We will discuss the tracing and profiling features in PL/SQL in the following topics:

- Tracing PL/SQL programs
  - The DBMS\_TRACE package
  - Viewing trace information
- Profiling PL/SQL programs
  - The DBMS\_HPROF package
  - The plshprof utility
  - Generating HTML profiler reports

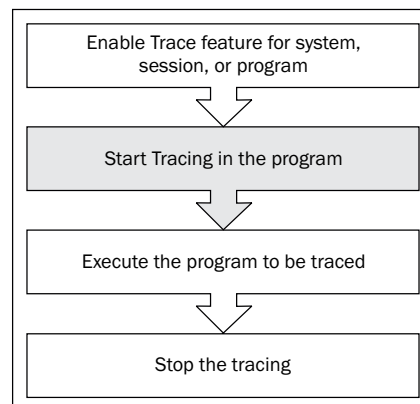
## Tracing the PL/SQL programs

Code tracing is an important technique to measure the code performance during runtime and identify the expensive areas in the code which can be worked upon to improve the performance. The tracing feature shows the code execution path followed by the server and reveals the time consumed at each step. Often developers assume tracing and debugging as one step, but both are distinctive features. Tracing is a one-time activity which analyses the complete code and prepares the platform for debugging. On the other hand, debugging is the bug identification and fixing activity where the trace report can be used to identify and work upon the problematic points.

Oracle offers multiple methods of tracing:

- **DBMS\_APPLICATION\_INFO:** The `SET_MODULE` and `SET_ACTION` subprograms can be used to register a specific action in a specific module.
- **DBMS\_TRACE:** The Oracle built-in package allows tracing of PL/SQL subprograms, exceptions and SQL execution. The trace information is logged into `sys` owned tracing tables (created by executing `tracetab.sql`).
- **DBMS\_SESSION and DBMS\_MONITOR:** The package can be employed in parallel to set the client ID and monitor the respective client ID. It is equivalent to a 10046 trace and logs the code diagnostics in a trace file.
- **The trcsess and tkprof utilities:** The `trcsess` utility merges multiple trace files in one and is usually deployed in shared server environments and parallel query sessions. The `tkprof` utility used to be a conventional tracing utility which generated readable output file. It was useful for large trace files and can also be used to load the trace information into a database.

Besides the methods mentioned in the preceding list, there are third-party tools from LOG4PLSQL and Quest which are used to trace the PL/SQL codes. A typical trace flow in a program is demonstrated in the following diagram:



In this chapter, we will drill down the `DBMS_TRACE` package to demonstrate the tracing feature in PL/SQL. Further, we will learn the profiling strengths of `DBMS_HPROF` in PL/SQL.

## The `DBMS_TRACE` package

`DBMS_TRACE` is a built-in package in Oracle to enable and disable tracing in sessions. As soon as a program is executed in a trace enabled session, the server captures and logs the information in trace log tables. The `dbmspbt.sql` and `prvtpbt.sql` table scripts are available in the database installation folder. The trace tables can be analysed to review the execution flow of the PL/SQL program and take decisions in accordance.

## Installing `DBMS_TRACE`

If the `DBMS_TRACE` package is not installed at the server, it can be installed by running the following scripts from the database installation folder:

- `$ORACLE_HOME\rdbms\admin\dbmspbt.sql`: This script creates the `DBMS_TRACE` package specification
- `$ORACLE_HOME\rdbms\admin\prvtpbt.plb`: This script creates the `DBMS_TRACE` package body

The scripts must be executed as the `SYS` user and in the same order as mentioned.

## `DBMS_TRACE` subprograms

The `DBMS_TRACE` subprograms deal with the setting of the trace, getting the trace information, and clearing the trace. While configuring the database for the trace, the trace level must be specified to signify the degree of tracing in the session. The trace level majorly deals with two levels. The first level traces all the events of an action while the other level traces only the actions from those program units which have been compiled with the debug and trace option.

The `DBMS_TRACE` constants are used for setting the trace level. Even the numeric values are available for all the constants, but still the constant names are used in the programs.

The summary of DBMS\_TRACE constants is as follows (refer to the Oracle documentation for more details). Note that all constants are of the INTEGER type:

| DBMS_TRACE constant         | Default | Remarks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------|---------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| TRACE_ALL_CALLS             | 1       | Traces all calls                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| TRACE_ENABLED_CALLS         | 2       | Traces calls which are enabled for tracing                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| TRACE_ALL_EXCEPTIONS        | 4       | Traces all exceptions                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| TRACE_ENABLED_EXCEPTIONS    | 8       | Traces exceptions which are enabled for tracing                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| TRACE_ALL_SQL               | 32      | Traces all SQL statements                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| TRACE_ENABLED_SQL           | 64      | Traces SQL statements which are enabled for tracing                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| TRACE_ALL_LINES             | 128     | Traces each line                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| TRACE_ENABLED_LINES         | 256     | Traces lines which are enabled for tracing                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| TRACE_PAUSE                 | 4096    | Pauses tracing (controls tracing process)                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| TRACE_RESUME                | 8192    | Resume tracing (controls tracing process)                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| TRACE_STOP                  | 16384   | Stops tracing (controls tracing process)                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| TRACE_LIMIT                 | 16      | Limits the trace information (controls tracing process)                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| TRACE_MINOR_VERSION         | 0       | Administer tracing process                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| TRACE_MAJOR_VERSION         | 1       | Administer tracing process                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| NO_TRACE_ADMINISTRATIVE     | 32768   | Prevents tracing of administrative events such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• PL/SQL Trace Tool started</li><li>• Trace flags changed</li><li>• PL/SQL Virtual Machine started</li><li>• PL/SQL Virtual Machine stopped</li></ul> |
| NO_TRACE_HANDLED_EXCEPTIONS | 65536   | Prevents tracing of handled exceptions                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

The subprograms contained in the DBMS\_TRACE package are as follows:

| DBMS_TRACE subprogram              | Remarks                                         |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| CLEAR_PLSQL_TRACE procedure        | Stops trace data dumping in session             |
| GET_PLSQL_TRACE_LEVEL function     | Gets the trace level                            |
| GET_PLSQL_TRACE_RUNNUMBER function | Gets the current sequence of execution of trace |

| DBMS_TRACE subprogram           | Remarks                                                           |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PLSQL_TRACE_VERSION procedure   | Gets the version number of the trace package                      |
| SET_PLSQL_TRACE procedure       | Starts tracing in the current session                             |
| COMMENT_PLSQL_TRACE procedure   | Includes comment on the PL/SQL tracing                            |
| INTERNAL_VERSION_CHECK function | Has a value as 0, if the internal version check has not been done |
| LIMIT_PLSQL_TRACE procedure     | Sets limit for the PL/SQL tracing                                 |
| PAUSE_PLSQL_TRACE procedure     | Pauses the PL/SQL tracing                                         |
| RESUME_PLSQL_TRACE procedure    | Resumes the PL/SQL tracing                                        |

In the preceding list, the key subprograms are:

- **SET\_PLSQL\_TRACE**: It kicks off the PL/SQL tracing session. For example, `DBMS_TRACE.SET_PLSQL_TRACE (DBMS_TRACE.TRACE_ALL_SQL)` traces all SQL in the program.
- **CLEAR\_PLSQL\_TRACE**: It stops the tracing session.

`PLSQL_TRACE_VERSION` returns the current trace version as the OUT parameter value.



Trace level that controls the tracing process (stop, pause, resume, and limit) cannot be used in combination with other trace levels

## The PLSQL\_DEBUG parameter and the DEBUG option

As a prerequisite, a subprogram can be enabled for tracing only if it is compiled in the debug mode. The `PLSQL_DEBUG` parameter is used to enable a database, session, or a program for debugging. The compilation parameter can be set at `SYSTEM`, `SESSION`, or any specific program level. When set to `TRUE`, the program units are compiled in the interpreted mode for debug purpose. The Oracle server explicitly compiles the program in interpreted mode to use the strengths of a debugger. However, debugging of a natively compiled program unit is not yet supported in the Oracle database. For this reason, native compilation of program units is less preferable than interpreted mode during development.

```
ALTER [SYSTEM | SESSION] SET PLSQL_DEBUG= [TRUE | FALSE]
```

The trace can be enabled at the subprogram level (not for anonymous blocks):

```
ALTER [Procedure | Function | Package] [Name]
  COMPILE PLSQL_DEBUG= [TRUE | FALSE]
/
```

Or

```
ALTER [Procedure | Function | Package] [Name] COMPILE DEBUG [BODY]
/
```

Enabling tracing at the subprogram level is usually preferred to avoid dumping of huge volume of trace data.



The PLSQL\_DEBUG parameter has been devalued in Oracle 11g. When a subprogram is compiled with the PLSQL\_DEBUG option set to TRUE in a warning enabled session, the server records the following two warnings:

```
PLW-06015: parameter PLSQL_DEBUG is deprecated;
use PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL = 1

PLW-06013: deprecated parameter PLSQL_DEBUG forces
PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL <= 1
```

## Viewing the PL/SQL trace information

Oracle provides no built-in data dictionary view to query the trace session information. Instead, the trace information is logged into the trace tables. These trace tables can be created by running the \$ORACLE\_HOME\rdbms\admin\tracetab.sql script as SYS user. The script creates the following two tables:

- **PLSQL\_TRACE\_RUNS**: This table stores execution-specific information. The following structure shows that the table contains the trace header information such as RUNID and comments:

```
/*Describe the PLSQL_TRACE_RUNS table structure*/
SQL> DESC plsql_trace_runs
```

| Name         | Null?    | Type            |
|--------------|----------|-----------------|
| RUNID        | NOT NULL | NUMBER          |
| RUN_DATE     |          | DATE            |
| RUN_OWNER    |          | VARCHAR2 (31)   |
| RUN_COMMENT  |          | VARCHAR2 (2047) |
| RUN_COMMENT1 |          | VARCHAR2 (2047) |

---

|                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| RUN_END         | DATE            |
| RUN_FLAGS       | VARCHAR2 (2047) |
| RELATED_RUN     | NUMBER          |
| RUN_SYSTEM_INFO | VARCHAR2 (2047) |
| SPARE1          | VARCHAR2 (256)  |

In the preceding table, RUNID is the unique run identifier which derives its value from a sequence, PLSQL\_TRACE\_RUNNUMBER. The RUN\_DATE and RUN\_END columns specify the start and end time of the run respectively. The RUN\_SYSTEM\_INFO and SPARE1 columns are the currently unused columns in the table.

- PLSQL\_TRACE\_EVENTS: This table displays accumulated results from trace executions and captures the detailed trace information:

```
/*Describe the PLSQL_TRACE_EVENTS table structure*/
SQL> desc plsql_trace_events
```

| Name              | Null?    | Type            |
|-------------------|----------|-----------------|
| -----             | -----    | -----           |
| RUNID             | NOT NULL | NUMBER          |
| EVENT_SEQ         | NOT NULL | NUMBER          |
| EVENT_TIME        |          | DATE            |
| RELATED_EVENT     |          | NUMBER          |
| EVENT_KIND        |          | NUMBER          |
| EVENT_UNIT_DBLINK |          | VARCHAR2 (4000) |
| EVENT_UNIT_OWNER  |          | VARCHAR2 (31)   |
| EVENT_UNIT        |          | VARCHAR2 (31)   |
| EVENT_UNIT_KIND   |          | VARCHAR2 (31)   |
| EVENT_LINE        |          | NUMBER          |
| EVENT_PROC_NAME   |          | VARCHAR2 (31)   |
| STACK_DEPTH       |          | NUMBER          |
| PROC_NAME         |          | VARCHAR2 (31)   |
| PROC_DBLINK       |          | VARCHAR2 (4000) |
| PROC_OWNER        |          | VARCHAR2 (31)   |
| PROC_UNIT         |          | VARCHAR2 (31)   |
| PROC_UNIT_KIND    |          | VARCHAR2 (31)   |
| PROC_LINE         |          | NUMBER          |
| PROC_PARAMS       |          | VARCHAR2 (2047) |
| ICD_INDEX         |          | NUMBER          |
| USER_EXCP         |          | NUMBER          |
| EXCP              |          | NUMBER          |
| EVENT_COMMENT     |          | VARCHAR2 (2047) |
| MODULE            |          | VARCHAR2 (4000) |
| ACTION            |          | VARCHAR2 (4000) |
| CLIENT_INFO       |          | VARCHAR2 (4000) |

|            |                 |
|------------|-----------------|
| CLIENT_ID  | VARCHAR2 (4000) |
| ECID_ID    | VARCHAR2 (4000) |
| ECID_SEQ   | NUMBER          |
| CALLSTACK  | CLOB            |
| ERRORSTACK | CLOB            |

The following points can be noted about this table:

- The RUNID column references the RUNID column of the PLSQL\_TRACE\_RUNS table
- EVENT\_SEQ is the unique event identifier within a single run
- The EVENT\_UNIT, EVENT\_UNIT\_KIND, EVENT\_UNIT\_OWNER, and EVENT\_LINE columns capture the program unit information (such as name, type, owner, and line number) which initiates the trace event
- The PROC\_NAME, PROC\_UNIT, PROC\_UNIT\_KIND, PROC\_OWNER, and PROC\_LINE columns capture the procedure information (such as name, type, owner, and line number) which is currently being traced
- The EXCP and USER\_EXCP columns apply to the exceptions occurring during the trace
- The EVENT\_COMMENT column gives user defined comment or the actual event description
- The MODULE, ACTION, CLIENT\_INFO, CLIENT\_ID, ECID\_ID, and ECID\_SEQ columns capture information about the session running on a SQL\*Plus client
- The CALLSTACK and ERRORSTACK columns store the call stack information

Once the script has been executed, the DBA should create public synonyms for the tables and sequence in order to be accessed by all users.

```
/*Connect as SYSDBA*/  
Conn sys/system as SYSDBA  
Connected.
```

```
/*Create synonym for PLSQL_TRACE_RUNS*/  
CREATE PUBLIC SYNONYM plsql_trace_runs FOR plsql_trace_runs  
/
```

Synonym created.

```
/*Create synonym for PLSQL_TRACE_EVENTS*/  
CREATE PUBLIC SYNONYM plsql_trace_events FOR plsql_trace_events  
/
```

Synonym created.

```
/*Create synonym for PLSQL_TRACE_RUNNUMBER sequence*/  
CREATE PUBLIC SYNONYM plsql_trace_runnumber FOR plsql_trace_  
runnumber  
/
```

Synonym created.

```
/*Grant privileges on the PLSQL_TRACE_RUNS*/  
GRANT select, insert, update, delete ON plsql_trace_runs TO PUBLIC  
/
```

Grant succeeded.

```
/*Grant privileges on the PLSQL_TRACE_EVENTS*/  
GRANT select, insert, update, delete ON plsql_trace_events TO  
PUBLIC  
/
```

Grant succeeded.

```
/*Grant privileges on the PLSQL_TRACE_RUNNUMBER*/  
GRANT select ON plsql_trace_runnumber TO PUBLIC  
/
```

Grant succeeded.

## Demonstrating the PL/SQL tracing

PL/SQL tracing is demonstrated in the following steps:

1. The F\_GET\_LOC function looks as follows (this function has been already created in the schema):

```
/*Connect as ORADEV user*/  
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV  
Connected.
```

```
/*Create the function*/  
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION F_GET_LOC (P_EMPNO NUMBER)  
RETURN VARCHAR2  
IS
```

```
/*Cursor select location for the given employee*/
CURSOR C_DEPT IS
  SELECT d.loc
  FROM employees e, departments d
  WHERE e.deptno = d.deptno
  AND e.empno = P_EMPNO;
l_loc VARCHAR2(100);

BEGIN
/*Cursor is open and fetched into a local variable*/
  OPEN C_DEPT;
  FETCH C_DEPT INTO l_loc;
  CLOSE C_DEPT;

/*Location returned*/
  RETURN l_loc;
END;
/
```

Function created.

We will trace the execution path for the preceding function.


2. Recompile the F\_GET\_LOC function for tracing:

```
/*Compile the function in debug mode*/
SQL> ALTER FUNCTION F_GET_LOC COMPILE DEBUG
/
```

Function altered.

3. Start the tracing session to trace all calls:

```
BEGIN
/*Enable tracing for all calls in the session*/
  DBMS_TRACE.SET_PLSQL_TRACE(DBMS_TRACE.TRACE_ALL_CALLS);
END;
/
```

 Specify additional trace levels using the + sign as:

```
DBMS_TRACE.SET_PLSQL_TRACE (tracelevel1 +
tracelevel2 ...)
```

4. Execute the function and capture the result into a bind variable:

```
/*Declare a SQLPLUS environment variable*/
SQL> VARIABLE M_LOC VARCHAR2(100);

/*Execute the function and assign the return output to the
variable*/
SQL> EXEC :M_LOC := F_GET_LOC (7369);

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

/*Print the variable*/
SQL> PRINT M_LOC
```

```
M_LOC
-----
DALLAS
```

5. Stop the trace session:

```
BEGIN
/*Stop the trace session*/
    DBMS_TRACE.CLEAR_PLSQL_TRACE;
END;
/
```

6. Query the trace log tables.

Query the PLSQL\_TRACE\_RUNS table to retrieve the current RUNID:

```
/*Query the PLSQL_TRACE_RUNS table*/
SELECT runid, run_owner, run_date
FROM plsql_trace_runs
ORDER BY runid
/
```

| RUNID | RUN_OWNER | RUN_DATE  |
|-------|-----------|-----------|
| 1     | ORADEV    | 29-JAN-12 |

Query the PLSQL\_TRACE\_EVENTS table to retrieve the trace events for the RUNID as 1.

The highlighted portion shows the tracing of execution of the F\_GET\_LOC function. The trace events appearing before and after the highlighted portion represent the starting and stopping of the trace session.

```
/*Query the PLSQL_TRACE_EVENTS table*/
SELECT runid,
```

```

        event_comment,
        event_unit_owner,
        event_unit,
        event_unit_kind,
        event_line
FROM plsql_trace_events
WHERE runid = 1
ORDER BY event_seq
/

```

The output of the preceding query is shown in the following screenshot:

| RUNID | EVENT_COMMENT                  | EVENT_UNIT | EVENT_UNIT  | EVENT_UNIT_KIND | EVENT_LINE |
|-------|--------------------------------|------------|-------------|-----------------|------------|
| 1     | PL/SQL Trace Tool started      |            |             |                 |            |
| 1     | Trace flags changed            |            |             |                 |            |
| 1     | Return from procedure call     | SYS        | DBMS_TRACE  | PACKAGE BODY    | 21         |
| 1     | Return from procedure call     | SYS        | DBMS_TRACE  | PACKAGE BODY    | 76         |
| 1     | Return from procedure call     | SYS        | DBMS_TRACE  | PACKAGE BODY    | 81         |
| 1     | PL/SQL Virtual Machine stopped |            |             |                 |            |
| 1     | PL/SQL Virtual Machine started |            |             |                 |            |
| 1     | Procedure Call                 |            | <anonymous> | ANONYMOUS BLOCK | 0          |
| 1     | Procedure Call                 |            | <anonymous> | ANONYMOUS BLOCK | 1          |
| 1     | Return from procedure call     | ORADEV     | F_GET_LOC   | FUNCTION        | 13         |
| 1     | Return from procedure call     | ORADEV     | F_GET_LOC   | FUNCTION        | 9          |
| 1     | Return from procedure call     | ORADEV     | F_GET_LOC   | FUNCTION        | 18         |
| 1     | PL/SQL Virtual Machine stopped |            |             |                 |            |
| 1     | PL/SQL Virtual Machine started |            |             |                 |            |
| 1     | Procedure Call                 |            | <anonymous> | ANONYMOUS BLOCK | 0          |
| 1     | Procedure Call                 |            | <anonymous> | ANONYMOUS BLOCK | 3          |
| 1     | Procedure Call                 | SYS        | DBMS_TRACE  | PACKAGE BODY    | 94         |
| 1     | Procedure Call                 | SYS        | DBMS_TRACE  | PACKAGE BODY    | 72         |
| 1     | Procedure Call                 | SYS        | DBMS_TRACE  | PACKAGE BODY    | 66         |
| 1     | Return from procedure call     | SYS        | DBMS_TRACE  | PACKAGE BODY    | 12         |
| 1     | Return from procedure call     | SYS        | DBMS_TRACE  | PACKAGE BODY    | 67         |
| 1     | Return from procedure call     | SYS        | DBMS_TRACE  | PACKAGE BODY    | 75         |
| 1     | PL/SQL trace stopped           |            |             |                 |            |

21 rows selected.

The query output shows the F\_GET\_LOC function execution flow starting from the time the trace session started (EVENT\_COMMENT = PL/SQL Trace Tool started) till the trace session was stopped (EVENT\_COMMENT = PL/SQL trace stopped).

## Profiling the PL/SQL programs

We just saw tracing capabilities in PL/SQL programs. It presents the execution flow of the program in an interactive format with clear comments at each stage. But it doesn't provide the execution statistics of the program which prevents the user from determining the performance of a program. The user never comes to know about the time consumed at each step or process.

Before the release of Oracle 11g, DBMS\_PROFILER was used as the primary tool for profiling PL/SQL programs.

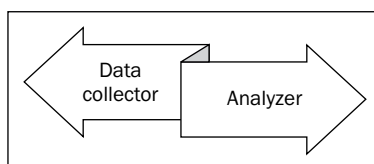
## Oracle hierarchical profiler—the DBMS\_HPROF package

Oracle introduced the PL/SQL hierarchical profiler in Oracle 11g release 1. The profiling was restructured as **hierarchical profiling**. The hierarchical profiling could profile even the subprogram calls made in the PL/SQL code. It fills the gap between tracing loopholes and the expectations of performance tracing. The hierarchical profiler creates the dynamic execution profile of a PL/SQL program. The efficiencies of the hierarchical profiler are as follows:

- Distinct reporting for SQL and PL/SQL time consumption.
- Reports count of distinct subprograms calls made in the PL/SQL code and the time spent with each subprogram call.
- Multiple interactive analytics reports in HTML format using the command line utility.
- More efficient than other tracing utilities and offers more powerful profiling than a conventional profiler. The conventional DBMS\_PROFILER tracks the performance at a lower level (individual line of programs) while DBMS\_HPROF tracks the cumulative performance of a program unit.

The DBMS\_HPROF package implements hierarchical profiling. It is a SYS owned Oracle built-in package whose subprograms profile the PL/SQL code execution.

The PL/SQL hierarchical profiler consists of two subcomponents. The two components – **Data collector** and **Analyzer** – are indicative of the two-step hierarchical profiling process.



The Data collector component is the "worker" component which initiates the profiling process, collects all the raw profiler data from the PL/SQL code execution, and stops. The raw profiler data is dumped into a system-based text file for further analysis. In simple words, it stakes itself to prepare the stage for the Analyzer component.

The Analyzer component takes the raw profiler data and loads it into the profiler log tables. The effort of the component lies in understanding the raw profiler data and placing it correctly in the profiler tables. Conceptually, the Analyzer component lives the same life cycle as that of an **ETL (Extraction, Transformation, and Loading)** process.

The following table shows the DBMS\_HPROF subprograms:

| Subprogram                | Description                                                                                        |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ANALYZE function          | Analyzes the raw profiler output and produces hierarchical profiler information in database tables |
| START_PROFILING procedure | Starts hierarchical profiler data collection in the user's session                                 |
| STOP_PROFILING procedure  | Stops profiler data collection in the user's session                                               |

In the preceding subprograms list, the START\_PROFILING and STOP\_PROFILING procedures come under the Data collector component while the subprogram ANALYZE is a sure selection under the Analyzer component.

The DBA must grant the EXECUTE privilege to the user who intends to perform profiling activity.

## View profiler information

Similar to the trace log tables, Oracle 11g has facilitated the profiler with relational tables to log the analyzed profiler data. The profiler log tables can be created by running the \$ORACLE\_HOME\rdbms\admin\dbmshptab.sql script. On execution of this script, the following three tables are created:

- DBMSHP\_RUNS: This table maintains the flat information about each command executed during profiling
- DBMSHP\_FUNCTION\_INFO: This table contains information about the profiled function
- DBMSHP\_PARENT\_CHILD\_INFO: This table contains parent-child profiler information

The script execution might raise some exceptions which can be ignored for the first time. Once the script is executed and tables are created, the DBA must grant a SELECT privilege on these tables to the users.

## Demonstrating the profiling of a PL/SQL program

The following steps demonstrate the profiling of a PL/SQL stored function, F\_GET\_LOC:

1. Create a directory to create a trace file for raw profiler data:  

```
/*Connect as sysdba*/  
Conn sys/system as sysdba  
Connected.
```

```
/*Create directory where raw profiler data would be stored*/
SQL> CREATE DIRECTORY PROFILER_REP AS 'C:\PROFILER\'
/
```

Directory created.

```
/*Grant read, write privilege on the directory to ORADEV*/
SQL> GRANT READ, WRITE ON DIRECTORY PROFILER_REP TO ORADEV
/
```

Grant succeeded.

```
/*Grant execute privilege on DBMS_HPROF package to ORADEV*/
SQL> GRANT EXECUTE ON DBMS_HPROF TO ORADEV
/
```

Grant succeeded.

```
/*Grant SELECT privilege on DBMSHP_RUNS to ORADEV*/
SQL> GRANT select on DBMSHP_RUNS to ORADEV
/
```

Grant succeeded.

```
/*Grant SELECT privilege on DBMSHP_FUNCTION_INFO to ORADEV*/
SQL> GRANT select on DBMSHP_FUNCTION_INFO to ORADEV
/
```

Grant succeeded.

```
/*Grant SELECT privilege on DBMSHP_PARENT_CHILD_INFO to ORADEV*/
SQL> GRANT select on DBMSHP_PARENT_CHILD_INFO to ORADEV
/
```

Grant succeeded.


## 2. Start the profiling:

```
/*Connect to ORADEV*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

BEGIN
/*Start the profiling*/
/*Specify the directory and file name*/
```

```
DBMS_HPROF.START_PROFILING ('PROFILER_REP', 'F_GET_LOC.TXT');
END;
/
```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

 max\_depth is the third parameter of the START\_PROFILING subprogram which can be used to limit recursive subprogram calls. By default, it is NULL.

3. Execute the F\_GET\_LOC function:

```
/*Declare a SQLPLUS environment variable*/
SQL> VARIABLE M_LOC VARCHAR2(100);

/*Execute the function and assign the return output to the
variable*/
SQL> EXEC :M_LOC := F_GET_LOC (7369);

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

/*Print the variable*/
SQL> PRINT M_LOC
```

```
M_LOC
-----
DALLAS
```

4. Stop the profiling

```
BEGIN
/*Stop the profiling */
DBMS_HPROF.STOP_PROFILING;
END;
/
```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

5. Check the PROFILER\_REP database directory. A text file, F\_GET\_LOC.txt, has been created with the raw profiler content. A small screen cast of the raw profiler data is as follows:

```
P#V PLSHPROF Internal Version 1.0
P#! PL/SQL Timer Started
P#C PLSQL."."."."__plsql_vm"
P#X 7
P#C PLSQL."."."."__anonymous_block"
```

```

P#X 695
P#C PLSQL."ORADEV"."F_GET_LOC"::8."F_GET_LOC"#762ba075453b8b0d #1
P#X 6
P#C PLSQL."ORADEV"."F_GET_LOC"::8."F_GET_LOC.C_
DEPT"#980980e97e42f8ec #5
P#X 15
P#C SQL."ORADEV"."F_GET_LOC"::8."__static_sql_exec_line6" #6
P#X 67083
...

```

From the preceding sample of raw profiler data, one can get clear indications for the following:

- Namespace distinction at each line as SQL or PLSQL
- Operations captured by the hierarchical profiler as follows:
  - `__anonymous_block` indicates anonymous block execution
  - `__dyn_sql_exec_lineline#` indicates dynamic SQL statement execution at line#
  - `__pkg_init` indicates PL/SQL package initialization
  - `__plsqli_vm` indicates PL/SQL virtual machine call
  - `__sql_fetch_lineline#` indicates fetch operation at line#
  - `__static_sql_exec_lineline#` indicates static SQL execution at line#
- Each line starts with an encrypted indication as P#X, P#C. Let us briefly understand what they indicate:
  - P#C is the call event which indicates a subprogram call
  - P#R is the return event which indicates a "return" from a subprogram
  - P#X shows the time consumed between the two subprogram calls
  - P#! is the comment which appears in the analyzer's output

However, the raw profile doesn't appear to be a comprehensive one which can be interpreted fast and easily. This leads to the need for an analyzer which can translate the raw data into a meaningful form. The Analyzer component of HPROF can reform the raw profiler data into accessible form. The raw profiler text file would be interpreted and loaded into profiling log tables.

Note that until Step 5, the Data collector component of the hierarchical profiler was active. The raw profiler data has been collected and recorded in a text file.

6. Execute the ANALYZE subprogram to insert the data into profiler tables.

```
/*Connect as DBA*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.

/*Start the PL/SQL block*/
DECLARE
    l_runid NUMBER;
BEGIN

/*Invoke the analyzer API*/
    l_runid := DBMS_HPROF.analyze
                (location    => 'PROFILER_REP',
                FILENAME    => 'F_GET_LOC.txt',
                run_comment => 'Analyzing the execution of F_
GET_LOC');

    DBMS_OUTPUT.put_line('l_runid=' || l_runid);
END;
/
```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed

If profiling is enabled for a session and the trace file contains a huge volume of raw profiler data, you can analyze only selected subprograms by specifying the TRACE parameter in the ANALYZE API. The following example code snippet shows the usage of the TRACE parameter in the ANALYZER subprogram. The MULTIPLE\_RAW\_PROFILES.txt trace file contains raw profiler data from multiple profiles. But only the profiles of F\_GET\_SAL and F\_GET\_JOB can be analyzed as follows:

```
DECLARE
    l_runid NUMBER;
BEGIN
    l_runid:= dbms_hprof.analyze
                ( location=> 'PROFILER_REP',
                filename=> 'MULTIPLE_RAW_PROFILES.txt',
                trace => '"F_GET_SAL"."F_GET_JOB"'
                );
end;
/
```

## 7. Query the profiling log tables

```
/*Query the DBMSHP_RUNS table*/
SELECT runid, total_elapsed_time,run_comment
FROM dbmshp_runs
ORDER BY runid
/
```

```

      RUNID TOTAL_ELAPSED_TIME RUN_COMMENT
-----
1              106407 Analyzing the execution of F_GET_LOC

```

In the preceding query result, note that `TOTAL_ELAPSED_TIME` is the total execution time (in micro seconds) for the procedure. The run comment appears as per the input given during analysis.

```
/*Query the DBMSHP_FUNCTION_INFO table*/
SELECT runid, owner, module, type, function, namespace, function_
elapsed_time,calls
FROM dbmshp_function_info
WHERE runid = 1
```

The output of the preceding query is shown in the following screenshot:

| RUNID | OWNER  | MODULE     | TYPE         | FUNCTION                | NAMESPAC | FUNCTION_ELAPSED_TIME | CALLS |
|-------|--------|------------|--------------|-------------------------|----------|-----------------------|-------|
| 1     |        |            |              | __anonymous_block       | PLSQL    | 772                   | 2     |
| 1     |        |            |              | __plsql_on              | PLSQL    | 23                    | 2     |
| 1     | ORADEU | F_GET_LOC  | FUNCTION     | F_GET_LOC               | PLSQL    | 45                    | 1     |
| 1     | ORADEU | F_GET_LOC  | FUNCTION     | F_GET_LOC.C_DEPT        | PLSQL    | 21                    | 1     |
| 1     | SYS    | DBMS_HPROP | PACKAGE BODY | STOP_PROFILING          | PLSQL    | 0                     | 1     |
| 1     | ORADEU | F_GET_LOC  | FUNCTION     | __sql_fetch_line14      | SQL      | 38463                 | 1     |
| 1     | ORADEU | F_GET_LOC  | FUNCTION     | __static_sql_exec_line6 | SQL      | 67683                 | 1     |

7 rows selected.

Here, we see how the analyzer output clearly indicates the step-by-step execution profile of a PL/SQL program. It shows which engine (namespace) was employed on which call event along with the time consumed at each event.

## The plshprof utility

The analyzer component simplifies much of the problem by interpreting the raw profiler data and loading it into the database tables. What more can one expect? But the services of hierarchical profiler don't end here. The correct analysis of the profiler data is as important as the interpretation of data. For this purpose, a command-line tool has been provided which can generate multiple reports in HTML format.

`plshprof` is a command-line utility which reads the raw profiler data and generates multiple HTML reports. Each report builds up and showcases a new frame of analysis and offers better statistical foresight to the user. The sixteen reports generated can be navigated from the main report page.

The plshprof utility can be executed as follows:

```
C:\Profiler path> plshprof -output [HTML FILE] [RAW PROFILER DATA]
```

Let us now generate the HTML report of the profiler data which we derived above:

```
C:\>cd profiler
```

```
C:\profiler>plshprof -output F_GET_LOC F_GET_LOC.TXT
```

```
PLSHPROF: Oracle Database 11g Enterprise Edition Release 11.2.0.1.0 -  
Production
```

```
[7 symbols processed]
```

```
[Report written to 'F_GET_LOC.html']
```

```
C:\profiler>
```

As soon as the plshprof utility process is over, the following HTML files are generated at the directory location:

- F\_GET\_LOC.html
- F\_GET\_LOC\_2c.html
- F\_GET\_LOC\_2f.html
- F\_GET\_LOC\_2n.html
- F\_GET\_LOC\_fn.html
- F\_GET\_LOC\_md.html
- F\_GET\_LOC\_mf.html
- F\_GET\_LOC\_ms.html
- F\_GET\_LOC\_nsc.html
- F\_GET\_LOC\_nsf.html
- F\_GET\_LOC\_nsp.html
- F\_GET\_LOC\_pc.html
- F\_GET\_LOC\_tc.html
- F\_GET\_LOC\_td.html
- F\_GET\_LOC\_tf.html
- F\_GET\_LOC\_ts.html

Here, `F_GET_LOC.html` is the main index file which contains navigational links to all other reports. The main index page is shown in the following screenshot:

### PL/SQL Elapsed Time (microsecs) Analysis

106407 microsecs (elapsed time) & 9 function calls

The PL/SQL Hierarchical Profiler produces a collection of reports that present information derived from the profiler's output log in a variety of form. The following reports have been found to be the most generally useful as starting points for browsing:

- [Function Elapsed Time \(microsecs\) Data sorted by Total Subtree Elapsed Time \(microsecs\)](#)
- [Function Elapsed Time \(microsecs\) Data sorted by Total Function Elapsed Time \(microsecs\)](#)

In addition, the following reports are also available:

- [Function Elapsed Time \(microsecs\) Data sorted by Function Name](#)
- [Function Elapsed Time \(microsecs\) Data sorted by Total Descendants Elapsed Time \(microsecs\)](#)
- [Function Elapsed Time \(microsecs\) Data sorted by Total Function Call Count](#)
- [Function Elapsed Time \(microsecs\) Data sorted by Mean Subtree Elapsed Time \(microsecs\)](#)
- [Function Elapsed Time \(microsecs\) Data sorted by Mean Function Elapsed Time \(microsecs\)](#)
- [Function Elapsed Time \(microsecs\) Data sorted by Mean Descendants Elapsed Time \(microsecs\)](#)
- [Module Elapsed Time \(microsecs\) Data sorted by Total Function Elapsed Time \(microsecs\)](#)
- [Module Elapsed Time \(microsecs\) Data sorted by Module Name](#)
- [Module Elapsed Time \(microsecs\) Data sorted by Total Function Call Count](#)
- [Namespace Elapsed Time \(microsecs\) Data sorted by Total Function Elapsed Time \(microsecs\)](#)
- [Namespace Elapsed Time \(microsecs\) Data sorted by Namespace](#)
- [Namespace Elapsed Time \(microsecs\) Data sorted by Total Function Call Count](#)
- [Parents and Children Elapsed Time \(microsecs\) Data](#)

## Sample reports

In this section, we will overview some important reports:

- Function Elapsed Time (microsecs) Data sorted by Total Subtree Elapsed Time (microsecs):** The report provides the flat view of raw profiler data. It includes total call count, self time, subtree time, and descendants of each function:

Function Elapsed Time (microsecs) Data sorted by Total Subtree Elapsed Time (microsecs)

106407 microsecs (elapsed time) & 9 function calls

| Subtree | Ind%  | Function | Ind%  | Descendants | Ind%  | Calls | Ind%  | Function Name                                                     |
|---------|-------|----------|-------|-------------|-------|-------|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 106407  | 100%  | 23       | 0.0%  | 106384      | 100%  | 2     | 22.2% | <a href="#">plsql_vo</a>                                          |
| 106384  | 100%  | 772      | 0.7%  | 105612      | 99.3% | 2     | 22.2% | <a href="#">anonymous_block</a>                                   |
| 105612  | 99.3% | 45       | 0.0%  | 105547      | 99.2% | 1     | 11.1% | <a href="#">ORADEV_F_GET_LOC_F_GET_LOC (line 1)</a>               |
| 67104   | 63.1% | 21       | 0.0%  | 67083       | 63.0% | 1     | 11.1% | <a href="#">ORADEV_F_GET_LOC_F_GET_LOC.C_REPT (line 5)</a>        |
| 67083   | 63.0% | 67083    | 63.0% | 0           | 0.0%  | 1     | 11.1% | <a href="#">ORADEV_F_GET_LOC_...static_sql_exe_line6 (line 6)</a> |
| 38463   | 36.1% | 38463    | 36.1% | 0           | 0.0%  | 1     | 11.1% | <a href="#">ORADEV_F_GET_LOC_...sql_fetch_line14 (line 14)</a>    |
| 0       | 0.0%  | 0        | 0.0%  | 0           | 0.0%  | 1     | 11.1% | <a href="#">SYS.DBMS_PROF.STOP_PROFILING (line 39)</a>            |

- **Function Elapsed Time (microsecs) Data sorted by Total Function Elapsed Time (microsecs):** This is the module-level summary report which shows the total time spent in each module and the total calls to the functions in the module:

Function Elapsed Time (microsecs) Data sorted by Total Function Elapsed Time (microsecs)

106407 microseconds (elapsed time) & 9 function calls

| Subtree | Ind%  | Function | Ind%  | Calls  | Descendants | Ind% | Function Name                                     |
|---------|-------|----------|-------|--------|-------------|------|---------------------------------------------------|
| 67083   | 63.0% | 67083    | 63.0% | 0      | 0.0%        | 1    | OPAREV.F.GET_LOC._static_sql_exec_lines (line 61) |
| 38463   | 36.1% | 38463    | 36.1% | 0      | 0.0%        | 1    | OPAREV.F.GET_LOC._sql_fetch_lineid (line 141)     |
| 106384  | 100%  | 772      | 0.7%  | 105612 | 99.3%       | 2    | anonymous_block                                   |
| 105612  | 99.3% | 45       | 0.0%  | 105567 | 99.2%       | 1    | OPAREV.F.GET_LOC.F.GET_LOC (line 11)              |
| 106407  | 100%  | 23       | 0.0%  | 106384 | 100%        | 2    | _plsql_xm                                         |
| 67104   | 63.1% | 21       | 0.0%  | 67083  | 63.0%       | 1    | OPAREV.F.GET_LOC.F.GET_LOC.C.DEPT (line 51)       |
| 0       | 0.0%  | 0        | 0.0%  | 0      | 0.0%        | 1    | SQL.DEMO_PROF.STOP_PROFILING (line 52)            |

- **Namespace Elapsed Time (microsecs) Data sorted by Namespace:** This report provides the distribution of time spent by the PL/SQL engine and SQL engine separately. SQL and PLSQL are the two namespace categories available for a block. It is very useful in reducing the disk I/O and hence enhancing the block performance. The net sum of the distribution is always 100 percent:

Namespace Elapsed Time (microsecs) Data sorted by Namespace

106407 microseconds (elapsed time) & 9 function calls

| Function | Ind%  | Calls | Ind%  | Namespace |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|-----------|
| 861      | 0.8%  | 7     | 77.8% | PLSQL     |
| 105546   | 99.2% | 2     | 22.2% | SQL       |

Likewise, other reports also reveal and present some important statistics for the PL/SQL code execution.

## Summary

In this chapter, we learned the tracing and profiling features of Oracle 11g. While the tracing feature tracks the execution path of PL/SQL code, the profiling feature reports the time consumed at each subprogram call or line number. We demonstrated the implementation and analysis of tracing and profiling features.

In the next chapter, we will see how to identify vulnerable areas in a PL/SQL code and safeguard them against injective attacks.

## Practice exercise

1. Which component of the PL/SQL hierarchical profiler uploads the result of profiling into database tables?
  - a. The Profiler component
  - b. The Analyzer component
  - c. The shared library component
  - d. The Data collector component
2. The `plshprof` utility is a SQL utility to generate a HTML profiler report from profiler tables in the database.
  - a. True
  - b. False

3. Suppose that you are using Oracle 11g Release 2 express edition and you issue the following command:

```
ALTER SESSION SET PLSQL_WARNINGS = 'ENABLE:ALL'
/
Session altered.
ALTER FUNCTION FUNC COMPILE PLSQL_DEBUG=TRUE
/
Function altered.
```

Determine the output of the following SELECT statement

```
SELECT * FROM USER_ERRORS  
/
```

- a. No output
  - b. PLW-06015: parameter PLSQL\_DEBUG is deprecated; use  
PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL = 1
  - c. PLW-06013: deprecated parameter PLSQL\_DEBUG forces  
PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL <= 1
  - d. Both b and c
4. Identify the trace log tables:
- a. PLSQL\_TRACE
  - b. PLSQL\_TRACE\_ACTIONS
  - c. PLSQL\_TRACE\_EVENTS
  - d. PLSQL\_TRACE\_INFO
5. Identify the correct trace level combination from the following options
- a. DBMS\_TRACE.SET\_PLSQL\_TRACE  
(DBMS\_TRACE.TRACE\_ALL\_CALLS+DBMS\_TRACE.TRACE\_ALL\_EXCEPTIONS);
  - b. DBMS\_TRACE.SET\_PLSQL\_TRACE  
(DBMS\_TRACE.TRACE\_ALL\_SQL+DBMS\_TRACE.TRACE\_ALL\_EXCEPTIONS);
  - c. DBMS\_TRACE.SET\_PLSQL\_TRACE  
(DBMS\_TRACE.TRACE\_ALL\_LINES+DBMS\_TRACE.TRACE\_PAUSE);
  - d. DBMS\_TRACE.SET\_PLSQL\_TRACE  
(DBMS\_TRACE.TRACE\_ALL\_EXCEPTIONS+DBMS\_TRACE.TRACE\_STOP);
6. From the following options, choose the correct statements about the plshprof utility:
- a. It is a command line utility.
  - b. It generates the HTML reports from the raw profiler data.
  - c. It is a SQL command to load the raw profiler data into profiler log tables.
  - d. The utility was available with DBMS\_PROFILER.

7. You issue the following command to analyze the profiler output:

```
begin
:r := dbms_hprof.analyze(
                location=> 'DIR',
                filename=> 'xyz.trc',
                trace => '"FUNC1"."FUNC2"."FUNC3"'
);
end;
```

Choose the correct option:

- a. The Analyzer component cannot trace multiple subprograms.
  - b. The Analyzer component can trace only text (.txt) files.
  - c. The Analyzer component analyzes the raw profiler data in xyz.trc and loads the data into profiler tables.
  - d. The trace file can contain profile information of only one subprogram.
8. The `max_depth` parameter specified the limit of recursive calls in `START_PROFILING`.
- a. True
  - b. False



# 12

## Safeguarding PL/SQL Code against SQL Injection Attacks

Oracle database is, undoubtedly, the uncrowned monarch of "Information Business" across the globe. Though it has narrowed the gap between the expectations and the potential, the question, "Is my information secure?" still hovers the DBMS philosophies. We often discuss the vectors of language strength, performance, storage, and data security. But code vulnerability and security share equal stake in data security. Nevertheless, the strength of SQL and PL/SQL is unquestionable, but vulnerable code writing might motivate a hacker to smuggle through the code and perform vicious manipulations in the data.

In this chapter, we will expand our bandwidth to understand PL/SQL code security. We will understand how "loose code writing" can encompass the code base injection and hence, the data. We will cover the following topics:

- SQL injection
  - Introduction and understanding
- Immunizing SQL injection attacks
  - Reducing the attack surface
  - Avoiding dynamic SQL
  - Using Bind argument
  - Sanitizing inputs with `DBMS_ASSERT`
- Testing the code against the SQL injection flaws

## SQL injection—an introduction

**SQL injection** is a database intrusion that occurs when an unauthorized "malicious" user hacks the PL/SQL code and draws unintended access to the database. Once the code has been cracked, the malicious user can pull out confidential information from the database. There can be many more hazardous consequences of code injection.

In 1998, Rain Forest Puppy (RFP) was the first to identify the "technology vulnerabilities" in his paper "NT Web Technology Vulnerabilities" for "Phrack 54". Later, the injective techniques were studied by many technology experts and evangelists to chalk out the best practices of code writing to dilute such acts. Till date, many application exploitation cases have been registered on account of code injection. For reference, check out <http://www.computerworld.com.au/index.php/id;683627551>. The applications working with personal information or financial data are more prone to injective attacks.

## SQL injection—an overview

In the past, the reason for SQL injection was the vulnerability in the middleware—the layer which lies between the data and the client. Unfortunately, it victimizes most of the applications. The middleware layer acts as a communicating interface between the data and the client. The fact that the inputs received from the client acts as the hacker's weapon in major cases is undeniable. However, the code base can sustain such attacks and immunize any chances of SQL injection. Certain penetrable areas have been identified in PL/SQL code developments which can be improvised to safeguard the application against the smuggling attacks. The code sections which are best candidates of attack are:

- PL/SQL subprogram executed with owner's execution rights
- Dynamic SQL using direct inputs in the programs
- Non-sanitized inputs from the client

Hackers can employ a variety of techniques to hit upon penetrable code in an application. A serious injective attack can lead to the leakage of confidential information, unethical data manipulations, or even alteration in user access and the database state.

Let us check out a simple example of code injection.

The salary of an employee is highly confidential in an organization. Suppose a company's finance team uses a P\_DISPLAY\_SAL procedure to display the salary of all employees as a specific designation.

```

/*Connect to ORADEV user*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display the messages*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Create a procedure*/
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE P_GET_EMP_SAL (P_JOB VARCHAR2)
IS

/*Declare a ref cursor and local variables*/
TYPE C IS REF CURSOR;
CUR_EMP C;
L_ENAME VARCHAR2(100);
L_SAL NUMBER;
L_STMT VARCHAR2(4000);

BEGIN

/*Open the ref cursor for a Dynamic SELECT statement*/
L_STMT := 'SELECT ename, sal
          FROM employees
          WHERE JOB = ''' || P_JOB || '''';
OPEN CUR_EMP FOR L_STMT;
LOOP

/*Fetch the result set and print the result set*/
FETCH CUR_EMP INTO L_ENAME, L_SAL;
EXIT WHEN CUR_EMP%NOTFOUND;
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(RPAD(L_ENAME,6,' ') || '---' || L_SAL);
END LOOP;

CLOSE CUR_EMP;
END;
/

Procedure created.

```

The finance team uses the preceding procedure honestly to display the salaries of all salesmen as follows:

```
/*Testing the procedure for SALESMAN*/
EXEC P_GET_EMP_SAL ('SALESMAN')

ALLEN --2000
WARD  --1650
MARTIN--1650
TURNER--1900
```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

Now, we will attack the code with a malicious input and pull out the salary details of all the employees:

```
/*Testing the procedure with malicious input*/
EXEC P_GET_EMP_SAL ('XXX' OR '1'='1')

SMITH --9200
ALLEN --2000
WARD  --1650
JONES --3375
MARTIN--1650
BLAKE --3250
CLARK --2850
SCOTT --3400
KING  --5400
TURNER--1900
ADAMS --1500
JAMES --1350
FORD  --3400
MILLER--1700
```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

Observe the impact of SQL injection. A hacker can get access to the salary information of all the employees in the organization. An unauthenticated string input is concatenated with a "Always True" condition for unintended execution of a dynamic SQL. Applications, where client input is required to invoke an Oracle subprogram, run a high risk of code injection.

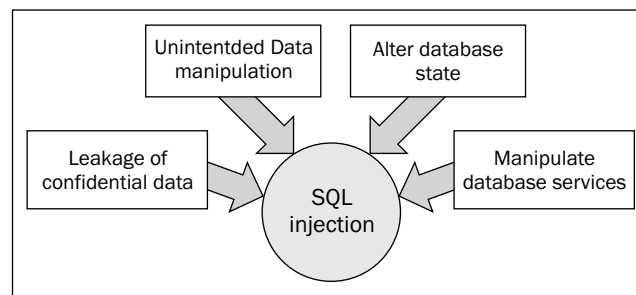
## Types of SQL injection attacks

Based on the injection attack type and its impact analysis, the SQL injection attack can be classified into two categories:

- **First-order attack:** When the code attack is done from the client inputs to alter the objective of the invoked Oracle subprogram, the degree of attack is "one". As an impact of the attack, the data may lose its confidentiality due to unauthorized access by the hacker.
- **Second-order attack:** When the attack performs a different activity from the ongoing system activity, the attack comes under second-order attack.

The categories in the preceding list are just a broad categorization of the hacker's activities. Apart from these categories, the hackers can employ different techniques "blindly", resulting in the malfunctioning of the application.

The following diagram branches the impacts of SQL injection:



## Preventing SQL injection attacks

SQL injection is a malicious practice, not a bug. Applications cannot be completely shielded against SQL injection but can be immunized against such acts. The code base development should take care to adopt the best practices which can evade the possibilities of code attack.

Let us briefly cover some of the precautionary measures which minimize injection attacks:

- **Avoid dynamic SQL:** Using dynamic SQL with "built up" inputs, they easily fell prey to injection attacks. Embedding dynamic SQLs within the programs must be avoided where static SQLs can be substituted. Static SQL must be used if all the query identifiers are known at the time of the code development. Otherwise, the dynamic SQL must use sanitized inputs or bind arguments to discourage the hackers from breaking through the code.

- **Monitor user privileges to reduce the attack surface:** A user must enjoy only the access for which he is authorized as per his role. Irrelevant and excess privileges must be revoked to reduce the access perimeter of a user.  
In addition, the PL/SQL subprograms must be invoked by the invoker's rights and not the owner's or the creator's rights.
- **Use bind arguments:** The dynamic SQLs seeking inputs must make use of the bind arguments. It is a highly recommended programming tip to reduce the injective attacks on the code. It reduces the possibility of breaking through the code by providing concatenated inputs. Besides shielding against the code attack, bind arguments also improve code performance. It is because the usage of bind variables in a query avoids hard parsing and it pushes the Oracle server to reuse the execution plans for the SQL queries.
- **Sanitize client inputs with DBMS\_ASSERT:** The inputs from the client must be verified before using them in the program logic. The DBMS\_ASSERT package provides niche subprograms to validate the inputs from the application layer.

## Immunizing SQL injection attacks

We will discuss the ways to immunize code against SQL injection in detail. Besides the ways which are listed above, we will discuss some additional tricks too, to reduce SQL injection attacks.

### Reducing the attack's surface

Reducing the attack's surface is one of the preventive measures that are proactively used to fight the SQL injection attacks. It aims to minimize the area of operation and visibility of the hackers by controlling the privileges and execution rights of a user on the accessible subprograms. The technique is helpful when a user plays a defined role in an application but is still bestowed with a lot more irrelevant privileges from the admin. The attack perimeter can be reduced by:

- Controlling the user privileges
- Creating the program units with invoker's rights

## Controlling user privileges

The DBA must keep a hawk eye on the roles of the users in the application to prevent any malicious motivation. The availability of additional spare privileges might end up in misuse and, hence, might threaten the database security. The DBA must revoke irrelevant privileges from the user. For example, a user, `UREP`, plays the role of a report generator in a team. As per his role, he must have only the `SELECT` privilege on the tables; he should not have rights to perform any transaction. The DBA must revoke the DML privileges:

```
SQL> REVOKE INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE ON EMPLOYEES FROM UREP  
/
```

```
Revoke succeeded.
```

Besides controlling the user privileges, the client-based application must intelligently handle the exposing of the database APIs and the required inputs. The end user interfaces must use only driving APIs which require user input. The user inputs should be treated with their actual data types instead of type casts.

## Invoker's and definer's rights

As per the default behavior of Oracle, a subprogram is executed by its owner's or definer's rights.

Suppose a user A created a procedure P to insert sales data in the `SALES` table. The user A grants the `EXECUTE` privilege on procedure P to another user B, who has no such privilege to insert data into the `SALES` table. The user B executes the procedure P. Will it be executed successfully? Of course, it will execute because the user B executes the procedure P with its owner's rights which have the privilege to create sales data. This implies that the definers' rights not only offer subprogram execution privileges but also share privileges on the objects which are referenced inside the subprogram body.

This default behavior can become chaotic, if wrongly used. An attacker can get unauthorized access to an API, which can be used vindictively. In such cases, the subprogram invokers' rights must override the subprogram definers' rights. The `AUTHID CURRENT_USER` clause is used to override the invokers' rights over the definers' rights.

We will conduct a small case study to understand the fact that a user must invoke a non-owned subprogram at the cost of his owned rights.

We create a procedure to modify the default tablespace of a user in SYS. Note that only DBA has the privilege to modify the tablespace of a user. The following program has been created for demonstration purpose only:

```
/*Connect as SYSDBA*/
Conn sys/system as SYSDBA
Connected.

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display the messages*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Create the procedure to alter the tablespace*/
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE p_mod_tablespace
(P_USERNAME VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
 P_TABLESPACE VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
IS
    V_STMT VARCHAR2(500);
BEGIN

/*Dynamically alter the user to modify default tablespace*/
    V_STMT:='ALTER USER '||p_username ||
            ' default tablespace '|| P_TABLESPACE;

/*Execute the dynamic statement*/
    EXECUTE IMMEDIATE v_stmt;
END p_mod_tablespace;
/

Procedure created.
```

For demonstration purpose, the DBA grants the EXECUTE privilege on the procedure to the ORADEV user.

```
/*Grant execute on the procedure to ORADEV*/
SQL> GRANT execute ON p_mod_tablespace TO ORADEV
/

Grant succeeded.
```

Verify that the ORADEV user doesn't has sufficient privilege to modify the tablespace of a user:

```
/*Connect to ORADEV user*/
SQL> CONN ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.
```

```

/*Verify the privileges of ORADEV user*/
SQL> ALTER USER nancy DEFAULT TABLESPACE system
/
ALTER USER NANCY DEFAULT TABLESPACE USERS
*
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-01031: insufficient privileges

```

The ORADEV user executes the P\_MOD\_TABLESPACE procedure for the preceding operation:

```

/*Connect to ORADEV user*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display the messages*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Execute the procedure to modify the default tablespace of user
NANCY*/
SQL> EXEC SYS.P_MOD_TABLESPACE ('NANCY', 'SYSTEM');

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

```

The procedure executed successfully because it uses the execution privileges of SYS, not of ORADEV. The ORADEV user enjoys only the invocation privilege.

Verify the change in the tablespace for the NANCY user

```

/*Connect as DBA*/
Conn sys/system as sysdba
Connected.

/*Check the default tablespace of NANCY*/
SELECT username, default_tablespace
FROM dba_users
WHERE username='NANCY'
/

```

| USERNAME | DEFAULT_TABLESPACE |
|----------|--------------------|
| NANCY    | SYSTEM             |

Notice that a user can perform unauthorized activities as he executes the subprogram with the definer's rights. The DBA must realize the unintentional attacks resulting in the modification of important information.

Let us recreate the P\_MOD\_TABLESPACE procedure with the AUTHID CURRENT\_USER option and repeat the steps:

```
/*Connect as SYSDBA*/
Conn sys/system as SYSDBA
Connected.

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display the messages*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Create the procedure to alter the tablespace*/
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE p_mod_tablespace
(P_USERNAME VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
 P_TABLESPACE VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL)
/*Specify the AUTHID CURRENT_USER clause*/
AUTHID CURRENT_USER
IS
    V_STMT VARCHAR2(500);
BEGIN
/*Dynamically alter the user to modify default tablespace*/
    V_STMT:='ALTER USER '||p_username ||
            ' default tablespace '|| P_TABLESPACE;

/*Execute the dynamic statement*/
    EXECUTE IMMEDIATE v_stmt;
END p_mod_tablespace;
/

Procedure created.
```

Now, the ORADEV user reconnects and invokes the procedure to revert back the tablespace changes in the last activity:

```
/*Connect to ORADEV user*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Execute the procedure to modify tablespace of NANCY back to USERS*/
SQL> EXEC SYS.P_MOD_TABLESPACE ('NANCY','USERS');
BEGIN SYS.P_MOD_TABLESPACE ('NANCY','USERS'); END;

*
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-01031: insufficient privileges
ORA-06512: at "SYS.P_MOD_TABLESPACE", line 9
ORA-06512: at line 1
```

Now, the procedure execution fails as it is executed with the privileges of ORADEV and not of SYS. As ORADEV is a normal user, he cannot update the tablespace information for a user. Thus, the `AUTHID CURRENT_USER` clause can be used to minimize the chances of misusing the privileges.

## Avoiding dynamic SQL

Dynamic SQL is the most vulnerable point identifiable in a PL/SQL program. A dynamically built up `SELECT` statement, which uses the parameter accepted by the subprogram, is an open invitation to attackers. In these scenarios, developers must predict and discover the scalability of the SQL query. If the query identifiers such as selected columns and table name are known at the runtime, static SQL must be encouraged. Dynamic SQL must come into the picture only when the complete SQL query has to be built up during runtime or dynamic DDL statements.

Static SQL statements in the PL/SQL program run rare threat of injection unless the attacker achieves code writing access. They are performance efficient also as they reduce the time consumed in identifier substitution and query building.

Let us observe the above recommendations in the following illustration.

The following `P_SHOW_DEPT` procedure accepts an employee ID and displays the corresponding department number:

```
/*Connect to ORADEV user*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display the messages*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Create the procedure*/
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE P_SHOW_DEPT
(P_ENAME VARCHAR2)
IS
    CUR SYS_REFCURSOR;
    l_ename VARCHAR2(100);
    l_deptno NUMBER;
BEGIN

    /*Open ref cursor for a dynamic query using the input parameter*/
    OPEN CUR FOR 'SELECT ename, deptno
                  FROM employees
                  WHERE ename = ' || P_ENAME;
```

```
        LOOP

        /*Fetch and display the results*/
        FETCH CUR INTO l_ename, l_deptno;
        EXIT WHEN cur%notfound;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(RPAD(l_ename,6,' ') || '--' || l_deptno);
        END LOOP;
    END;
/
```

Procedure created.

```
/*Testing the procedure*/
SQL> EXEC p_show_dept (''KING'');
KING  --10
```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

We will demonstrate how the objective of the procedure got changed due to the malicious inputs. The procedure was used to display the departments of employees but out of surprise, it can list the employees' salaries, too. The procedure input substituting an operand in the WHERE clause predicate is a clear threat to the data.

```
/*Invoking the procedure for a malicious input*/
EXEC P_SHOW_DEPT ('null UNION SELECT ENAME, SAL FROM EMPLOYEES');
```

```
ADAMS  --1500
ALLEN  --2000
BLAKE  --3250
CLARK  --2850
FORD   --3400
JAMES  --1350
JONES  --3375
KING   --5400
MARTIN--1650
MILLER--1700
SCOTT  --3400
SMITH  --9200
turner--1900
WARD   --1650
```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

The preceding case demonstrates the vulnerability in dynamic SQLs. Leakage of confidential data!

Now as the query identifiers are already known in this case, we can replace the dynamic SQL by a static SQL. The P\_SHOW\_DEPT procedure can be rewritten as follows:

```

/*Create the procedure*/
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE P_SHOW_DEPT
(P_ENAME VARCHAR2)
IS
    CUR SYS_REFCURSOR;
    l_ename VARCHAR2(100);
    l_deptno NUMBER;
BEGIN
    /*Open ref cursor for a static query using the input parameter*/
    OPEN CUR FOR SELECT ename, deptno
                    FROM employees
                    WHERE ename = P_ENAME;

    LOOP
        /*Fetch and display the results*/
        FETCH CUR INTO l_ename, l_deptno;
        EXIT WHEN cur%notfound;
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(RPAD(l_ename,6,' ') || '--' || l_deptno);
    END LOOP;
END;
/

Procedure created.

/*Testing the procedure*/
SQL> EXEC p_show_dept ('KING');
KING  --10

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

```

In the preceding code demonstration, notice that the query framing in a PL/SQL block minimizes the possibility of injection. In a dynamically framed SQL statement as a string, incoming parameters leave an open loop hole to the string where malicious inputs can flow in to deform the query. But static SQL queries use the input variables directly in the query predicates, which lowers down the probability of undesired deformation of the query. Now when we attempt to inject the procedure call again with the same input, the static SQL doesn't return any result, thus guarding the procedure against injective attacks.

```

/*Invoking the procedure for a malicious input*/
EXEC P_SHOW_DEPT ('null UNION SELECT ENAME, SAL FROM EMPLOYEES');

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

```

Another recommendation to immunize against attacks in dynamic SQLs is the usage of bind arguments. Dynamic SQLs must be implemented with bind arguments. We will see how to work with bind arguments in the next section.

## Bind arguments

Bind arguments act as the placeholder in the dynamic SQL query. They can be substituted with actual arguments during query building at runtime. They minimize code injection attacks and yield good performance, too.

Dynamic SQL using concatenated inputs can substitute the concatenated parameter with a placeholder in the dynamic SQL or dynamic PL/SQL. At runtime, the placeholder can be replaced with an actual argument through the `USING` clause in the same positional order. Bind variables can successfully substitute the placeholders for the value operands in the `WHERE` clause.

Let us check the usage of bind arguments in our earlier example. We will recreate the `P_SHOW_DEPT` procedure using dynamic SQL and bind arguments. We will replace the parameter substitution in the dynamic SQL with a placeholder or bind variable (`:bind`).

```
/*Connect to ORADEV user*/
Conn ORADEV/ORADEV
Connected.

/*Enable the SERVEROUTPUT to display the messages*/
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON

/*Create the procedure*/
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE P_SHOW_DEPT
(P_ENAME VARCHAR2)
IS
    CUR SYS_REFCURSOR;
    l_ename VARCHAR2(100);
    l_deptno NUMBER;
BEGIN

    /*Open ref cursor for a dynamic query using a bind variable*/
    OPEN CUR FOR 'SELECT ename, deptno
                  FROM employees
                  WHERE ename = :bind' USING P_ENAME;

    LOOP
```

```

/*Fetch and display the results*/
  FETCH CUR INTO l_ename, l_deptno;
  EXIT WHEN cur%notfound;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(l_ename || '--' || l_deptno);
END LOOP;
END;
/

```

Procedure created.

```

/*Testing the procedure*/
SQL> EXEC p_show_dept ('KING');
KING--10

```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

Now we will test the procedure against the malicious input:

```

/*Invoking the procedure for a malicious input*/
SQL> EXEC P_SHOW_DEPT ('null UNION SELECT ENAME, SAL FROM EMPLOYEES');

```

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

Once again, no result is returned. It is because the placeholder in the dynamic SQL substitutes a single string value. Here, a single string value is treated as `null UNION SELECT ENAME, SAL FROM EMPLOYEES`, which doesn't exist in the database.

Bind variables can be used as a placeholder in the dynamic SQL to substitute all types of inputs. It can be query identifiers such as columns or table names, keywords, and operands (like the one we just saw above). They are the preferred choice when the dynamic query uses the `IN` list or the `LIKE` operator.

As a limitation, bind arguments cannot substitute Oracle identifiers and keywords. Bind variables cannot be used in DDL statements and, also, they cannot substitute identifiers or keywords in a dynamic `SELECT` query.

## Sanitizing inputs using DBMS\_ASSERT

The inputs flowing from the client are another threat to code attacks. The string inputs to the dynamic SQL which do not use bind variables must be properly verified for purity and sanity before using them in the dynamic build of a SQL query. Frankly, it is the responsibility of both the client layer and middleware layer to authenticate the inputs. The client can programmatically perform the basic validation. A second layer check must be set up at the database side to sanitize the inputs supplied from the client.

Input sanitization becomes a mandatory activity when the dynamic SQL requires the substitution of Oracle identifiers.

## The DBMS\_ASSERT package

Oracle 10g release 2 introduced the DBMS\_ASSERT package to sanitize the user inputs. The inputs from the application layer can be supplied to the DBMS\_ASSERT subprograms and verified before they are employed in the program.

The DBMS\_ASSERT package is owned by SYS and contains seven subprograms. These subprograms are listed in the following table:

| Subprograms                 | Description                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ENQUOTE_LITERAL function    | Encloses a string literal within single quotes                                                   |
| ENQUOTE_NAME function       | Encloses the input string in double quotes                                                       |
| NOOP functions              | Overloaded function returns the value without any checking; does no operation                    |
| QUALIFIED_SQL_NAME function | Verifies that the input string is a qualified SQL name                                           |
| SCHEMA_NAME function        | Verifies that the input string is an existing schema name                                        |
| SIMPLE_SQL_NAME function    | Verifies that the input string is a simple SQL name                                              |
| SQL_OBJECT_NAME function    | Verifies that the input parameter string is a qualified SQL identifier of an existing SQL object |

The most significant feature of DBMS\_ASSERT is that most of its subprograms return the same input parameter as the output, after checking its properties. If the input fails expected "property", the VALUE\_ERROR exception is raised.

Let us check the working of the subprograms.

The ENQUOTE\_LITERAL subprogram can be used to sanitize the string inputs by enclosing them in single quotes. This function eliminates the possibility of leaking information by cladding an additional query using the UNION set operator:

```
/*Demonstrate the use of ENQUOTE_LITERAL*/
SELECT DBMS_ASSERT.ENQUOTE_LITERAL('KING')
FROM DUAL
/

DBMS_ASSERT.ENQUOTE_LITERAL('KING')
-----
'KING'
```

The `ENQUOTE_NAME` can be used to enclose Oracle identifiers in double quotes and verify quoted identifiers.

```
/*Demonstrate the use of ENQUOTE_NAME*/
SELECT DBMS_ASSERT.ENQUOTE_NAME('KING')
FROM DUAL
/

DBMS_ASSERT.ENQUOTE_NAME('KING')
-----
"KING"
```

The `SCHEMA_NAME` function validates the current schema name. This eliminates the possibility of accessing other schema objects:

```
/*Demonstrate the use of SCHEMA_NAME*/
SELECT DBMS_ASSERT.SCHEMA_NAME('PLSQL')
from dual
/

SELECT DBMS_ASSERT.SCHEMA_NAME('PLSQL')
      *
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-44001: invalid schema
ORA-06512: at "SYS.DBMS_ASSERT", line 243

SELECT DBMS_ASSERT.SCHEMA_NAME('ORADEV')
from dual
/

DBMS_ASSERT.SCHEMA_NAME('ORADEV')
-----
ORADEV
```

Other subprograms—`SIMPLE_SQL_NAME` and `SQL_OBJECT_NAME`—are also of great relevance to validate the schema object names.

## Identifier formatting and verification process

Oracle identifiers can be used in multiple contexts with different behaviors. This study is important to ensure the correct usage of an appropriate subprogram from a `DBMS_ASSERT` subprogram list. An identifier can be a quoted identifier, unquoted identifier, and a literal. All three contexts are entirely different from each other. Based on the context of the identifier in the scenario, the verification algorithm must be selected for sanitization.

We will check out for the identifier contexts. The different contexts are listed as follows:

- **Unquoted identifier:** This identifier obeys the naming convention of Oracle—it must begin with a letter followed by numbers or a set of defined special characters (`_`).

```
/*Use (employees) as unquoted identifier*/  
SELECT * FROM employees  
/
```

In the preceding query, the `employees` table acts as an unquoted identifier.

- **Quoted identifier:** It is enclosed with double quotes and follows no naming convention. It can start with a number (optionally) and can include any sort of characters.

```
/*Use (employees) as quoted identifier*/  
SELECT * FROM "employees"  
/
```

In the preceding query, the quoted identifier `"employees"` is different from the unquoted identifier `employees`. Quoted identifiers can be used as a method of code attack.

- **Literal:** It can be any fixed value used in the SQL query.

```
/*Demonstrate a literal*/  
SELECT * FROM employees WHERE ename = 'KING'  
/
```

In the preceding query, `'KING'` is a literal.

```
/*Use (employees) as a literal*/  
SELECT * FROM user_tables WHERE table_name='EMPLOYEES'  
/
```

Note that the `EMPLOYEES` table (identifier) acts as a literal in the preceding query.

Appropriate usage of verification algorithm is necessary to ensure the sanity of the identifier. We saw that an identifier can be any of the following:

- **Basic:** This identifier is always an unquoted identifier. As the Basic identifier is built up of a defined set of characters, it requires less formatting and is deemed to be sanitized.
- **Simple:** This identifier may or may not be a quoted identifier. The `SIMPLE_SQL_NAME` function can be used to verify its purity and sanity. It checks only the admissible character sets and not the length of the identifier.

If the identifier is unquoted, the function checks for the naming convention as applied to Basic identifier (allowed character set is A-Z, a-z, 0-9, \$, #, and \_).

If the identifier is quoted, it can include any character set within the double quotes.

Check out the following illustration:

```
/*Demonstrate verification algorithm for Simple identifier using
quoted identifier*/
SQL> select DBMS_ASSERT.SIMPLE_SQL_NAME('"lselect"')
       from dual
       /

DBMS_ASSERT.SIMPLE_SQL_NAME('"lSELECT"')
-----
"lselect"

/*Demonstrate verification algorithm for Simple identifier using
unquoted identifier*/
SQL> select DBMS_ASSERT.SIMPLE_SQL_NAME('lselect')
       from dual
       /
select DBMS_ASSERT.SIMPLE_SQL_NAME('lselect')
       *
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-44003: invalid SQL name
ORA-06512: at "SYS.DBMS_ASSERT", line 146
```

- **Qualified:** This identifier is mainly used for the sanity check of database links, but behaves in a similar way to simple SQL names in most of cases. It can include more than one simple SQL name as a schema name, object and a DB link, too. They can follow any one of the following syntax:

```
<local qualified name> ::= <simple name> {'.' <simple name>}
<database link name> ::= <local qualified name> ['@' <connection
string>]
<connection string> ::= <simple name>
<qualified name> ::= <local qualified name> ['@' <database link
name>]
```

Check out the difference between SIMPLE\_SQL\_NAME and QUALIFIED\_SQL\_NAME in the following illustration:

```
/*Demonstrate verification algorithm for Qualified SQL identifier
using SIMPLE_SQL_NAME*/
SQL> select dbms_assert.simple_sql_name('schema.obj@dblink')
```

```
        from dual
      /
select dbms_assert.simple_sql_name('schema.obj@dblink') from dual
      *
ERROR at line 1:
ORA-44003: invalid SQL name
ORA-06512: at "SYS.DBMS_ASSERT", line 146

/*Demonstrate verification algorithm for Qualified SQL identifier
using QUALIFIED_SQL_NAME*/
SQL> select dbms_assert.qualified_sql_name('schema.obj@dblink')
      from dual
      /

DBMS_ASSERT.QUALIFIED_SQL_NAME('SCHEMA.OBJ@DBLINK')
-----
schema.obj@dblink
```

The behavior of quoted and unquoted qualified SQL names remains same as we discussed earlier.

## **DBMS\_ASSERT—usage guidelines**

The best practices to use the DBMS\_ASSERT validation package are as follows:

- Unnecessary uppercase conversion of identifiers must be avoided.
  - **Case 1:** The following statement is not the correct usage of basic unquoted identifiers:

```
BAD_USAGE := sys.dbms_assert.SCHEMA_NAME(UPPER(MY_SCHEMA));
```

As the SCHEMA\_NAME function is case sensitive, the quoted inputs must be provided to check their sanity. Explicit transformation of the identifiers must be avoided to ensure the accuracy of the result. If the input schema name is not a valid schema, Oracle raises a ORA-44001: invalid schema exception.

- **Case 2:** The following statement is a better practice to use the unquoted identifier:
  - **Case 3:** The best way to avoid any possibility of bad input is demonstrated in the following statement. The schema name has been unquoted by setting off the ENQUOTE property:

```
BEST_USAGE := sys.dbms_assert.ENQUOTE_NAME(
    sys.dbms_assert.SCHEMA_NAME(MY_SCHEMA), FALSE);
```

- Escape quotation marks when using `ENQUOTE_NAME`—avoid unnecessary quoting of identifiers when using `ENQUOTE_NAME`. Similarly, for `ENQUOTE_LITERAL`, single quotes in the input must be prevented. Note that `ENQUOTE_NAME` must be used with quoted identifiers only.
- `NULL` results from `DBMS_ASSERT` must be ignored. The subprograms `SIMPLE_SQL_NAME`, `QUALIFIED_SQL_NAME`, `SCHEMA_NAME`, and `SQL_OBJECT_NAME` sanitize the identifiers and the results returned are same as the input. Other subprograms such as `NOOP`, `ENQUOTE_NAME` and `ENQUOTE_LITERAL` can accept `NULL` values.
- Length validation check must be enforced in addition to the `DBMS_ASSERT` verification algorithms.
- Protect all injection prone parameters and code paths.
- The `DBMS_ASSERT` also exists as a public synonym; it is recommended to make all references to its subprograms by prefixing `SYS` which is the owning schema.
- Make use of `DBMS_ASSERT` specific exceptions to identify the actual exception raised by the bad inputs. The exceptions `ORA44001` to `ORA44004` are the `DBMS_ASSERT` exceptions:
  - `ORA44001` stands for `sys.dbms_assert.INVALID_SCHEMA_NAME`
  - `ORA44003` stands for `sys.dbms_assert.INVALID_SQL_NAME`
  - `ORA44002` stands for `sys.dbms_assert.INVALID_OBJECT_NAME`
  - `ORA44004` stands for `sys.dbms_assert.QUALIFIED_SQL_NAME`

## **DBMS\_ASSERT—limitations**

The `DBMS_ASSERT` package has certain limitations, as follows:

- No validation for TNS connection strings
- No validation for buffer overflow attacks
- It only checks the value property of an input value, it doesn't parse property of a value as a database identifier
- No validation for unprivileged access of objects

## Testing the code for SQL injection flaws

Until now, we discussed the symptoms and remedies of SQL injection. We demonstrated the programming recommendations to mitigate the effects of code injections and smuggles. Assuring code quality and testing play a crucial role in taking preventive measures against hackers. Code testing resources must adopt a concrete strategy to discover and hit upon the code vulnerabilities before it invites an attacker to exploit the database. Now, we will discuss some of the testing considerations to test the code for SQL injection flaws.

### Test strategy

A logical and effective test strategy must be employed to discover injection flaws. Of course, there is no magic practice to ooze out all flaws in the code.

The usual code reviews are part of static testing while testing the programs with sample data and inputs come under dynamic testing. These days, static testing has been absorbed into the development stage where developers, their peers and seniors review the code. Major syntactical errors, logical issues, code practices, and injection bugs can be traced at this level. The Dry Run concept can even check multiple scenarios and ensure bug-free application submission to the quality assurance team.

### Reviewing the code

As a reviewer of the code, the first and foremost step is to check the attack surface. The code reviewer must measure the exposure of database programs in the client. In addition, he must check the privilege set available with the database users. Once these steps are passed with satisfaction, he must get into the code to search for key vulnerable areas.

In PL/SQL-based applications, always be careful to look for:

- Dynamic SQL build ups:
  - EXECUTE IMMEDIATE
  - REF CURSOR queries
  - DBMS\_SQL
  - DBMS\_SYS\_SQL
- Check for appropriate usage of bind arguments
- Parameter input sanitization

Similarly, in Java or C client architecture, the reviewer must look for dynamic callable statement preparation.

## Static code analysis

SQL injection attacks are mostly due to coding unawareness and dynamic SQLs. Therefore, static code analyzers cannot easily trace the application vulnerability. From the Oracle documentation, the term "Static Code Analysis" can be defined as follows:

*Static code analysis is the analysis of computer software that is performed without executing programs built from that software. In most cases, the analysis is performed on some version of the source code and in other cases, some form of the object code. The term is usually applied to the analysis performed by an automated tool.*

It is advisable that such analysis tools should not be considered as the testing benchmark and confirmatory tools. Instead, they can be used for white box testing where the application is tested for smooth logical flow and program executions for different nature of input data.

## Fuzz tools

Fuzz testing is similar to doing "Bungee jumping" with the code. It is rough testing, which is not based out on any logic, but meant to measure the security and scalability of the application. It measures the sustainable degree up of an application to the bad and malicious inputs. Without any preconception of the system or program behavior, it uses raw inputs to check the program semantics. The environment for fuzz testing tools can be made explicitly by modifying the context values and manipulating the test data.

The bugs reported in fuzz testing may not always be real threats to the application, but they can be a crucial clue to the vulnerability and injective attacks.

## Generating test cases

The last and final call is the preparation of test cases. Though it is kept aside very often during the application development, test cases are a crucial stage to measure the strengths, robustness, and client input validation. Remember the following points:

- Each input from the client must be individually tested. All the remaining parameters should be kept unchanged while generating a test case for varied behavior of client input.
- The best way to test SQL injection is to provide junk data, concatenated string inputs, and many more.
- Test with varied nature of input; try with object names, identifiers, dummy names to arrive at a positive conclusion.

## Summary

In the chapter, we learned a malicious hacking concept—SQL Injection. We understood the causes of code attack and its impact on the database. We covered the techniques to safeguard an application against the injective attacks through demonstrations and illustrations. At the end of the chapter, we discussed some of the testing considerations to hit the vulnerable areas in the code.

## Practice exercise

1. Which method would you employ to immunize the PL/SQL code against SQL Injection attacks?
  - a. Replace Dynamic SQLs with Static SQLs.
  - b. Replace concatenated inputs in Dynamic SQL with binds arguments.
  - c. Declare the PL/SQL program to be executed by its invoker's rights.
  - d. Removing string type parameters from the procedure.
2. Use static SQL to avoid SQL injection when all Oracle identifiers are known at the time of code execution.
  - a. True
  - b. False
3. Choose the impact of SQL injection attacks:
  - a. Malicious string inputs can extract confidential information.
  - b. Unauthorized access can drop a database.
  - c. It can insert ORDER data in EMPLOYEES table.
  - d. A procedure executed with owners' (SYS) rights can change the password of a user.
4. Pick the correct strategies to fight against of SQL injection
  - a. Sanitize the malicious inputs from the application layer with DBMS\_ASSERT.
  - b. Remove string concatenated inputs from the Oracle subprogram.
  - c. Dynamic SQL should be removed from the stage.
  - d. Execute a PL/SQL program with its creator's rights.

5. Statistical Code analysis provides an efficient technique to trace application vulnerability by using ideal and expected parameter values.
  - a. True
  - b. False
6. Fuzz tool technique is a harsh and rigorous format of testing which uses raw inputs and checks a program's sanctity.
  - a. True
  - b. False
7. Choose the accomplishments achieved by the DBMS\_ASSERT package to prevent SQL injection?
  - a. Enclose a given string in single quotes.
  - b. Enclose a given string in double quotes.
  - c. Verify a schema object name.
  - d. Verify a SQL simple and qualified SQL identifier.
8. Identify the nature of a table name in the following SELECT statement

```
SELECT TOTAL
FROM "ORDERS"
WHERE ORD_ID = P_ORDID
/
```

  - a. Unquoted identifier
  - b. Quoted identifier
  - c. Literal
  - d. Placeholder
9. Which of the following DBMS\_ASSERT subprogram modifies the input value?
  - a. SIMPLE\_SQL\_NAME
  - b. ENQUOTE\_LITERAL
  - c. QUALIFIED\_SQL\_NAME
  - d. NOOP

10. The code reviews must identify certain vulnerable key areas for SQL Injection. Select the correct ones from the following list:
- a. DBMS\_SQL
  - b. BULK COLLECT
  - c. EXECUTE IMMEDIATE
  - d. REF CURSOR
11. The AUTHID CURRENT\_USER clause achieves which of the following purposes?
- a. Code executes with invoker's rights.
  - b. Code executes with current logged in user.
  - c. Eliminates SQL injection vulnerability.
  - d. Code executes with the creator's rights.

# Answers to Practice Questions

## Chapter 1, Overview of PL/SQL Programming Concepts

| Question No. | Answer      | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1            | c           | Currently, SQL Developer doesn't provide backup and recovery features. However, it can be done using a regular database export from SQL Developer.                                                                                                |
| 2            | a, c, and d | A function can be called from a SQL expression only if it doesn't hinder the database state and purity level.                                                                                                                                     |
| 3            | a           | The ALL_DEPENDENCIES dictionary view has been filtered by REFERENCED_TYPE and REFERENCED_OWNER for SYS owned tables and views.                                                                                                                    |
| 4            | c           | The local variables are local to the block only. They cannot be referred outside their native PL/SQL block.                                                                                                                                       |
| 5            | a, b, and d | An exception variable cannot be simply declared and used with RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR. It has to be mapped to a self defined error number using PRAGMA EXCEPTION_INIT, and then raised through RAISE_APPLICATION_ERROR with an exception message. |

| Question No. | Answer  | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6            | a and b | <p>A function must return a value using the RETURN statement while a procedure might return a value through the OUT parameters.</p> <p>Standalone subprograms (functions and procedures) cannot be overloaded. Only the subprograms declared in a package can be overloaded.</p> <p>Both procedures and functions can accept parameters in either of the two modes – pass by value and pass by reference.</p> |
| 7            | c       | <p>For implicit cursors, the %FOUND attribute is set to TRUE, if the SQL statement fetches a minimum of one record.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

## Chapter 2, Designing PL/SQL Code

| Question No. | Answer  | Explanation                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1            | c       | <p>All the cursor attributes, except %ISOPEN, must be accessed within the cursor execution cycle. Once the cursor is closed, the cursor work area is flushed.</p> |
| 2            | b and c | <p>The use of cursor FOR loops prevents erratic coding. Fetching the cursor data into a record reduces the overhead of declaring block variables.</p>             |
| 3            | b       | <p>Implicit cursor attributes hold the value of the last executed SQL query. Therefore, it must be referenced just after the SQL query</p>                        |
| 4            | a and b | <p>Cursor variables can point to several cursor objects (cursor work area) in shared memory. Ref cursor types can be declared in a package specification.</p>     |
| 5            | a       | <p>A strong ref cursor must mandatorily have the RETURN type specification. The RETURN type can be a table record structure or a user-defined type.</p>           |

| Question No. | Answer  | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6            | a and b | Cursor variables can dynamically point to different work areas and, hence, different result sets. The biggest advantage of cursor variables is their ability to share the pointer variable amongst the client environments and other subprograms. |
| 7            | b       | As the OPEN stage of cursor variables has to be explicitly specified, it cannot be opened with the cursor FOR loops.                                                                                                                              |
| 8            | a and d | A subtype inherits the complete table record structure and the NULL property of its columns.                                                                                                                                                      |

## Chapter 3, Using Collections

| Question No. | Answer  | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1            | a and c | Associative arrays can have negative integer subscripts, positive integer subscripts and string subscripts.<br><br>As associative arrays are treated as local arrays, initialization is not required for them.             |
| 2            | c       | Nested tables are an unbounded collection which can grow dynamically.                                                                                                                                                      |
| 3            | a       | Varrays are always dense collections. Sparse varray doesn't exist.                                                                                                                                                         |
| 4            | c and d | BOOLEAN and NUMBER are not suitable index types for an associative array.                                                                                                                                                  |
| 5            | a and c | Yes, varray limit can be increased during runtime using the ALTER TABLE statement.<br><br>If all the cells of a varray are populated with elements, LAST is equal to COUNT. This also holds true when the varray is empty. |

| Question No. | Answer      | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6            | b           | The first DBMS_OUTPUT prints the first element from the default constructor. Once it is reassigned with a value in the executable section, the default values are overwritten. |
| 7            | a and c     | Varrays are bounded collections which can accommodate data maximum up to the specified limit.                                                                                  |
| 8            | a, b, and c | EXISTS doesn't raises any exception.<br>DELETE cannot be used with varrays.                                                                                                    |

## Chapter 4, Using Advanced Interface Methods

| Question No. | Answer  | Explanation                                                                                                                             |
|--------------|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1            | a and c | The extproc process is a session specific process started by the Oracle listener and loads the shared library.                          |
| 2            | b       | External procedure support was introduced in Oracle 8.                                                                                  |
| 3            | a       | The PL/SQL wrapper containing the call specification is dependent on the database library object.                                       |
| 4            | b       | The TNS service ORACL_R_CONNECTION_DATA connects to the listener with the SID_NAME in the CONNECT_DATA parameter.                       |
| 5            | b       | The loadjava utility loads the Java class to a specified user in a database.                                                            |
| 6            | a       | Java programs are directly supported by Oracle and do not use the extproc process.                                                      |
| 7            | c       | The external function name is case sensitive. The PL/SQL wrapper must use it exactly in same case as specified in the external program. |

## Chapter 5, Implementing VPD with Fine Grained Access Control

| Question No. | Answer  | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1            | c       | The policy function returns the predicate as <Column>=<Value>.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 2            | b       | The security policy can be associated to one and only one schema object.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 3            | b and c | The DBMS_RLS package is a SYS owned built in package whose public synonym is shared amongst the users. It is a useful package to work with policies and policy groups.                                                                                                                              |
| 4            | b       | There is no such privilege as CREATE_CONTEXT. It should be the CREATE ANY_CONTEXT privilege. All context metadata is in either ALL_CONTEXTS or DBA_CONTEXTS.                                                                                                                                        |
| 5            | a       | Context creation followed by the creation of its trusted package. A policy function is created for the predicate and the security is attached for the protection.                                                                                                                                   |
| 6            | b       | Policy groups are created by the collection of policies under them.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 7            | b and d | Default policy type is Dynamic. Shared static policy is the one where a static policy can be shared by multiple database objects. In such cases, the column appearing in the predicate must exist in all the tables.                                                                                |
| 8            | c and d | Either a DBA or a user with the DBA role can create and drop an application context. A DBA can modify certain USERENV attributes, but not all.                                                                                                                                                      |
| 9            | a       | The predicate information returned by the policy function is retained in SGA until the query is reparsed. During the parse stage, the current context information is matched with the latest. If the value has been changed, Oracle synchs the context values; otherwise the old value is retained. |
| 10           | a       | The applicable policy tries to access the F_JOB_POLICY policy function which doesn't exist in the ORADEV schema.                                                                                                                                                                                    |

## Chapter 6, Working with Large Objects

| Question No. | Answer  | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1            | a       | LOBs can appear as a database column or a user defined object type attribute.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 2            | b       | LOB type parameters can exist.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 3            | a       | LOB data greater than 4 K is stored out of line with the current row. Mandatorily, it's a different LOB segment which may or may not be in the same tablespace.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 4            | b       | The BLOB column must be initialized with <code>EMPTY_BLOB()</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 5            | c       | The constructor methods <code>EMPTY_CLOB()</code> and <code>EMPTY_BLOB()</code> are used to initialize NULL and NOT NULL LOB types.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 6            | b and c | <code>FILEOPEN</code> works only with BFILEs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 7            | b       | Temporary LOBs are session specific.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 8            | c and d | BFILE is a read-only type. The files accessed through the BFILE locator open in read-only mode. They cannot be manipulated in any way during the BFILE access.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 9            | b and d | Temporary LOB is always an internal LOB which is used for manipulative actions in the LOB columns within a block.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 10           | c       | The user must have read/write privilege on the directory to access the files contained in it.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 11           | b       | <p>A LONG column can be migrated to a LOB column using the following syntax:</p> <pre>ALTER TABLE [&lt;schema&gt;.]&lt;table_name&gt;     MODIFY ( &lt;long_column_name&gt; {         CLOB   BLOB   NCLOB }         [DEFAULT &lt;default_value&gt;])         [LOB_storage_clause]</pre> <p>Note that a LONG column can be migrated to CLOB or NCLOB while a LONG RAW column can be modified to BLOB only.</p> |

| Question No. | Answer  | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 12           | b       | The BFILENAME function is used to return the LOB locator of a file which is located externally. It can be used for internal LOBs as well as external LOBs.                                                                                                   |
| 13           | b and d | SecureFile is a new feature in Oracle 11g to store large objects with enhanced security, storage, and performance. Older LOBs may still exist as BasicFiles and can be migrated to SecureFiles.                                                              |
| 14           | a and c | The CREATE TABLE script executes successfully. The table and LOB are created in the default user tablespace. Oracle implicitly generates the LOB segment and LOB index. However, the segments are not created until the data has been inserted in the table. |

## Chapter 7, Using SecureFile LOBs

| Question No. | Answer      | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1            | a, c, and d | SecureFiles can reside only on ASSM tablespaces. They are free from LOB index contention and high water mark contention. Up to 4 MB, SecureFile LOB data can be cached under the WGC component of the buffer cache. |
| 2            | a and d     | Being part of the advanced compression, compression in SecureFile doesn't affect performance. It is intelligently handled by the LOB manager to perceive the impact of compression on LOB data.                     |
| 3            | b           | Compression, deduplication, and encryption are mutually exclusive features of a SecureFile.                                                                                                                         |
| 4            | b           | Table compression has nothing to do with SecureFile compression.                                                                                                                                                    |

| Question No. | Answer  | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5            | a and b | KEEP_DUPLICATES is the default option. The feature doesn't affect performance as the secure hash matching is a transparent process in the server.                              |
| 6            | c and d | The encryption keys are stored in the wallet directory. An encrypted SecureFile column cannot be modified for the encryption algorithm.                                        |
| 7            | b       | Online redefinition works with materialized views to get the latest snapshot of the source table, so that the ongoing data changes are not lost during redefinition processes. |

## Chapter 8, Compiling and Tuning to Improve Performance

| Question No. | Answer  | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1            | a and b | Interpreted compilation mode is preferred when a program unit is in development stage and involves SQL statement processing.                                                                                                                                                         |
| 2            | c and d | The Real Native compilation method removes the dependency on C compiler to generate DLL for the program unit. Instead, the native DLLs are stored in the database dictionary itself. As the DLLs are stored in the dictionary, they can be a part of the normal backup and recovery. |
| 3            | b       | The PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL value set to 3 strictly inlines all the subprograms at high priority.                                                                                                                                                                                       |

| Question No. | Answer      | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4            | b and c     | The PLSQL_CODE_TYPE value specified during recompilation of a program overrides the current system or session settings. Its default value is INTERPRETED and it must be updated in the spfile instance after the database upgrade process. In real native mode, the libraries are stored in the SYSTEM tablespace.                                                                                                                        |
| 5            | a and c     | Usage of BULK COLLECT can pull multi-row data from the database in a single attempt, thus reducing context switches. PLS_INTEGER is a preferred data type in arithmetic calculations.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 6            | d           | Inlining of subprograms is only supported at optimization level greater than one.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 7            | b and c     | The F_ADD local function would be called inline because its call has been marked inline using PRAGMA INLINE. It might also be considered for inlining as the PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL value is 2.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 8            | b           | The DLLs generated from the Real Native compilation are stored in the SYSTEM tablespace.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 9            | a and d     | The NOT NULL data types add overhead to check every assignment for nullity. L_SUM must be declared as<br><br>L_SUM NATURAL;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 10           | a, c, and d | Usage of appropriate data types to avoid implicit typecasting improves performance. L_ID must be declared as NUMBER.<br><br>PRAGMA INLINE works for PLSQL_OPTIMIZE_LEVEL values 2 and 3. At level 1, the Oracle optimizer doesn't consider any subprogram for inlining. At level 3, all subprograms are strictly called for inline. However, inlining of a subprogram can be set off by specifying PRAGMA INLINE (<Function name>, 'NO'). |

## Chapter 9, Caching to Improve Performance

| Question No. | Answer         | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1            | a              | The database server would cache the query results only when the user explicitly allocates the cache memory at the server and the caching feature is enabled. In the given scenario, caching is disabled as the value of the <code>RESULT_CACHE_MAX_SIZE</code> parameter is 0.                                                                            |
| 2            | b and d        | In automatic result caching, the <code>RESULT_CACHE</code> hint is ineffective as the server implicitly caches results of all SQL queries.                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 3            | a              | When the dependent table data gets updated, all the cached results get invalidated.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 4            | b              | The cached results are stored at the server and are sharable across the sessions of the user.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 5            | b              | PL/SQL result cache feature is operative only upon the functions which are declared as standalone or local to a stored subprogram or within a package.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 6            | a              | The <code>RELIES_ON</code> clause has been deprecated in Oracle 11g R2.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 7            | b and c        | The server doesn't cache the results of the queries which use sequence or any pseudo column (here <code>SYSDATE</code> ).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 8            | b              | PL/SQL function result cache works on server-side memory infrastructure which is the same for both SQL and PL/SQL. Only the results of functions can be cached at the server. The function must not be a pipelined one or the one declared with invoker's rights. It should accept parameters in the pass by reference mode of primitive data types only. |
| 9            | a and b        | The valid values are <code>PUBLISHED</code> , <code>NEW</code> , <code>INVALID</code> , <code>BYPASS</code> , and <code>EXPIRED</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 10           | a, b, c, and d | The <code>V\$RESULT_CACHE_STATISTICS</code> dynamic performance view stores the latest cache memory statistics.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

## Chapter 10, Analyzing PL/SQL Code

| Question No. | Answer  | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------------|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1            | b       | The ALL_ARGUMENTS dictionary view captures the information about the subprogram arguments.                                                                                                                         |
| 2            | d       | Server places the identifier information in the SYSAUX tablespace.                                                                                                                                                 |
| 3            | a       | The parameter values used in the subprograms of the DBMS_METADATA package are case sensitive.                                                                                                                      |
| 4            | b       | The FORMAT_CALL_STACK forms the stack of all program units traversed by the server.                                                                                                                                |
| 5            | b and c | The DBMS_METADATA package can generate reports for table grants, object dependencies and DDL of given objects in a schema.                                                                                         |
| 6            | b       | The PL/Scope tool can store the identifier data in the SYSAUX tablespace only.                                                                                                                                     |
| 7            | a and b | For tables and views, the DDL script can be extracted without a storage clause by setting the STORAGE parameter to FALSE. Similarly, views scripts can be made force free by setting the FORCE parameter to FALSE. |

## Chapter 11, Profiling and Tracing PL/SQL Code

| Question No. | Answer | Explanation                                                                                 |
|--------------|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1            | b      | The Analyzer component interprets the raw profiler data and loads into the database tables. |
| 2            | b      | The plshprof is a command-line utility to generate HTML reports from raw profiler output.   |
| 3            | d      | The PLSQL_DEBUG parameter has been deprecated starting from Oracle 11g.                     |

| Question No. | Answer  | Explanation                                                                                                             |
|--------------|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4            | c       | The \$ORACLE_HOME\rdbms\admin\tracetab.sql script creates the trace log tables—PLSQL_TRACE_RUNS and PLSQL_TRACE_EVENTS. |
| 5            | c and d | The trace control levels cannot be used in combination with the other trace levels.                                     |
| 6            | a and b | The plshprof utility is a command-line tool to convert raw profiler data into HTML reports.                             |
| 7            | c       | The Analyzer component can trace multiple subprograms profiled into one trace file.                                     |
| 8            | a       | The max_depth parameter can be specified to limit the recursive levels in START_PROFILING.                              |

## Chapter 12, Safeguarding PL/SQL Code against SQL Injection Attacks

| Question No. | Answer      | Explanation                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1            | a, b, and c | Dynamic SQL is more prone to injective attacks. Static SQL must be preferred in major cases. In other cases, dynamic SQL must use bind variables. |
| 2            | a           | If the SQL query identifiers are fixed for all the executions of a subprogram, static SQL can be used in the program.                             |
| 3            | a and d     | SQL injection can lead to the leakage of confidential information and perform unauthorized activities.                                            |
| 4            | a           | The inputs from the application layer must be verified for purity before using in the application.                                                |
| 5            | b           | Statistical code analysis is used only for logical flow of the code but doesn't provide confirmation on the code vulnerability.                   |

---

| Question No. | Answer      | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6            | a           | Fuzzing is a rough testing method to measure the resistivity and scalability of the program, which can discover the vulnerable areas of the code.                                                     |
| 7            | c and d     | The DBMS_ASSERT.SQL_OBJECT_NAME subprogram validates the object contained in the current schema. The SIMPLE_SQL_NAME and QUALIFIED_SQL_NAME functions are used to verify the sanity of the SQL names. |
| 8            | b           | The quoted identifier is used in queries enclosed within double quotes. Its meaning in the context is entirely different from the unquoted identifier.                                                |
| 9            | b           | ENQUOTE_LITERAL encloses a given string with single quotes.                                                                                                                                           |
| 10           | a, c, and d | The Oracle keywords which implement dynamic SQL in the code are the most vulnerable areas in a PL/SQL code.                                                                                           |
| 11           | a and c     | AUTHID CURRENT_USER eliminates the chances of SQL injection by executing a PL/SQL program with the rights of its invokers and not of the creator.                                                     |

---



# Index

## Symbols

`%BULK_EXCEPTIONS` 59  
`%BULK_EXCEPTIONS` attribute 252  
`%BULK_ROWCOUNT` 59  
`%FOUND` 36, 60  
`%ISOPEN` 36, 60  
`%NOTFOUND` 36, 60  
`%ROWCOUNT` 36, 60  
`[DBA | ALL | USER]_ARGUMENTS` 301, 302, 303  
`[DBA | ALL | USER]_DEPENDENCIES` 308, 309  
`[DBA | ALL | USER]_OBJECTS` 304, 305  
`[DBA | ALL | USER]_PROCEDURES` 307  
`[DBA | ALL | USER]_SOURCE` 306

## A

**ACID (Atomicity, Consistency, Isolation, and Durability)** 171  
**ADD\_TRANSFORM** function 329  
**advanced features, SecureFiles**  
    compression 215, 216  
    deduplication 214, 215  
    enabling 214-216  
    encryption 216-219  
**ALTER SESSION** command 178  
**ALTER SYSTEM** command 218  
**ALTER [SYSTEM | SESSION]**  
    command 274  
**AMM** 271

**ANALYZE** function 352  
**AND** logical operator  
    using, for conditional control statements  
        rephrasing 254  
**APPEND** procedure 181  
**application life cycle development**  
    code writing 299  
    tuning 299  
**architectural enhancements, SecureFiles**  
    CHUNK size 208  
    high water mark contention 209  
    inode and space management 208  
    prefetching 209  
    transformation management 208  
    WGC 208  
**architecture, external routines**  
    components 122  
    extproc process 122  
    Shared library of external routine 123  
**ASSM** 208  
**associative arrays**  
    about 83-87  
    data type 85  
    Inferred data 85  
    PL/SQL scalar data type 85  
    structure 85  
    User-defined type 85  
**AUTHID CURRENT\_USER** option 374  
**Automatic Memory Management. *See***  
    **AMM**  
**automatic result cache** 274, 279, 280  
**Automatic Segment Space Management. *See***  
    **ASSM**

## B

### BasicFiles

migrating, to SecureFiles 220

### BasicFiles to SecureFiles migration

Online Redefinition method 220-224

Partition method 220

### BFILE 173

BFILE, DBMS\_LOB data types 180

BFILENAME function 179

Binary Large Object. *See* BLOB

### BLOB 172

BLOB, DBMS\_LOB data types 180

### bulk binding

implementing 248, 249

SAVE\_EXCEPTIONS, using 252, 253

using 249-251

### BULK COLLECT

about 249

facts 250

## C

cache 197, 270

cache grid 273

cache group 273

callback 123

callout 123

call specification 134

Character Large Object. *See* CLOB

### CLOB 172

CLOSE procedure 181

### code testing, for SQL injection flaws

code, reviewing 386

Fuzz testing 387

static code analysis 387

test case, generating 387

test strategy 386

### coding information

[DBA | ALL | USER]\_ARGUMENTS 301

[DBA | ALL | USER]\_DEPENDENCIES

308, 309

[DBA | ALL | USER]\_OBJECTS 304, 305

[DBA | ALL | USER]\_PROCEDURES 307

[DBA | ALL | USER]\_SOURCE 306

dictionary views 300

finding, SQL developer used 310-319

tracking 299-308

### collection

about 81, 103

associative arrays, using 84

categorizing 83

characteristics 103, 104

type structure 82

initializing 115, 116

nested tables, using 84

non-persistent category 83

overview 82

persistent category 83

type, selecting 84

varrays, using 84

### collection elements

manipulating 113, 115

### collection methods, PL/SQL

about 105

COUNT function 106

DELETE function 112, 113

EXISTS function 105, 106

EXTEND function 109, 110

FIRST function 108

Last function 108

LIMIT function 107

NEXT function 109

PRIOR function 109

TRIM function 111

COLUMN\_VALUE attribute 96

COMPARE function 181

### compilation mode

choosing 230

interpreted compilation mode, choosing 230

native compilation mode, choosing 231

setting 231

setting, at database level 231

setting, at session level 231

settings, querying 232

compression feature 216

COMPRESS keyword 216

### conditional control statements

rephrasing 254

rephrasing, AND logical operator used 254

rephrasing, OR logical operator used 254

CONNECT\_DATA parameter 127, 133

- CONSTRAINTS\_AS\_ALTER**
  - parameter 331
- CONSTRAINTS** parameter 331
- context area** 35, 55
- CONVERTTOBLOB** procedure 181
- CONVERTTOCLOB** procedure 181
- COPY** procedure 181
- COUNT** function 106
- CREATETEMPORARY** procedure 181
- cross method**
  - package for Java class method, creating 140
- Ctrl + Enter (F9)** 19
- cursor attributes**
  - about 59
  - %FOUND 36, 60
  - %ISOPEN 36, 60
  - %NOTFOUND 36, 60
  - %ROWCOUNT 36, 60
- cursor design**
  - considerations 57, 58
  - cursor variables, using 58
- cursor execution cycle** 56
- cursor execution cycle, stages**
  - BIND 57
  - CLOSE 57
  - EXECUTE 57
  - FETCH 57
  - OPEN 56
  - PARSE 56
- cursor expressions** 56
- cursors**
  - cursor attributes 36, 37
  - execution cycle 35
  - FOR loop 38
  - overview 35
- cursor structures**
  - about 55
  - cursor design considerations 57, 58
  - cursor design, guidelines 58, 59
  - cursor execution cycle 56
  - cursor expressions 56
  - cursor variables 56
  - Dynamic SQL 56
  - explicit cursors 56
  - implicit cursors 56

- cursor variables**
  - about 56, 66-68
  - as arguments 71, 72
  - processing 70, 71
  - ref cursor, types 69
  - restrictions 73

## D

- database configuration, for server-side**
  - result cache**
    - RESULT\_CACHE\_MAX\_SIZE parameter 274
    - RESULT\_CACHE\_MODE parameter 273
    - RESULT\_CACHE\_REMOTE\_EXPIRATION parameter 274
- database dependency**
  - about 48
  - direct 49
  - direct dependency, displaying 49
  - enhancement 50
  - indirect 49
  - indirect dependency, displaying 49
  - issues 50
  - metadata 50
- data caching** 269
- data definitions (DDL)** 149
- data type** 74
- DBMS\_ASSERT** package
  - about 380, 381
  - ENQUOTE\_LITERAL function 380
  - ENQUOTE\_NAME function 380
  - identifier contexts 382
  - identifier, formatting 381
  - limitations 385
  - NOOP functions 380
  - QUALIFIED\_SQL\_NAME function 380
  - SCHEMA\_NAME function 380
  - SIMPLE\_SQL\_NAME function 380
  - SQL\_OBJECT\_NAME function 380
  - usage guidelines 384, 385
- DBMS\_ASSERT** validation
  - best practices 384
- DBMS\_DESCRIBE** package 313
- DBMS\_HPROF** package
  - subprograms 352
  - using 351

**DBMS\_LOB constants**

CALL 180  
DBMS\_LOB constants 180  
DBMS\_LOB option types 180  
DBMS\_LOB option values 180  
FILE\_READONLY 180  
LOBMAXSIZE 180  
LOB\_READONLY 180  
LOB\_READWRITE 180  
SESSION 180

**DBMS\_LOB data types**

BFILE 180  
BLOB 180  
CLOB 180  
INTEGER 180  
RAW 180  
VARCHAR2 180

**DBMS\_LOB option types**

OPT\_COMPRESS 180  
OPT\_DEDUPLICATE 180  
OPT\_ENCRYPT 180

**DBMS\_LOB option values**

COMPRESS\_OFF 180  
COMPRESS\_ON 180  
DEDUPLICATE\_OFF 180  
DEDUPLICATE\_ON 180  
ENCRYPT\_OFF 180  
ENCRYPT\_ON 180

**DBMS\_LOB package**

DBMS\_LOB constants 180  
DBMS\_LOB data types 180  
DBMS\_LOB subprograms 181, 182  
overview 179  
rules, for BFILEs 183  
rules, for internal LOBs 183  
security model 179

**DBMS\_LOB subprograms**

APPEND procedure 181  
CLOSE procedure 181  
COMPARE function 181  
CONVERTTOBLOB procedure 181  
CONVERTTOCLOB procedure 181  
COPY procedure 181  
CREATETEMPORARY procedure 181  
ERASE procedure 181  
FILECLOSEALL procedure 181  
FILECLOSE procedure 181

FILEEXISTS function 181  
FILEGETNAME procedure 181  
FILEISOPEN function 181  
FILEOPEN procedure 181  
FRAGMENT\_DELETE procedure 181  
FRAGMENT\_INSERT procedure 181  
FRAGMENT\_MOVE procedure 181  
FRAGMENT\_REPLACE procedure 181  
FREETEMPORARY procedure 181  
GETCHUNKSIZE function 182  
GETLENGTH function 182  
GETOPTIONS function 182  
GET\_STORAGE\_LIMIT function 182  
INSTR function 182  
ISOPEN functions 182  
ISTEMPORARY functions 182  
LOADBLOBFROMFILE procedure 182  
LOADCLOBFROMFILE procedure 182  
LOADFROMFILE procedure 182  
OPEN procedures 182  
READ procedures 182  
SETOPTIONS procedures 182  
SUBSTR functions 182  
TRIM procedures 182  
WRITEAPPEND procedures 182  
WRITE procedures 182

**DBMS\_METADATA**

function type objects, retrieving in  
    ORADEV schema 336, 337  
object dependencies on F\_GET\_LOC  
    function, retrieving 335  
single object metadata, retrieving 332-334  
system grants on ORADEV schema  
    retrieving 335

**DBMS\_METADATA package**

about 326, 327  
data types 327  
parameter requirements 330  
subprograms 328-330  
SYS-owned object types 327, 328  
transformation parameters 330, 331  
transform handlers 331

**DBMS\_RESULT\_CACHE package**

about 273, 275  
public constants 276  
subprograms 276

- DBMS\_TRACE constant**
  - NO\_TRACE\_ADMINISTRATIVE 342
  - NO\_TRACE\_HANDLED\_EXCEPTIONS 342
  - TRACE\_ALL\_CALLS 342
  - TRACE\_ALL\_EXCEPTIONS 342
  - TRACE\_ALL\_LINES 342
  - TRACE\_ALL\_SQL 342
  - TRACE\_ENABLED\_CALLS 342
  - TRACE\_ENABLED\_EXCEPTIONS 342
  - TRACE\_ENABLED\_LINES 342
  - TRACE\_ENABLED\_SQL 342
  - TRACE\_LIMIT 342
  - TRACE\_MAJOR\_VERSION 342
  - TRACE\_MINOR\_VERSION 342
  - TRACE\_PAUSE 342
  - TRACE\_RESUME 342
  - TRACE\_STOP 342
- DBMS\_TRACE package**
  - about 341
  - installing 341
  - subprograms 341, 363
- DBMS\_TRACE subprogram**
  - CLEAR\_PLSQL\_TRACE procedure 342
  - COMMENT\_PLSQL\_TRACE procedure 343
  - GET\_PLSQL\_TRACE\_LEVEL function 342
  - GET\_PLSQL\_TRACE\_RUNNUMBER function 342
  - INTERNAL\_VERSION\_CHECK function 343
  - LIMIT\_PLSQL\_TRACE procedure 343
  - PAUSE\_PLSQL\_TRACE procedure 343
  - PLSQL\_TRACE\_VERSION procedure 343
  - RESUME\_PLSQL\_TRACE procedure 343
  - SET\_PLSQL\_TRACE procedure 343
- db\_securefile parameter 212**
- Debug option 22**
- DEDUPLICATE keyword 215**
- deduplication feature 215**
- DEFAULT parameter 331**
- DELETE function 112, 113**
- dense collection 88**
- development steps, VPD implementation**
  - application context, creating 149
  - context key, creating 149
  - context key, setting 150
  - Policy function, creating 150
- directories, LOB data types 174**
- DIRECTORY parameter 218**
- DML operations, performing on nested table**
  - column, selecting 92
  - data, inserting 91
  - data, updating 92, 93
- DML operations, performing on varray**
  - column, selecting 101, 102
  - data, inserting 101
  - varray instance, updating 102
- DROP command 99**
- duration 197**
- Dynamic SQL 56**

## E

- EMPTY\_BLOB() function 178, 185**
- EMPTY\_CLOB() function 178**
- encryption algorithms, SecureFiles**
  - 3DES168 216
  - AES128 216
  - AES192 216
  - AES256 216
- ENCRYPT keyword 217**
- ENQUOTE\_LITERAL function 380**
- ENQUOTE\_NAME function 380**
- ERASE procedure 181**
- error\_number parameter 43**
- ETL 351**
- exception**
  - about 39
  - system-defined exception 39
  - user-defined exceptions 41
- exception handling, in PL/SQL**
  - about 39
  - exception propagation 46-48
  - system-defined exceptions 39
  - user-defined exceptions 41
- EXCEPTION variable 45**
- EXISTS function 105, 106**
- explicit cursors 35, 56, 62**
- EXTEND function 109, 110**
- EXTEND method 110**
- external C programs**
  - executing, from PL/SQL 131

executing, through C program 131, 132

**external LOB** 171

**external procedures, benefits** 130

about 130

enhanced performance 130

Integration of strengths 130

logical extensibility 130

Reusability of client logic 130

**external program, publishing** 134

**external routines**

about 121, 122

architecture 122

diagrammatic representation 124

external procedures, benefits 130

extproc process 124

Oracle Net Configuration 125

**Extraction, Transformation, and Loading.** *See* ETL

## F

**F\_COMP\_INT function** 234

**F\_COMPUTE function** 139

**F\_COMPUTE\_SUM function** 139

**FGAC**

about 146

overview 146

working 147, 148

**FGD** 50

**F\_GET\_DOUBLE function** 32

**F\_GET\_FUN\_DDL function** 337

**F\_GET\_LOC function** 354

**F\_GET\_NAME function** 301

**F\_GET\_SAL function** 291

**FILECLOSEALL procedure** 181

**FILECLOSE procedure** 181

**FILEEXISTS function** 181

**FILEGETNAME procedure** 181

**FILEISOPEN function** 181

**FILEOPEN procedure** 181

**Fine Grained Access Control** 145.

*See* FGAC

**Fine Grained Dependency.** *See* FGD

**FIRST function** 108

**FORALL function** 238

**FORALL loop** 249

**FORCE parameter** 331

**FORMAT\_CALL\_STACK function** 316

**forward declaration** 248

**F\_PRINT\_NAME function** 303

**FRAGMENT\_DELETE procedure** 181

**FRAGMENT\_INSERT procedure** 181

**FRAGMENT\_MOVE procedure** 181

**FRAGMENT\_REPLACE procedure** 181

**FREETEMPORARY procedure** 181

**first-order attack** 369

**functions**

about 29

characteristics 29

execution methods 31

SQL expressions calling functions, rules 32

standalone user-defined function 32

syntax 30

**fuzz testing** 387

## G

**GETCHUNKSIZE function** 182

**GETLENGTH function** 182

**GETOPTIONS function** 182

**GET\_QUERY function** 329

**GET\_STORAGE\_LIMIT function** 182

**GET\_[XML | DDL | CLOB] functions** 329

**GRANT command** 174

**Graphical User Interface.** *See* GUI

**GUI** 13

## H

**hierarchical profiler**

Analyzer 351

Data collector 351

DBMS\_HPROF package, using 351

efficiencies 351

PL/SQL program profiling

demonstration 352-357

profiler information, viewing 352

**hierarchical profiling** 351

## I

**identifier contexts, DBMS\_ASSERT package**

basic 382

literal 382

qualified 383, 384

- quoted identifier 382
- simple 382
- unquoted identifier 382
- identifiers**
  - about 319
  - activities identification, PL/Scope tool used 319
- IF THEN ELSE expression** 254
- IMBD** 273
- implicit cursors** 35, 56, 60, 62
- INHERIT parameter** 331
- In Memory Database.** *See* IMBD
- INSTR function** 182
- INTEGER, DBMS\_LOB data types** 180
- internal LOB** 171
  - BLOB type 172
  - CLOB type 172
  - NCLOB type 172
- interpreted compilation**
  - about 228
  - program unit, comparing 233-235
- intra unit inlining**
  - enabling 255
- ISOPEN functions** 182
- ISTEMPORARY functions** 182

**J**

- Java pool** 136
- Java programs**
  - executing, from PL/SQL 136
  - Java class method, calling 137
  - Java class, uploading into database 137
  - package for Java class method, creating 140
- Java programs, executing from PL/SQL**
  - about 136
  - Java class method, calling 137
  - Java class, uploading into database 137
  - loadjava utility 137-139
  - packages, creating 140
- Java Virtual Machine.** *See* JVM
- JVM** 136

**L**

- LAST function** 108
- LENGTH function** 194
- LIMIT function** 107
- LIMIT method** 107
- LISTENER.ora** 126
- Literal** 382
- LOADBLOBFROMFILE procedure** 182
- LOADCLOBFROMFILE procedure** 182
- LOADFROMFILE procedure** 182
- loadjava utility** 137, 139
- LOB**
  - closing 193
  - column states 193
  - migrating, from LONG data types 194-196
  - opening 193
  - restrictions 194
  - row, locking 193
- LOB column**
  - accessing 193, 194
  - data, inserting into 185
- LOB column states**
  - Empty 193
  - NULL 193
  - Populated 193
- LOB data**
  - deleting 192
  - modifying 190-192
  - selecting 189, 190
- LOB data type columns**
  - initializing 184
- LOB data types**
  - about 170, 172
  - BFILE 173
  - BFILEs, managing 178, 179
  - BFILEs, securing 178, 179
  - classification chart 171
  - columns, creating in table 175-177
  - creating 173
  - creating, syntax 175, 176
  - DBMS\_LOB package 179
  - directories 173
  - external LOB 171
  - internal LOB 171
  - internal LOBs, managing 178
  - LOB locators 172
  - LOB value 172
  - managing 177-179
  - populating, external file used 185-189
  - temporary LOBs 173
- lob\_loc** 197

**LONG data types**  
    limitations 170  
    migrating to LOB 194  
**LONG RAW data types**  
    limitations 170

## M

**machine code (bytecode)** 228  
**manual result cache** 274, 277

## N

**native compilation.** *See* NCOMP  
**NCOMP**  
    about 228, 235  
    program unit, comparing 233-235  
**nested table**  
    about 84-89  
    creating, as database object 90, 91  
    DML operations 91  
    features 94-97  
    in PL/SQL 93, 94  
    using 84  
    versus associative arrays 104  
    versus varray 105  
**NOCACHE mode** 210  
**non-persistent collection**  
    associative array 83  
**NOOP functions** 380  
**NOT NULL constraint** 241-243

## O

**OCI client results cache** 273  
**OID parameter** 331  
**OLTP** 209  
**Online Redefinition method**  
    about 221  
    LOB columns, migrating 222, 223  
    pre-requisites 221  
**Online Transaction Processing.** *See* OLTP  
**OPEN function** 329  
**OPEN procedures** 182  
**OPENW function** 329  
**Oracle 11g**  
    about 170  
    memory infrastructure diagram 271

**Oracle Common Language Runtime.**  
    *See* ORACLRL

**Oracle initialization parameter**  
    enabling 256  
    PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVELs 256-260

**Oracle Net Configuration**  
    about 125  
    LISTENER.ora 126-129  
    TNSNAMES.ora 125, 126  
    verifying 129, 130

**Oracle-supplied packages**  
    DBMS\_ALERT 51  
    DBMS\_HTTP 51  
    DBMS\_LOCK 51  
    DBMS\_OUTPUT 51  
    DBMS\_SCHEDULER 51  
    DBMS\_SESSION 51  
    packages 51  
    packages, categorizing 51, 52  
    reviewing 51  
    UTL\_FILE 51  
    UTL\_MAIL 51

**Oracle Technology Network.** *See* OTN  
**ORACLRL** 123

**OR logical operator**  
    using, for conditional control statements  
        rephrasing 254

**OTN** 15

## P

**packages**  
    about 33  
    advantage 33  
    components, package body 34  
    components, package specification 33, 34  
    creating, syntax 34

**parent table** 89

**partition method**  
    about 220  
    new SecureFile partition 220  
    partitioned table, creating 220

**performance optimization** 269

**persistent collection**  
    nested table 84  
    Varray (variable-size array) 84

**PGA** 36

- PL/Scope tool**
  - about 320
  - identifier collection 320, 321
  - identifier information, capturing 322-325
  - key features 320
  - report 322
  - report, objectives 325, 326
- plshprof utility**
  - about 357, 359
  - sample reports 359, 360
- PLS\_INTEGER data type**
  - using, for arithmetic operations 243, 244
- PL/SQL**
  - about 10
  - accomplishments 10
  - collection methods 105
  - comparing, with SQL 239
  - exception handling 39
  - external C programs, executing 131
  - external C programs, executing through
    - external procedure 131-135
  - Java class method, calling 137
  - Java class, uploading into database 137
  - Java programs, executing 136
  - nested table 93, 94
  - PLS\_INTEGER data type, using 243, 244
  - program 11
  - varray 99, 100
- PL/SQL block**
  - declaration 11
  - execution 11
  - header 11
  - structure 11
  - structure diagram 12
- PL/SQL code**
  - bulk binding, using 248-251
  - implicit data type conversion,
    - avoiding 239, 241
  - modularizing 246-248
  - NOT NULL constraint 241-243
  - profiling 339
  - SIMPLE\_INTEGER data type,
    - using 245, 246
  - SQL, comparing with PL/SQL 239
  - tracing 339
  - tuning, areas 238
- PL/SQL code, designing**
  - cursor structures 55
  - cursor variables 66
  - subtypes 74
- PL/SQL code security 365**
- PLSQL\_CODE\_TYPE parameter 231**
- PLSQL\_DEBUG parameter 343, 344**
- PL/SQL development environments**
  - SQL Developer 13
  - SQL\*Plus 24
- PL/SQL function result cache**
  - argument and return type limitations 294
  - function structural limitations 294
  - limitations 294
- PL/SQL native compilation**
  - database, compiling 235, 236, 237
- PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL=0 256, 257**
- PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL=1 258, 259**
- PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL=2 259, 260**
- PLSQL\_OPTIMIZE\_LEVEL=3 260-262**
- PL/SQL packages. *See* packages**
- PL/SQL program**
  - anonymous 11
  - named 11
  - nested 11
  - plshprof utility 357
  - profiling 350
  - tracing 340
- PL/SQL program, profiling**
  - hierarchical profiling 351
- PL/SQL program, tracing**
  - DBMS\_TRACE package 341
  - methods 340
  - PLSQL\_DEBUG parameter 343
- PL/SQL trace information**
  - viewing 344-347
- PL/SQL tracing**
  - demonstrating 347-350
- PLSQL\_WARNINGS parameter 255, 262**
- policy types**
  - CONTEXT\_SENSITIVE 154
  - DYNAMIC (Default) 154
  - SHARED\_CONTEXT\_SENSITIVE 154
  - SHARED\_STATIC 154
  - STATIC 154

**policy utilities**

- drop 164
- refresh 164

**Pragma 41**

**PRAGMA EXCEPTION\_INIT 41**

**PRAGMA INLINE 262-264**

**PRETTY parameter 331**

**PRIOR function 109**

**Procedural Language-Structured Query**

**Language. *See* PL/SQL**

**procedure**

- about 27
- characteristics 27
- executing 28
- IN OUT parameters 27
- IN parameters 27
- OUT parameters 27
- syntax 28

**Process Global Area. *See* PGA**

**profiling 339**

**Program Unit Arguments option 310**

**Q**

**QUALIFIED\_SQL\_NAME function 380**

**Quoted identifier 382**

**R**

**RAISE\_APPLICATION\_ERROR**

**procedure 43-46**

**RAW, DBMS\_LOB data types 180**

**READ procedures 182**

**real native compilation**

- about 229
- accomplishments 229

**REF\_CONSTRAINTS parameter 331**

**ref cursor**

- about 69
- strong type 69
- SYS\_REFCURSOR 69
- weak type 69

**Remote-Ops (RO) 126**

**result cache**

- about 270, 271
- implementing, in PL/SQL 288
- implementing, in SQL 277
- limitation 287

OCI client 273

server-side result cache 271

**result cache implementation, in PL/SQL**

- about 288
- cross-session availability 292
- invalidating 292, 293
- limitations 294
- RESULT\_CACHE clause 288-291, 292

**result cache implementation, in SQL**

- automatic result cache 279, 280
- manual result cache 277, 279
- memory report, displaying 286
- read consistency 287
- result cache metadata 281
- SQL result cache, invalidating 284, 285

**RESULT\_CACHE\_MAX\_SIZE parameter 274**

**result cache metadata**

- about 281
- dependent objects 283
- memory statistics 283, 284

**RESULT\_CACHE\_MODE**

**parameter 273, 278**

**RESULT\_CACHE\_REMOTE\_EXPIRATION**

**parameter 274**

**RLS 147**

**Row Level Security. *See* RLS**

**S**

**SCHEMA\_NAME function 380, 381**

**second-order attack 369**

**SecureFile performance graph 209**

**SECUREFILE property 223**

**SecureFiles**

- about 206
- advanced features, enabling 214
- architectural enhancements 207
- encryption algorithms 216
- feature 207
- LOB features 210
- metadata 213
- migrating, from BasicFiles 220
- working with 211-214

**SEGMENT\_ATTRIBUTES parameter 331**

**SERVEROUTPUT parameter 12**

- server-side result cache**
  - about 271
  - database, configuring 273-275
  - DBMS\_RESULT\_CACHE package 276, 277
  - PL/SQL function result cache 272
  - SQL query result cache 272
- session cursors** 56
- SETOPTIONS procedures** 182
- SGA** 83, 151
- SIMPLE\_INTEGER data type**
  - using 245, 246
- SIMPLE\_SQL\_NAME function** 380
- SIZE\_BYTE\_KEYWORD parameter** 331
- SQL**
  - about 9
  - comparing, with PL/SQL 239
- SQL Developer**
  - about 13, 310
  - accomplishments 13
  - anonymous PL/SQL block, creating 21
  - anonymous PL/SQL block, executing 21
  - connection, creating 15
  - DBMS\_DESCRIBE package 313
  - features 14
  - history 15
  - Oracle SQL Developer, start page 14
  - PL/SQL code, debugging 21, 22
  - scripts, editing 23
  - scripts, saving 23
  - SQL script, calling from 19, 20
  - SQL statement, executing 18, 19
  - SQL Worksheet 16, 18
  - using, for coding information
    - search 310-319
- SQLERRM function** 252
- SQL injection**
  - about 366
  - attack immunization 370
  - attacks, preventing 369, 370
  - attack types 369
  - attack types, first-order attack 369
  - attack types, second-order attack 369
  - code injection, example 366, 368
  - flaws, testing 386
  - impacts 369
  - overview 366
- SQL injection attack immunization**
  - about 370
  - attack surface, reducing 370
  - bind arguments 378, 379
  - definer's right 371-375
  - dynamic SQL, avoiding 375-377
  - input sanitization, DBMS\_ASSERT
    - used 379
  - owner's right 371-375
  - user privileges, controlling 371
- SQL injection flaws**
  - code, testing 386
- SQL\_OBJECT\_NAME function** 380
- SQL\*Plus**
  - about 24, 25
  - anonymous PL/SQL block, executing 26
  - evolution cycle 24
  - SQL statement, executing 26
- SQLTERMINATOR parameter** 331
- START\_PROFILING procedure** 352
- static code analysis** 387
- STOP\_PROFILING procedure** 352
- STORAGE parameter** 331
- Structured Query Language.** *See* SQL
- subprograms, DBMS\_RLS package**
  - ADD\_GROUPED\_POLICY 155
  - ADD\_POLICY 155
  - ADD\_POLICY\_CONTEXT 155
  - CREATE\_POLICY\_GROUP 155
  - DELETE\_POLICY\_GROUP 155
  - DISABLE\_GROUPED\_POLICY 155
  - DROP\_GROUPED\_POLICY 155
  - DROP\_POLICY 155
  - DROP\_POLICY\_CONTEXT 155
  - ENABLE\_GROUPED\_POLICY 155
  - ENABLE\_POLICY 155
  - REFRESH\_POLICY 155
- SUBSTR functions** 182
- subtype**
  - about 75
  - benefits 77
  - classifying 75
  - evolution 75
  - Oracle predefined subtypes 75
  - type compatibility 77
  - user-defined subtypes 76

## **Sum method**

package for Java class method, creating 140

**SYS\_CONTEXT function** 150, 162

**SYS.KU\$\_DDL** 327

**SYS.KU\$\_DDLs** 327

**SYS.KU\$\_ERRORLINE** 328

**SYS.KU\$\_ERRORLINES** 328

**SYS.KU\$\_MULTI\_DDL** 327

**SYS.KU\$\_MULTI\_DDLs** 327

**SYS.KU\$\_PARSED\_ITEM** 327

**SYS.KU\$\_PARSED\_ITEMS** 327

**SYS.KU\$\_SUBMITRESULT** 328

**SYS.KU\$\_SUBMITRESULTS** 328

**SYS\_REFCURSOR** 69

**system-defined exception**

about 39

list 40

**System Global Area.** *See* SGA

## **T**

**TABLESPACE parameter** 331

**TDE** 210, 216

**temporary LOBs**

creating 198, 199

managing 197

operations 196

releasing 198, 199

using 196

validating 198, 199

**tkprof utility** 340

**TNS** 125

**TRACE parameter** 356

**tracing**

about 339

DBMS\_APPLICATION\_INFO method 340

DBMS\_SESSION and DBMS\_MONITOR

method 340

DBMS\_TRACE method 340

PL/SQL programs 340

**Transparent Data Encryption.** *See* TDE

**Transparent Network Substrate.** *See* TNS

**trcsess utility** 340

**TRIM function** 111

**TRIM procedures** 182

## **U**

**UGA** 83, 150

**Unquoted identifier** 382

**user-defined exceptions**

about 41

declaring, in PL/SQL block 41, 42

declaring, ways 41

RAISE\_APPLICATION\_ERROR procedure  
43-46

**User Global Area.** *See* UGA

**USING clause** 378

## **V**

**VARCHAR2, DBMS\_LOB data types** 180

**varray**

about 84, 98, 99

as database collection type 100

DML operations 100

in PL/SQL 99, 100

using 84

versus nested table 105

**VARRAY.DELETE method** 113

**Virtual Private Database.** *See* VPD

**VPD**

about 145, 146

features 148, 149

implementing, development steps 149

policy metadata 163, 164

RLS, working 147

working 147, 148

**VPD implementation**

application context 150

application context, using 159-162

demonstrating 156-162

development, steps 149

policy association, DBMS\_RLS

package used 155

policy function 153, 154

simple security policy, using 157

## **W**

**WGC** 208

**WRITEAPPEND procedures** 182

**WRITE procedures** 182



## **Thank you for buying Oracle Advanced PL/SQL Developer Professional Guide**

### **About Packt Publishing**

Packt, pronounced 'packed', published its first book "Mastering phpMyAdmin for Effective MySQL Management" in April 2004 and subsequently continued to specialize in publishing highly focused books on specific technologies and solutions.

Our books and publications share the experiences of your fellow IT professionals in adapting and customizing today's systems, applications, and frameworks. Our solution based books give you the knowledge and power to customize the software and technologies you're using to get the job done. Packt books are more specific and less general than the IT books you have seen in the past. Our unique business model allows us to bring you more focused information, giving you more of what you need to know, and less of what you don't.

Packt is a modern, yet unique publishing company, which focuses on producing quality, cutting-edge books for communities of developers, administrators, and newbies alike. For more information, please visit our website: [www.packtpub.com](http://www.packtpub.com).

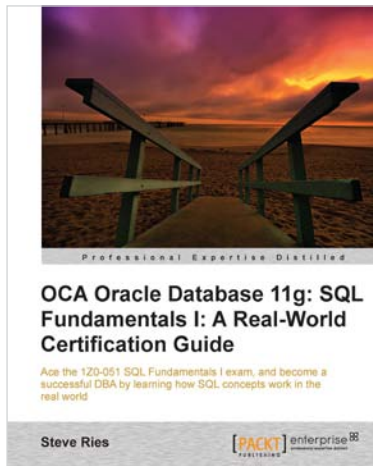
### **About Packt Enterprise**

In 2010, Packt launched two new brands, Packt Enterprise and Packt Open Source, in order to continue its focus on specialization. This book is part of the Packt Enterprise brand, home to books published on enterprise software – software created by major vendors, including (but not limited to) IBM, Microsoft and Oracle, often for use in other corporations. Its titles will offer information relevant to a range of users of this software, including administrators, developers, architects, and end users.

### **Writing for Packt**

We welcome all inquiries from people who are interested in authoring. Book proposals should be sent to [author@packtpub.com](mailto:author@packtpub.com). If your book idea is still at an early stage and you would like to discuss it first before writing a formal book proposal, contact us; one of our commissioning editors will get in touch with you.

We're not just looking for published authors; if you have strong technical skills but no writing experience, our experienced editors can help you develop a writing career, or simply get some additional reward for your expertise.



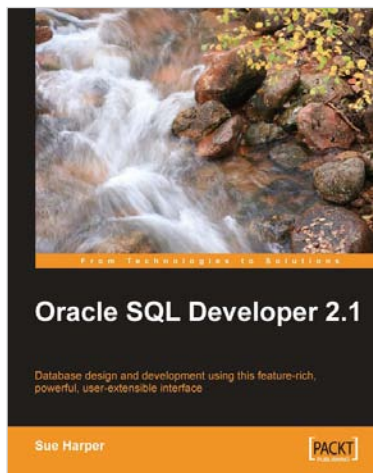
## **OCA Oracle Database 11g: SQL Fundamentals I: A Real World Certification Guide ( 1Z0-051 )**

ISBN: 978-1-84968-364-7

Paperback: 460 pages

Ace the 1Z0-051 SQL Fundamentals I exam, and become a successful DBA by learning how SQL concepts work in the real world

1. Successfully clear the first stepping stone towards attaining the Oracle Certified Associate Certification on Oracle Database 11g
2. This book uses a real world example-driven approach that is easy to understand and makes engaging
3. Complete coverage of the prescribed syllabus



## **Oracle SQL Developer 2.1**

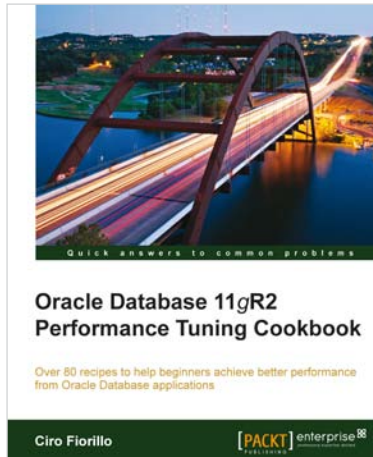
ISBN: 978-1-847196-26-2

Paperback: 496 pages

Database design and development using this feature-rich, powerful, user-extensible interface

1. Install, configure, customize, and manage your SQL Developer environment
2. Includes the latest features to enhance productivity and simplify database development
3. Covers reporting, testing, and debugging concepts
4. Meet the new powerful Data Modeling tool – Oracle SQL Developer Data Modeler

Please check **[www.PacktPub.com](http://www.PacktPub.com)** for information on our titles

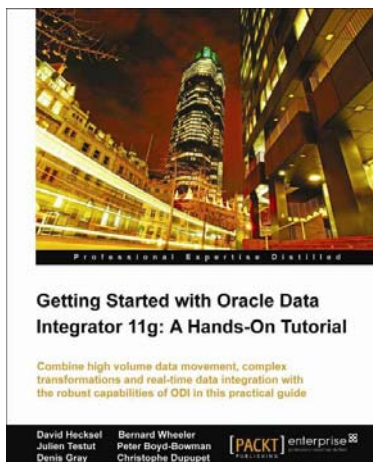


## Oracle Database 11gR2 Performance Tuning Cookbook

ISBN: 978-1-84968-260-2      Paperback: 542 pages

Over 80 recipes to help beginners achieve better performance from Oracle Database applications

1. Learn the right techniques to achieve best performance from the Oracle Database
2. Avoid common myths and pitfalls that slow down the database
3. Diagnose problems when they arise and employ tricks to prevent them
4. Explore various aspects that affect performance, from application design to system tuning



## Getting Started with Oracle Data Integrator 11g: A Hands-On Tutorial

ISBN: 978-1-84968-068-4      Paperback: 450 pages

Combine high volume data movement, complex transformations and real-time data integration with the robust capabilities of ODI in this practical guide

1. Discover the comprehensive and sophisticated orchestration of data integration tasks made possible with ODI, including monitoring and error-management
2. Get to grips with the product architecture and building data integration processes with technologies including Oracle, Microsoft SQL Server and XML files
3. A comprehensive tutorial packed with tips, images and best practices

Please check **[www.PacktPub.com](http://www.PacktPub.com)** for information on our titles